点金训练

教师用书

英语

必修第一册

配外研版

《点金训练》编写组　编

四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 A new start

○单元概览 …… 1

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 3

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 6

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 11

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 17

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 24

Part 2 读后续写 …… 25

Unit 2 Exploring English

○单元概览 …… 33

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 35

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 38

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 42

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 51

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 57

Part 2 读后续写 …… 58

Unit 3 Family matters

○单元概览 …… 68

○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 70

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 73

Section Ⅲ Using language …… 77

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 85

○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 91

Part 2 读后续写 …… 92

Unit 4 Friends forever

○单元概览 …… 110
○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 112
Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 115
Section Ⅲ Using language …… 119
Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 125
○迁移应用 Part 1 如何写故事结尾 …… 131
Part 2 读后续写 …… 133

Unit 5 Into the wild

○单元概览 …… 143
○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 145
Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 148
Section Ⅲ Using language …… 153
Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 157
○迁移应用 Part 1 应用文写作 …… 163
Part 2 读后续写 …… 164

Unit 6 At one with nature

○单元概览 …… 174
○探究构建 Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending …… 176
Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions …… 179
Section Ⅲ Using language …… 184
Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection …… 189
○迁移应用 Part 1 概要写作 …… 195
Part 2 读后续写 …… 196

Unit 1 A new start

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Self", focusing on daily learning and life at the new start of senior high. We'll get to know the daily life of a high school student in a British school and describe the differences between senior high and junior high. Meng Hao's first day at senior high and Lisa's interview help us summarise the experiences and tips for senior high life. Then we write a journal entry about the first-week experience at senior high, share it with the class, and discuss how to adapt to senior high. We are encouraged to make a plan for a smooth start to senior high.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"新的开始"主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	能理解句子的基本结构及句子成分承担的表意功能。
		语篇	1. 能读懂日记这类文体的语篇结构和语言特点； 2. 了解访谈的问题特征和写作的基本方法。
		语用	能了解句子的基本结构，并能用来描述高中学习生活的经历以及制订高中计划。
	语言技能	听	通过两名高中新生的对话，讨论在学校生活中遇到的困难及解决办法，学会积极面对高中生活，合理规划自己的时间。
		说	能说出自己最近一周的学习生活经历，并互相讨论，说出高中的学习生活计划。
		读	1. 阅读高一新生一天的高中学习生活经历与感受，初步了解高中的学习生活，为高中学习生活做准备； 2. 阅读主持人和毕业生的访谈，多角度深入了解高中生活，为适应高中学习生活做准备。
		写	1. 能正确运用恰当的动词形式描述在学校的经历与对高中生活的计划，以更好地适应高中的学习生活； 2. 能制作一本学校介绍手册，帮助同学们更快地了解学校。
学习能力	1. 能通过阅读从文章中提取事实和信息，并基于这些信息进行总结； 2. 能根据时间顺序来叙事，能围绕主题进行有逻辑的访谈； 3. 能根据语境正确使用这些基本句式和词汇来描述与高中学习生活相关的内容。		
文化意识	比较中西方高中学习生活的异同，能根据 Meng Hao 和 Lisa 的案例，思考自己的高中学习目标，并做好合理的规划，以更快地适应高中的学习生活。		
思维品质	能基于单元所学内容、初中生活体验以及对高中的初步认知，反思、制订自己的目标，并对比分析自身如何更好地适应高中的学习生活，制订高中的学习生活计划。		

必备知识

必背单词	senior，curious，impression，campus，tradition，facility，impressive，moment，author，eagerness，explore，engine，insect，collection，organise，breathe，panic，challenge，pressure，calm，description，confident，poster，badminton，band，debate，gym，piano，stage，argue，topic，sharp，dinosaur，dolphin，intelligent，investigate，various，volunteer，gain，apply，schedule，award，opportunity，view，former，graduate，frightened，sight，figure，select，particular，neat，specific，refer，journal，junior，struggle，memorise，forward，committee，improve，rate，performance，exchange
重点词块	one by one，butterflies in one's stomach，in panic，put... under pressure，depend on，make the most of，graduate from，be about to do，keep an open mind，deal with，at the sight of，go all out，hold one's head up，in particular，give... a hand，refer to
重点句型	1. be doing... when... 2. so... that... 引导结果状语从句
单元语法	基本句型
单元写作	有关高中生活的日记

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of the text through skimming.
2. Find out the sequence (顺序) of the text.
3. Be able to describe a typical day at senior high school.
4. Develop the reading skills of skimming and scanning.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. senior *adj*. (地位、水平或级别)高的,高级的
2. curious *adj*. 好奇的
3. impression *n*. 印象,感想
4. campus *n*. 校园
5. tradition *n*. 传统
6. impressive *adj*. 令人钦佩的,给人深刻印象的
7. eagerness *n*. 热切,渴望
8. explore *v*. 考察,探险
9. collection *n*. (一批)收藏品
10. organise *v*. 组织
11. breathe *v*. 呼吸
12. challenge *n*. 挑战
13. calm *adj*. 镇静的,沉着的
14. description *n*. 描述,描写,叙述,形容
15. confident *adj*. 有信心的,自信的
16. moment *n*. 某一时刻
17. depend on 取决于;依靠
18. make the most of 充分利用
19. senior high 高中
20. one by one 依次地,一个接一个地

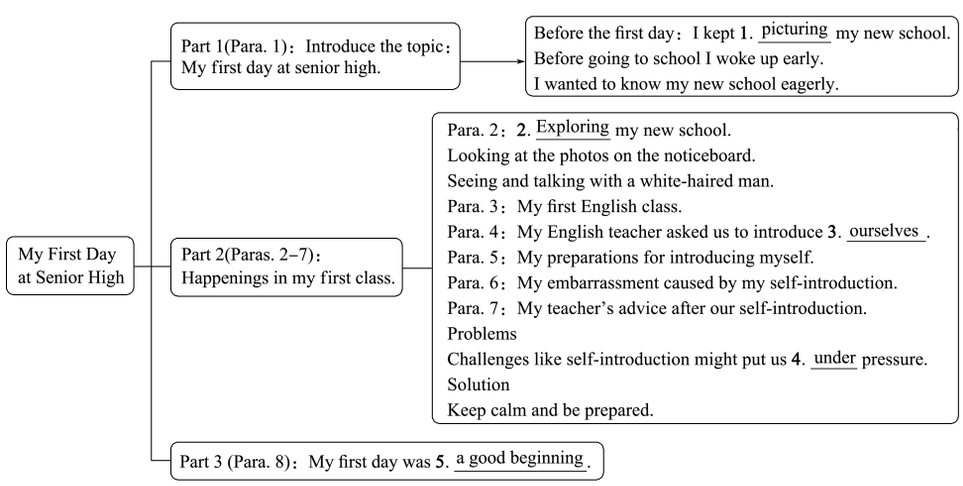
(二)阅读词汇

1. facility *n*. 设施
2. author *n*. 作者,作家
3. engine *n*. 发动机,引擎
4. insect *n*. 昆虫
5. nudge *n*. (通常用肘)轻推
6. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张,心里发慌
7. in panic 惊慌地
8. put... under pressure 使……处于压力之下

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What made everyone laugh when Meng Hao was introducing himself?
   A. His humorous words.
   B. His strange behaviours.
   C. That he shared the same name with their English teacher.
   D. That he stood there quietly without saying a word to the whole class.
2. What does the proverb "Well begun, half done." mean?
   A. A good beginning is very important.
   B. Only working hard at the beginning is enough.
   C. The beginning is more important than the ending.
   D. We should only pay attention to the beginning of a thing.

答案：1～2 CA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. The campus was still quiet when I arrived, so I decided to explore a bit.
   [句子分析]本句是并列复合句。so 前的分句为复合句，when I arrived 为 when 引导的时间状语从句；so 后的分句为简单句。
   [尝试翻译]我到学校时，校园里仍然悄然无声，所以我决定探索一下。
2. When my English teacher stepped into the classroom, I was surprised to see the same man I had met earlier.
   [句子分析]when 引导时间状语从句，to see the same man I had met earlier 为动词不定式短语在句中作原因状语，I had met earlier 为省略关系代词 that 的定语从句，其先行词为 man，被 the same 修饰。
   [尝试翻译]当我的英语老师走进教室时，我很惊讶地看到他就是我之前遇到的那个人。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What do you think of Meng Hao's English teacher? (no more than 5 words)
   He is kind and humorous.
2. What kind of teachers do you like best? (Answers may vary.)
   He/She should be knowledgeable and have a good way of making his/her lessons lively and interesting.

Unit 1 课后素养评价（一）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

When I woke up on September 1, there was only one thing on my mind: what to wear. A billion thoughts appeared through my brain in the closet (衣橱). Not only was it my first day of senior high school, but it was my first day of school in a new state; first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next four years with.

After carefully hunting my closet, I proudly came out in a dress. The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun. Yes, this cloth was the one. An hour later, I felt powerful as I headed toward Room 1136. But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor.

Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat. I made it through my simple introduction speech until Mrs Hutfilz stood up, jokingly saying that she liked my style. Although this was the moment I had been afraid of from the moment I walked in, all my anxiety surprisingly melted away, and the students paid attention as I shared my story. My smile grew as I laughed with the students. After class, I stayed behind, talked to Mrs Hutfilz and made a humorous and real communication.

Looking back four years later, the ten minutes I spent afraid of giving my speech was really not worth it. My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way and taught me that Mrs Hutfilz has a brilliant sense of style!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在高中第一天的难忘的经历。

1. Why did the author pay great attention to her clothes on the first day of high school?
A. She followed her father's advice.
B. She was unconfident about herself.
C. She cared too much about her appearance.
D. She wanted to make a good impression.
D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next four years with"可知,作者在高中的第一天非常注意她的穿着是因为她想给人留下一个好印象。故选D。

2. Which of the following statements is TRUE?
A. It was her first day of primary school.
B. She was satisfied with her first day dress.
C. Her teacher was unhappy because she wore the same dress with her.
D. She made a conversation with her English teacher in class.
B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun."可知,作者对她第一天的穿着很满意。故选B。

3. What's the author's feeling after noticing her teacher's dress?
A. Anger. B. Confusion.
C. Pride. D. Embarrassment.
D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor."及第三段中的"Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat."可推知,注意到老师的着装和自己的一样后,作者感到很尴尬。故选D。

4. What is the author's purpose in writing the article?
A. To share a memorable experience.
B. To explore the troubles with dressing.
C. To introduce her stylish English teacher.
D. To stress the importance of first impressions.
A 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的"My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way..."可推知,本文讲述了作者在高中第一天难忘的经历,因此作者写这篇文章的目的是要分享一段难忘的经历。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

For teenagers, high school is a very important time of life, marked by schoolwork, making friends, and personal development. It is a time full of chances and challenges that help shape their journey towards adulthood.

Schoolwork is the main part of high school life. Students take a variety of subjects. __1__ For example, science includes experiments and research, while English classes focus on reading stories and writing practice. Dealing with schoolwork, projects, and exams requires good skills for planning time, which help students learn how to solve problems.

__2__ High school is a time for discovering oneself and setting personal goals. During this time, students start to explore their interests, which can help them make choices for the future. They begin thinking about their future jobs, which colleges to attend, and their life goals. This stage of growth is important for developing self-confidence and getting ready for the transition (过渡) to adulthood.

After-school activities play an important role in high school life. Students can join clubs, or arts programmes. Clubs like debate teams, or ballet clubs allow students to meet interesting people. Activities like drama or music enable students to express their creativity and perform in the school play. __3__

Challenges are also a part of high school life. Students might face pressure from schoolwork, or other problems. __4__ Teachers, schoolmates, or friends are of great help. Students will benefit a lot from managing challenges.

Community involvement (参与) is another important part of high school. __5__ This involvement helps them understand the importance of giving back and being part of a larger community. It also provides practical experience in working with others and dealing with real-world issues.

A. Make the most of your education.
B. Each subject has its own set of requirements.
C. It's important to ask for support when necessary.
D. There's always a way to be part of something you love.
E. Many schools encourage students to do volunteer work.
F. Such activities enable students to form skills and friendships.
G. Personal growth also serves as an important part of high school.

答案:1～5 BGFCE

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Know more words and expressions about feelings.
2. Learn and use key words and expressions in context.
3. Master and use important sentence structures correctly.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. There are two teaching buildings, a library and a lab in our **campus**. 校园
2. Finally, the man became ill under the great **pressure** of work. 压力
3. The **author** has settled for a more academic approach. 作者，作家
4. It is difficult for most people to keep **calm** in the face of danger. 镇静的，沉着的
5. After studying at junior high school for three years, most of the students will go on studying at **senior** high school. （地位、水平或级别）高的，高级的
6. The car broke down on the road because there was something wrong with the **engine**. 发动机，引擎
7. The hotel has special **facilities** for disabled people to use. 设施
8. Guests **panicked** and screamed when the great fire broke out. 惊恐，惊慌

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
curious *adj*. 好奇的	curiously *adv*. 好奇地
	curiosity *n*. 好奇心
impression *n*. 印象，感想	impressive *adj*. 令人钦佩的，给人深刻印象的
	impress *v*. 给……留下深刻印象
tradition *n*. 传统	traditional *adj*. 传统的，习俗的
	traditionally *adv*. 传统地
explore *v*. 考察，探险	explorer *n*. 探险家，勘探者
	exploration *n*. 探测，探索
organise *v*. 组织	organised *adj*. 有组织的；有条理的
	organisation *n*. 组织

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
challenge *n*. 挑战	challenging *adj*. 有挑战性的
confident *adj*. 有信心的，自信的	confidence *n*. 信心；信任
	confidently *adv*. 确信地，肯定地；自信地

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. turn around 转身
2. step into 迈进，步入
3. one by one 依次地，一个接一个地
4. turn on 打开（水、电视、收音机、灯、煤气等）；发动
5. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张，心里发慌
6. in panic 惊慌地
7. pay attention 专心；集中注意力
8. put sb. under pressure 使某人处于压力之下
9. depend on 取决于；依赖
10. make the most of 充分利用

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：感叹句

   How true these words were!

   这些话说得真是太对了！

2. 句型公式：with 复合结构

   With butterflies in my stomach, I breathed deeply.

   心里七上八下、紧张万分，我深吸了一口气。

3. 句型公式：too... to...

   I had been too nervous to pay attention when he introduced himself!

   我刚才太紧张了，竟然没有仔细听他（老师）的自我介绍！

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. curious *adj*. 好奇的

［归纳拓展］

(1)be curious about sth. 对某事感到好奇

be curious to do sth. 极想做某事

(2)curiously *adv*. 好奇地

(3)curiosity *n*. 好奇心

out of curiosity 出于好奇

meet/satisfy one's curiosity 满足某人的好奇心

with curiosity＝curiously 好奇地

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①"What have you got there?" Felix asked curiously (curious).

②It is children's nature to be curious about the people and things around them.

③I'm curious to know (know) how many satellites have been sent to space up to now.

④(2025·北京卷)Instantly, eyes turned to me with newfound interest and curiosity (curious).

(2)写作微练

①(2023·浙江1月卷读后续写之动作描写)窗户上的声音引起了我的注意,于是我**出于好奇**走进了房子,发现了一只蜂鸟。

A noise at a window caught my attention, so I entered the house out of curiosity and found a hummingbird.

②(读后续写之情绪描写)这个天真的女孩**好奇又兴奋**,打开了她的礼品盒。

Curious and excited, the innocent girl unwrapped her gift box.

2. impression *n*. 印象,感想

［教材原文］What was your first **impression** of your new school?

你对你的新学校的第一印象是什么样的?

［归纳拓展］

(1)first impression of... 对……的第一印象

leave/have/make a/an... impression on sb. 给某人留下……的印象

(2)impress *v*. 给……留下深刻印象

impress sb. with sth. 某事给某人留下印象

impress sth. on/upon sb. 使某人铭记某事;使某人明白某事物的重要性

be impressed with/by... 对……有深刻印象

(3)impressive *adj*. 令人钦佩的,给人深刻印象的

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①He was trying to leave a deeper impression (impress) on the new friend.

②Through the impressive fruit-picking activity, our head teacher impressed the value of hard work on/upon us.

③(2025·全国二卷) The Hereford Cathedral is the most impressive (impress) building in town.

(2)写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动分享)我们的任务是画一些**使我们印象最深刻**的东西。

①We were tasked to draw or paint what impressed us most.(impress)

②We were tasked to draw or paint something that we were most impressed with/by.(impress)

③We were tasked to draw or paint something that left/made/had the most impression on us.(impression)

3. breathe *v*. 呼吸

［教材原文］With butterflies in my stomach, I **breathed** deeply.

心里七上八下、紧张万分,我深吸了一口气。

［归纳拓展］

(1)breathe in 吸气

breathe out 呼气

(2)breath *n*. 呼吸的空气;一口气

take a deep breath 深呼吸

out of breath 气喘吁吁,上气不接下气

hold one's breath 屏住呼吸

(3)breathless *adj*. 气喘吁吁的;喘不过气来的

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①When practising yoga, breathe in deeply from the nose and breathe out slowly from the mouth.

②(2025·浙江1月卷) The man froze for a second, but when he saw the skinny boy he breathed (breathe) a sigh of relief.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之心理描写)当埃文斯先生宣布考试成绩时,我**屏住呼吸**,心跳得厉害。

When Mr Evans announced the exam results, I

held my breath, with my heart beating wildly.

②(读后续写之动作描写)他脱下衣服,**深吸一口气**,跳进冰冷的水中。游了几分钟后,他**喘不过气来**,立刻游回岸边。

He took off his clothes, took a deep breath and jumped into the cold water. After swimming for a few minutes, he was out of breath and immediately swam back to the bank.

4. confident *adj*. 有信心的,自信的

[**教材原文**]With the English teacher's support, he thought senior high was easy and felt **confident** about his future.

在英语老师的支持下,他认为高中很轻松,对他的未来充满信心。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)be confident in 相信,信任

be confident about/of sth. 对……有信心

be confident that... 坚信……

(2)confidence *n*. 信心,信任

have confidence in 对……有信心

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①Confident (confidence) and proud, he walked to the starting line and his face wore a smile.

②After talking with her teacher, she was more confident of/about the coming exam.

③(2025·北京卷) As Alice Black points out, today's parents' fear of letting kids do more housework has added to their inability to feel competent and, thus, confident in themselves.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)**我相信**你会在我们的新自习室度过一段美好的时光,所以请接受我真诚的邀请。

I am confident that you can have a good time in our new self-study room, so please accept my sincere invitation.

5. be doing... when...

[**教材原文**]I **was looking at** the photos on the noticeboard **when** I heard a voice behind me. "New here?"

我正在浏览公告牌上的照片,身后忽然传来一个声音:"你是新生吗?"

[**句式分析**]本句中 was looking... when... 为"sb. was/were doing sth. when..."句型,意为"某人正在做某事,这时……",其中 when 为并列连词,意为"这时",when 连接的分句一般用一般过去时。

[**归纳拓展**]

when 用作连词的其他句型:

(1)sb. be about to do sth. when...

=sb. be on the point of doing sth. when... 某人正打算做某事,这时……

(2)sb. had just done sth. when... 某人刚做完……这时(突然)……

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①He was studying (study) for his exam when his roommate came in with exciting news about the concert tickets.

②Tom was about to close/was on the point of closing the window when his attention was caught by an insect.

③I had finished (finish) my homework when my mother asked me to practise playing the piano last night.

(2)完成片段

(读后续写之动作描写)手里拿着罐子,我**正匆忙上楼梯,突然**我的脚一滑,狠狠地摔了一跤。罐子从我的手指间滑落,摔成碎片。我**刚要去捡起地上的碎片,就**听到妈妈的声音传来:"怎么了?"

With the jar in my hands, I was walking upstairs in a hurry when I slipped and fell heavily. The jar slipped through my fingers, breaking into pieces. I was about to pick up/was on the point of picking up the pieces when I heard my mum's voice, "What's happening?"

多义词汇 专练

1. (2025·北京卷) They themselves don't know why they are following the crowd and longing for the **pressures** of academic difficulty. B

A. *n*. 压强　B. *n*. 压力　C. *n*. 大气压

2. (2025·北京卷) I talked to one of the **senior** applicants who answered questions in a way that reflected the faith she had in herself. C

A. *adj*. 老,大

B. *adj*. 级别(或地位)高的

C. *adj*. 高年级的

Unit 1 课后素养评价（二）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. These were just small successes for them, but that was how they finally developed confidence (confident).
2. Daisy came to the garden for the first time, and she was very curious about every plant that she saw in the garden.
3. The band often performs on the stage, leaving a deep impression on the audience.
4. The exchange students were deeply impressed by the members' vivid description (describe).
5. The owner of the shop is always eager to make (make) every customer happy.
6. It is a challenge for graduates to find jobs.
7. The child was crying, so the nurse had got to give him some toys to calm him down.
8. He is a president of a large international organisation (organise).
9. Tom panicked (panic) at the sound of explosion and his wife also got into a panic.
10. The subjects are really challenging (challenge) and I find it difficult to follow the teachers.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

pay attention to; depend on; one by one; wake up; in panic; make the most of

1. A sense of terror sweeping through my body, I shouted in panic, "Help! Help!"
2. Whether we can hold the meeting or not depends on the weather.
3. One by one, the applicants left the interviewer's office with disappointed looks on their faces.
4. This question is very important so I hope all of you pay attention to it.
5. Every student should make the most of what he has to achieve what he wants.
6. They are talking in a whisper in order not to wake up the sleeping baby.

Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 我们正在做我们的家庭作业，这时一个陌生人进来了。(be doing... when...)

   We were doing our homework when a stranger came in.
2. 我发现她激动得说不出话来。(too... to...)

   I found that she was too excited to say a word.
3. 听到他们的话，伯纳德高兴得几乎跳了起来，热泪盈眶。(with 复合结构)

   Hearing what they said, Bernard was so delighted that he almost jumped up, with tears filling his eyes.
4. 多么奇怪的植物啊！我以前从未见过它。(感叹句)

   What a strange plant it is! I've never seen it before.
5. 听到这个不幸的消息，他们情不自禁地哭了起来。(现在分词短语作状语)

   Hearing the bad news, they couldn't help crying.

Ⅳ. 完形填空

The first day at school has left a deep __1__ on me. I'll never forget it.

As soon as I rushed into the classroom, the bell rang. A young beautiful woman came in, but she was __2__, no smile on her face. "You are not allowed to __3__ me in the course of class unless..." She was speaking when I heard a voice "Lily, Lily" from outside the door. My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand. I didn't __4__ I was bare feet (光着脚) until then. I wanted to __5__ them, but I dared not do that. I shook my hand, __6__ "Don't wait here any longer. Leave quickly." As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher. I really didn't want her to __7__ me, but she did. She went out to get the socks. When she gave them to me, she looked at me for a while. My face suddenly turned __8__ and my heart beat faster. I began to put the socks on. Unfortunately I was so nervous that my __9__ hands couldn't get them onto my feet easily. Just then I heard my name called. I __10__ from my seat quickly. "Can you count the numbers from one to one hundred?" the teacher asked. I nodded. To her __11__, I did very well.

Finally she said, "Be __12__, please. Study hard." I looked up at her to find a smile on her face. I felt relaxed __13__.

The first day at school has stayed in my __14__ as something embarrassing but __15__.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子，但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。

1. A. understanding　　B. impression
C. decision　　D. attention
B　根据下文的"I'll never forget it."可知，"我"永远都不会忘记是因为上学的第一天给"我"留下了深刻的印象（impression）。leave a deep impression on sb.意为"给某人留下深刻的印象"。

2. A. nervous　　B. amazed
C. disappointed　　D. serious
D　根据下文的"... no smile on her face."可知，老师脸上没有笑容，说明老师是一个严肃的（serious）人。

3. A. trouble　　B. question
C. interrupt　　D. excuse
C　根据下文的"in the course of class"和"... but I dared not do that."可知，"我"不敢那样做是因为老师要求课堂上不要打断（interrupt）她。

4. A. say　　B. design
C. organise　　D. realise
D　根据上文的"My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand."可知，直到"我"的奶奶站在那里手里拿着一双袜子，"我"才意识到（realise）"我"没有穿袜子。

5. A. get　　B. throw
C. give　　D. show
A　根据上文可知，老师要求上课时不能打断她，因此看到奶奶来送袜子"我"不敢去拿（get）。

6. A. saying　　B. meaning
C. crying　　D. shouting
B　根据上文的"I shook my hand..."可知，"我"不敢说话，摇了摇手的意思是（mean）不要在这里再等了，赶快离开。

7. A. care　　B. interest
C. remember　　D. notice
D　根据上文的"As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher."可知，"我"让奶奶快点离开的同时，"我"的眼睛还盯着老师，是因为"我"不想让她注意到（notice）"我"。

8. A. healthy　　B. happy
C. red　　D. black
C　根据下文的"and my heart beat faster"可知，老师把袜子拿给"我"，"我"感到很尴尬，所以"我"脸红（red）了，而且心跳加快。

9. A. small　　B. dirty
C. shaking　　D. cold
C　根据上文的"I was so nervous"可知，"我"很紧张，所以"我"颤抖（shaking）的手不能很容易地把袜子穿到脚上。

10. A. rose　　B. escaped
C. ran　　D. jumped
A　根据上文的"Just then I heard my name called."可知，老师叫"我"的名字，"我"从座位上站了起来。rise from one's seat 意为"从座位上站起来"。

11. A. anxiety　　B. curiosity
C. surprise　　D. anger
C　根据下文的"... I did very well."可知，老师让"我"从一数到一百，让她很吃惊（surprise）的是，"我"做得很好。

12. A. careful　　B. quiet
C. calm　　D. seated
D　根据上文可知，"我"站着回答老师的问题，因此答完了之后，老师让"我"坐下。be seated 意为"坐下"。

13. A. so far　　B. at last
C. on time　　D. at first
B　根据上文的"I looked up at her to find a smile on her face."可知，"我"在老师脸上看到了笑容，所以最终（at last）感觉放松了。

14. A. body　　B. classroom
C. memory　　D. hand
C　根据第一段中的"I'll never forget it."可知，在学校的第一天留在"我"的记忆（memory）中。

15. A. strange　　B. sweet
C. confusing　　D. terrible
B　本文讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子，但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。所以这个记忆对作者来说是又尴尬又甜蜜的（sweet）。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Learn and use key words and expressions in context.
2. Review basic sentence structures.
3. Analyse sentences to identify their structures.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They used to be one of the most famous **bands** in England. 乐队
2. The weather is always a safe **topic** of conversation in Britain. 话题
3. According to the **schedule**, all work should be finished before 10 o'clock so we just have 2 hours left. 计划表
4. A **poster** is a large notice or picture that is put up on a wall or board, often in order to advertise something. 海报
5. There is a heated **debate** in our class on whether middle school students should take on part-time jobs on weekends. 讨论,辩论
6. If you're too busy to go to the **gym**, there are plenty of ways to still get your sweat on. 体育馆,健身房
7. Sometimes his **inner** thoughts and his outer actions do not match. 内心的
8. The country **gained** its independence fifty years ago. 获得,赢得

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
drama *n*. 戏剧	dramatic *adj*. 戏剧性的
	dramatically *adv*. 戏剧性地
photography *n*. 摄影	photograph *n*. 相片 *vi*. 拍照,摄影;被照相 *vt*. 给……照相
	photographer *n*. 摄影爱好者;摄影师
argue *v*. 争论,争辩	argument *n*. 争论;辩论
	arguable *adj*. 可辩论的;可论证的
sharp *adj*. 敏锐的,聪明的	sharply *adv*. 尖刻地;严厉地;猛烈地
	sharpen *v*. (使)变得锋利;使明朗;(使)提高,改善

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
intelligent *adj*. 有智慧的,聪明的	intelligence *n*. 智力;才智;智慧
investigate *v*. 查明,调查	investigation *n*. 调查;研究
various *adj*. 各种各样的,各种不同的	vary *v*. 变化
	variety *n*. 种类;多样性
volunteer *n*. 志愿者,义务工作者,自愿参加者	voluntary *adj*. 志愿的;自愿的
apply *v*. 申请	application *n*. 申请;申请书;应用
	applicant *n*. 申请人

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. look after 照顾
2. take part in 参加,参与
3. care about 关心
4. take up 占据(时间、空间等)
5. come along 快来;赶快
6. at a time 一次

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:make+宾语+宾语补足语
   The exam made me quite nervous.
   这次考试使我相当紧张。
2. 句型公式:not only... but also...
   These activities not only help them gain more skills, but also teach them to care about others.
   这些活动不仅帮助他们获得更多的技能,而且教会他们关心他人。
3. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语
   To help them do this, some senior high schools offer courses in time management.
   为了帮助他们做到这一点,一些高中开设了时间管理课程。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. argue *v*. 争论，争辩；主张；说服

[教材原文]**Argue** about the week's hottest topics with the school's sharpest minds!
与学校最敏锐的人讨论本周最热门的话题！

[归纳拓展]

(1) argue with sb. about/over sth. 与某人辩论某事
argue for/against sth. 赞成/反对某事
argue sb. into/out of doing sth. 说服某人做/不做某事
argue that... 主张，认为……

(2) argument *n*. 争论；辩论
It is beyond argument that... 无可争辩的是……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

①I'm not going to argue with you, but I think you're wrong.

②It is beyond argument (argue) that the early years are important to a person's development.

③ He is very stubborn (固执的), so it is impossible to argue him into doing what he doesn't want to.

(2) 写作微练

(2024·浙江1月卷应用文写作之投稿)**我认为**长跑是一项有益的运动，值得推荐。
I would argue that long-distance running is a kind of exercise which is of great benefit and deserves to be recommended.

2. apply *v*. 申请；适用；应用于（与 to 连用）

[教材原文]After-school activities also play a part when students **apply** to college.
课外活动在学生申请大学时也有用。

[归纳拓展]

(1) apply (to sb.) for sth. (向某人)申请某事
apply to do sth. 申请做某事
apply to sth./sb. 适用于/运用于某物/某人
apply... to... 把……应用于；把……涂抹到……
apply oneself to doing sth. 集中精力做某事，专注于做某事

(2) applicant *n*. 申请人(尤指求职、申请高等学校等)

(3) application *n*. 申请；申请书；应用

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) Not standing a chance against competitive applicants (apply), I came out of the interview with an upset look.

② Later I decided to apply my experience to learning how to read and write.

③If you apply yourself to revising (revise) your lessons from now on, I am confident that you can be admitted to a good university.

(2) 写作微练

①(应用文写作之求职信)我写信**向你们申请**你们在昨天的报纸上提供的**职位**。如果我被录用了，我会全身心地**致力于**我的工作。
I'm writing to apply to you for the position you offered in yesterday's newspaper. If chosen, I will apply myself to my work.

②(应用文写作之申请信)如果您能**考虑我的申请**，我将不胜感激。
It would be appreciated if you could take my application into consideration.

多义词汇 专练

1. sharp

A. *adj*. 锋利的　　B. *adj*. 敏锐的
C. *adj*. 尖刻的　　D. *adj*. 急剧的
E. *adj*. 剧烈的　　F. *adj*. 刺耳的

①The cruel woman has a **sharp** tongue. C
②I suddenly felt a **sharp** pain in my back. E
③It's dangerous to play with a **sharp** knife. A
④The young man has **sharp** eyes. B
⑤(2023·浙江1月卷) Suddenly, Ziyad let out a **sharp** cry. F
⑥Be careful! There is a **sharp** bend on the road. D

2. (2025·北京卷) Psychologist Robert Turner wrote about this in his book, *The Life Cycle*, mentioning a **stage** when kids learn self-direction and mastery. A

A. *n*. 时期，阶段　B. *n*. 舞台
C. *n*. 步骤

3. apply

A. *vi*. 申请　B. *vt*. 应用，运用　C. *vt*. 涂，敷

①(2025·浙江1月卷) Instead, she recommends **applying** a well-known concept among nutrition experts called the "Division of Responsibility". B
②(2023·全国乙卷) There has been a rise in the number of students **applying** for food courses at UK universities and colleges. A
③**Apply** the cream to your face and neck every day. C

语法研习课

基本句型

语法感知

①The sun rises in the east every day.
②The people present didn't know her.
③This is an English-Chinese dictionary.
④Would you please pass me that dictionary?
=Would you please pass that dictionary to me?
⑤I saw a stranger enter the building.

1. 句①是主谓状(SVA)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是不及物动词(短语)。

2. 句②是主谓宾(SVO)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是一个及物动词(短语),后面必须跟宾语,常用作宾语的有名词、代词、不定式、动名词或从句等。

3. 句③是主系表(SVP)结构,此类句型的谓语动词必须加上一个表明主语身份或状态的表语构成复合谓语,才能表达完整意思,这类动词叫作连系动词。表语常由名词、形容词、介词短语、分词、不定式或从句充当。

4. 句④是主谓宾宾(SVIODO)结构,即"主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语",句中的直接宾语也可提至间接宾语前,此时间接宾语前需加介词 to 或 for。

5. 句⑤是主谓宾宾补(SVOOC)结构,谓语动词后要跟复合宾语(宾语+宾语补足语),常用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

语法精讲

一、句子成分

句子成分包括以下几类:

成分	意义	位置
主语 S(Subject)	句子的主体;谓语陈述、说明的对象,说明动作由"谁"发出	位于句首
谓语 V(Verb)	表示主语的行为或状态,是英语句子的核心	主语之后

续表

成分	意义	位置
宾语 O(Object)	表示行为或活动的对象、接受者或受影响者	动词或介词后
直接宾语 DO (Direct Object)	表示动作的承受者,一般是物	动词后
间接宾语 IO (Indirect Object)	表示动作是对谁或为谁做的,一般是人	动词后
表语 P(Predicative)	用来说明主语的身份、性质、状况等	系动词后
宾语补足语 OC(Object Complement)	补充说明宾语的动作或状态	宾语后
状语 A(Adverbial)	说明动作"何时、何地、如何"发生;说明形容词或副词的程度	位置灵活

二、基本句型

1. S+V:主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)
The rain stopped. 雨停了。
The sun has risen. 太阳升起来了。
句型特点总结:谓语动词是不及物动词,本身能表达完整的意思,后面不需接宾语。

2. S+V+A:主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+状语(Adverbial)
We'll leave next week.
我们将在下周离开。
The old man is walking in the park.
那个老人正在公园里散步。
句型特点总结:本结构中充当谓语的不及物动词后常常跟状语才能表达完整的意思,状语包括时间状语、地点状语、方式状语、程度状语等。

3. S+V+O:主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)
We are learning English.
我们正在学习英语。

I don't know him.
我不认识他。
句型特点总结：谓语动词是及物动词，不能表达完整的意思，其后必须要接一个宾语。

4. S＋V(*vi.*＋*prep.*)＋O＋A：主语(Subject)＋谓语(Verb)＋宾语(Object)＋状语(Adverbial)
I lived in Beijing five years ago.
五年前我住在北京。
They are waiting for the bus patiently.
他们正耐心地等公共汽车。
句型特点总结：本结构中的动词为不及物动词，所以必须加上介词才能跟宾语；另外加上状语表达的意思更完整。

5. S＋V＋IO＋DO：主语(Subject)＋谓语(Verb)＋间接宾语(Indirect Object)＋直接宾语(Direct Object)
Her mother bought her a skirt.
她的妈妈给她买了一条裙子。
Mr Li told us an interesting story.
李先生给我们讲了一个有趣的故事。
句型特点总结：谓语动词后接两个宾语，这两个宾语都是动作的对象或承受者，其中指人的是间接宾语，指物的是直接宾语。当间接宾语放在直接宾语之后时，其前通常需要加介词 for 或 to。

6. S＋V＋O＋OC：主语(Subject)＋谓语(Verb)＋宾语(Object)＋宾语补足语(Object Complement)
The news made us sad.
那个消息令我们难过。
The teacher asked us to answer the question.
老师叫我们回答那个问题。
We must keep our school clean.
我们必须保持我们的学校干净。
句型特点总结：谓语动词后虽然已接一个宾语，但意思还不完整，必须再加上另外一个成分(宾语补足语)对宾语进行补充说明。可以用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、副词、不定式、动名词、分词、介词短语等。

7. S＋V＋P：主语(Subject)＋系动词(Link Verb)＋表语(Predicative)
My sister is a nurse.
我的姐姐是一名护士。
I feel quite hungry.
我感觉很饿。
The ball is under the desk.
那个球在书桌底下。
句型特点总结：谓语动词是系动词，不能表达完整的意思，其后必须接一个能表明主语特征、身份、状态的表语。常见的系动词有 be(是)，become(成为)，get(变得)，turn(变得)，grow(变得)，look(看起来)，feel(摸上去)，smell(闻起来)，taste(尝起来)，sound(听起来)，seem(似乎)，keep(保持)，stay(保持)等。

名师点拨

巧记基本句型
英语句子万万千，基本句型把线牵；
句型种类看动词，后接成分是关键；
系词后面接表语，*vi.* 独身无牵连；
vt. 又可分三类，单宾双宾最常见；
还有宾语补足语，各种搭配记心间。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 选出下面句子分别属于哪种句型

①S V　②S V A　③S V O　④S V O A
⑤S V P　⑥S V IO DO　⑦S V O OC

1. Peter told us a story. ⑥
2. The man next to me smiled. ①
3. I have a lot of books. ③
4. She bought herself a new dress. ⑥
5. He noticed a man enter the room. ⑦
6. I will spend this summer holiday in the countryside. ④
7. The water is clean in our hometown. ⑤
8. I can hear birds singing in the green trees. ⑦
9. The little girl smiled happily. ②
10. I wrote a letter to Jane. ⑥

Ⅱ. 翻译句子

1. 他们举办了一场聚会来庆祝他们的成功。
They held a party to celebrate their success.
2. 在业余时间我喜欢听流行音乐。
I enjoy listening to popular music in my spare time.
3. 我的朋友打算给我做顿饭。
My friend is going to cook me a meal.

Unit 1 课后素养评价（三）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

poster; drama; gym; sharp; inner; topic; debate; take up

1. The students' union has organised a drama club in order to enrich our campus life.
2. There is a debate on whether students should have mobile phones at school.
3. I am sorry to take up so much of your time.
4. The knife is very sharp so you should be careful when using it.
5. A poster has been put up in the main hall saying the upcoming lecture on artificial intelligence. Please attend if you're interested.
6. When talking with British people, you should be careful not to ask about personal topics.
7. These athletes work out at the gym for two hours every day.
8. Take time out during the day for quiet time to listen to your inner voice.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Having worked for two days, I managed to finish the report on schedule.
2. It is no use arguing with him about the question, for he won't change his mind.
3. Doing voluntary (volunteer) work and helping people in need make me happy and satisfied.
4. These buildings show the great intelligence (intelligent) of the Chinese people who are very creative.
5. Every applicant who wants to apply for the job must hand in the application before next Monday. (apply)
6. The Tang poems are various (vary) in form and subject.
7. Many Chinese college students volunteer to be (be) teachers in remote and poor area.
8. People have compared the Olympic Games to a big stage where the athletes take the important role of actors, but volunteers are also indispensable.
9. What do you think of these arguments (argue) on the other side?
10. He decides to go to France to study and is now applying himself to learning (learn) French.

Ⅲ. 翻译句子

1. 国庆节快要到了。(主语＋谓语)
   National Day is coming soon.
2. 我们尚未决定什么时候再讨论这个问题。(主语＋谓语＋宾语)
   We haven't decided when to discuss the problem again.
3. 奶奶昨晚送给我一个非常漂亮的布娃娃。(主语＋谓语＋间接宾语＋直接宾语)
   Grandma gave me a very beautiful doll last night.
4. 这个报告听起来很有意思。(主语＋系动词＋表语)
   The report sounds very interesting.
5. 每天早上我们都能听到他大声朗读英语。(主语＋谓语＋宾语＋宾语补足语)
   Every morning we can hear him read English aloud.
6. 过去十年里，我的家乡发生了巨大变化。(主语＋谓语＋状语)
   Great changes have taken place in my hometown in the past ten years.
7. 学生们走进了教室，又唱又跳。(主语＋谓语＋宾语＋状语)
   The students came into the classroom, singing and dancing.
8. 山顶上有一棵古树。(There be...)
   There is an old tree on the top of the mountain.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

India's first floating (漂浮的) primary school has been opened on Loktak Lake in Manipur. The school lies among the unique floating islands, or "phumdis", of the largest freshwater lake in northeast India.

Loktak Lake, famous for its "phumdis", is often referred to as the "lifeline of Manipur". It plays an important role in the economy (经济) of Manipur. It serves as a source of water for hydropower generation (水力发电) and drinking

water supply. The lake also helps local fishermen make a living.

The school is a wonderful example of sustainable（可持续的）design. Built using local materials such as thatch and bamboo, the school mixes conventional design with modern features. Despite its common appearance, the Loktak Floating Elementary School has computers and Internet connectivity, and it gets its power directly from the sun. Reachable only by boat, it serves as a centre of education for children from nearby communities on other floating islands or along the lake's banks.

The Loktak Floating Elementary School was founded because many children in the Champu Khangpok floating villages were dropping out of school. The recent move of more than 700 floating houses by the Loktak Development Authority caused the fishing community to lose their homes and disrupted the education of their children. With 25 students and two community teachers, the school aims to address the educational needs of dropouts and uneducated adults in the region. Once proven successful, plans are in place for development.

The Loktak Floating Elementary School makes an important step towards providing education for poor communities affected by environmental changes, setting an example for sustainable development in the region.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了印度第一所漂浮小学在曼尼普尔邦的洛克塔克湖上建成，还介绍了该湖泊的重要性、学校的设计特点、创办原因及该学校的意义。

1. Why is Loktak Lake considered the "lifeline of Manipur"?

A. It is important for the local development.

B. It plays a key role in the ecosystem.

C. It is part of the country's culture.

D. It serves as a primary school.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"It plays an important role in the economy（经济）of Manipur. It serves as a source of water for hydropower generation（水力发电）and drinking water supply. The lake also helps local fishermen make a living."可知，该湖对当地的经济、能源、民生均有重要作用，对当地发展意义重大。故选A。

2. What may make the school unique?

A. Its free education.

B. Its modern design.

C. Its excellent service.

D. Its materials and facilities.

D　推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Built using local materials such as thatch and bamboo, the school mixes conventional design with modern features. Despite its common appearance, the Loktak Floating Elementary School has computers and Internet connectivity, and it gets its power directly from the sun."可知，该校以本土传统材料建造，同时配备电脑、网络、太阳能等现代设施。材料与设施的结合是其独特之处。故选D。

3. What does the underlined word "disrupted" in Paragraph 4 mean?

A. Completed.　　B. Upset.

C. Changed.　　D. Benefited.

B　词义猜测题。根据第四段中的"The recent move of more than 700 floating houses by the Loktak Development Authority caused the fishing community to lose their homes and disrupted the education of their children."可知，漂浮房屋的迁移让渔民失去家园，进而打乱了孩子们的教育进程，disrupted意为"打乱"，与upset意义相近。故选B。

4. What could be a suitable title for the text?

A. A Sustainable Building in Manipur

B. Unique Floating Islands in India

C. The First Floating School in India

D. The Importance of Loktak Lake

C　标题归纳题。根据第一段中的"India's first floating（漂浮的）primary school has been opened on Loktak Lake in Manipur."以及全文内容可知，文章围绕印度第一所漂浮小学展开，介绍其建造背景、设计特点、创办原因和意义，所以"印度第一所漂浮小学"适合作为文章标题。故选C。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Know and be able to say what advice Lisa gave about high school life.
2. Study the text and develop a positive high school learning mindset.
3. Develop a spirit of being willing to help others.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. He received the **award** in recognition of his success over the past year. 奖,奖赏
2. His income has been reduced to half its **former** amount due to the economic depression. 从前的
3. I **figured** that if I took the night train, I could be in Scotland by morning. 认为,以为
4. This is the cause (事业) for which we have been **struggling**. 奋斗,拼搏
5. What I'm going to do in this lecture is focus on something very **specific**. 具体的,特定的
6. It might present challenges as well as **opportunities**. 机会,时机
7. It's said that a private **view** of the Summer Exhibition will be held. (一次)观看
8. After graduating from a **junior** middle school, he entered a senior middle school. 低年级的
9. Rhodes is currently **rated** the top junior player in the country. 对……作评估,评价
10. Timor Leste has joined many international sport associations (协会), including the International Olympic **Committee** (IOC). 委员会

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
subscribe *v*. 订阅(报纸或杂志)	subscriber *n*. (报刊的)订阅人,订购者,订户
	subscription *n*. 订阅,订购;(报刊等的)订阅费,订购款
graduate *v*. 毕业	graduation *n*. 毕业
frightened *adj*. 受惊的,害怕的	fright *n*. 惊吓,恐怖
	frighten *v*. 使害怕;惊吓
	frightening *adj*. 令人害怕的
select *v*. 挑选,选择	selection *n*. 选择,挑选;选拔

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
particular *n*. 细节	particularly *adv*. 特别,尤其
refer *v*. 参考,查阅	reference *n*. 参考,查阅
memorise *v*. 记住,熟记	memory *n*. 记忆,记忆力;回忆
	memorable *adj*. 值得纪念的;难忘的
improve *v*. 改善,改进	improvement *n*. 改善,改进
performance *n*. (工作或活动中的)表现	perform *v*. 演出;表现;执行;起……作用
	performer *n*. 表演者;执行者
exchange *v*. 交流(信息、想法等)	exchangeable *adj*. 可交换的;可兑换的;可调换的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. graduate from 从……毕业
2. at the end of 在……结束的时候
3. at the sight of 一见到……
4. go all out 全力以赴,竭尽全力
5. deal with 处理,应对
6. in particular 尤其,特别
7. look back on 回顾,回忆
8. refer to 参考,查阅
9. around the corner 即将来临;在拐角处
10. look forward to (兴奋地)期待,盼望

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:as if 引导表语从句
   I feel as if high school was only yesterday!
   我觉得高中生活就像昨天发生的事一样历历在目!
2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语
   Looking back on my high school life, the most important advice I'd give is these wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou.

回顾高中生活，我能给大家的最重要的建议就是作家玛雅·安吉罗的一句精彩名言。

3. 句型公式：so... that... 引导结果状语从句

... but the teacher spoke so fast that I couldn't take everything down.

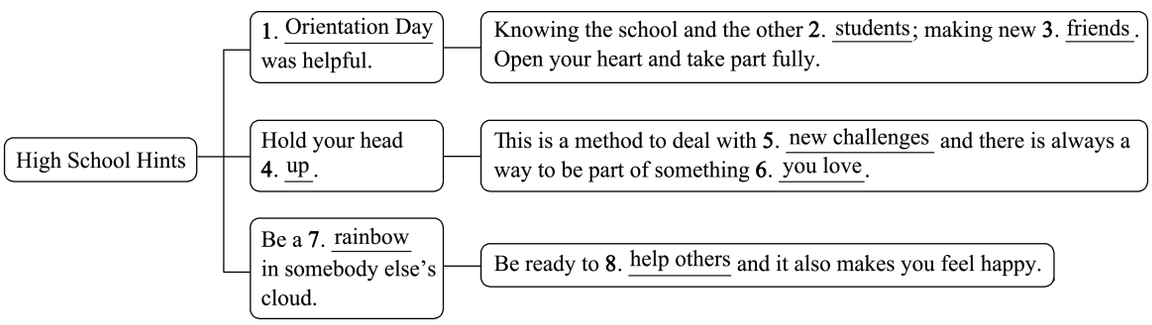
……但是老师讲得太快了，我不能把所有东西都记下来。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What helped Lisa when she first started high school?

A. Her English teacher's advice.

B. Orientation Day.

C. Her parents' support.

D. Her friends' encouragement.

2. How did Lisa deal with the chemistry test at the end of the first week?

A. She decided to face failure bravely.

B. She asked her deskmate for help.

C. She refused to take the exam.

D. She was too frightened to write down the answers.

3. How did Lisa deal with her not being selected for the end-of-year competition?

A. She kept being angry.

B. She tried to forget it.

C. She forgot why she joined the team.

D. She kept working hard to support her teammates.

4. What is the purpose of Lisa using the words from Maya Angelou?

A. To tell us Maya Angelou is a great writer.

B. To tell us we should give our friends a hand when they need it.

C. To tell us she likes Maya Angelou best.

D. To tell us how to make friends.

答案：1～4 BADB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But then I figured I'd better just go all out and see what happens.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。I'd better just go all out and see what happens 是省略了连接词 that 的宾语从句，该从句含有 what 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]不过接着我就觉得，最好还是全力以赴考考看。

2. At first I was really sad, but later I realized that I joined the team for the love of the sport.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but 为并列连词，连接两个并列句。在后一个分句中，that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]一开始我非常难过，但后来我意识到，我是因为热爱这项运动才加入球队的。

3. Looking back on my high school life, the most important advice I'd give is these wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。Looking back on my high school life 为现在分词短语作时间状语；I'd give 为省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句，其先行词为advice。

[尝试翻译]回顾高中生活，我能给大家的最重要的建议就是作家玛雅·安吉洛的一句精彩名言。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Which piece of advice do you find is of great use? Why?
Give your friends a hand when they need it. Because only in this way can you make true friends.

2. If you were Lisa, one student who isn't good at English wants to change the situation, what advice will you give to him/her?
Enlarge his/her vocabulary and keep doing some reading.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. frightened *adj*. 受惊的，害怕的

[教材原文]I was **frightened** at the sight of the test paper.
我一看到试卷就害怕了。

[归纳拓展]
(1)be frightened of... 害怕……
be frightened to do sth. 不敢做某事
be frightened that... 害怕……
(2)fright *n*. 惊吓，恐怖
in fright 害怕
(3)frighten *v*. 使害怕；惊吓
frighten sb. into doing sth. 把某人吓得做某事
frighten... away/off 把……吓跑
frighten sb. to death 把某人吓得要死
(4)frightening *adj*. 令人害怕的

名师点拨

frightening 和 frightened 同为形容词，但用法却不相同。frightening 表示“令人害怕的”，修饰物；frightened 表示“感到害怕的”，修饰人以及人的表情、眼神、声音等。

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
① While I was walking on the dirt path, the darker it was, the more frightened (frighten) I was.
② He froze in fright when he saw the sudden appearance of a snake on the path.
(2)写作微练
(读后续写之情节描写)黑暗中突然窜出的一只狗，差一点儿**把小女孩吓死**。
The sudden appearance of a dog in the dark almost frightened the little girl to death.

2. refer to 参考，查阅；提到，谈到；指的是

[教材原文]**Refer to** the interview for ideas.
参考这个采访来获取想法。

[归纳拓展]
(1) refer to a dictionary = look up sth. in a dictionary 查字典
refer to... as... 称……为……
(2)reference *n*. 参考，查阅
reference book 参考书
in/with reference to sb./sth. 关于某人/某物

名师点拨

refer 是重读闭音节，其过去式、过去分词和现在分词都先双写“r”，再加上“-ed”或“-ing”。类似的词还有 prefer。

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①(2025·浙江1月卷) Referred to as matrix planting, this approach aims for nature to do a lot more of the heavy lifting in the garden, and even some of the designing.
② Apart from the textbooks, I often refer to other reference (refer) materials to assist my studies.
(2)写作微练
①(应用文写作之通知)如果你想知道更多**关于**比赛的信息，请联系我。
If you want to know more in/with reference to the competition, just contact me.(reference)
②(应用文写作之建议信)如果你遇到了不认识的字，你可以**查字典或者向他人求助**。
If you meet with the characters you don't know, you can refer to a dictionary or turn to others for help.(refer)

3. struggle *n*. & *v*. 奋斗，拼搏，努力；斗争，抗争

[教材原文]The teacher found I was **struggling** with note-taking and told me to stop and just listen.
老师发现我记笔记很吃力，就让我停下来听课。

[归纳拓展]
struggle against/with... 同……作斗争；与……抗争
struggle for...为……而斗争/奋斗
struggle to do sth. 努力去做某事；挣扎着做某事
struggle to one's feet 挣扎着站起来

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷) During my first visit to Italy, I struggled to ask (ask) for directions or order in a restaurant.

②Some students might have advanced speaking skills while others may struggle with/against basic conversation.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之投稿)2024年巴黎奥运会期间，中国运动员**奋力争夺奖牌**，给我留下了深刻印象。

During the 2024 Paris Olympic Games, Chinese athletes struggled for medals, which left a deep impression on me.

②(读后续写之动作描写)在结冰的人行道上滑倒后，他迅速抓住附近的围栏寻求支撑，然后缓慢而痛苦地**挣扎着站起来**，继续前行。

After slipping on the icy sidewalk, he quickly held on to the nearby fence for support, and then slowly and painfully struggled to his feet, continuing on his way.

4. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

［教材原文］... but the teacher spoke **so** fast **that** I couldn't take everything down.

……但是老师讲得太快了，我不能把所有东西都记下来。

［归纳拓展］

(1)so... that...意为“如此……以至于……”，引导结果状语从句，so后常接形容词或副词。常见形式：

so+{adj./adv. / adj.+a/an+可数名词单数 / many/few(少量)+可数名词复数 / much/little(少量)+不可数名词}+that从句

(2)such... that... 也表示“如此……以至于……”，但such修饰名词。常见形式：

such+{a/an+adj.+可数名词单数 / adj.+可数名词复数 / adj.+不可数名词}+that从句

(3)在“so... that...”和“such... that...”结构中，当“so/such...”位于句首时，其所在的句子要部分倒装。

名师点拨

so... that...只能引导结果状语从句，而so that既可以引导结果状语从句，也可以引导目的状语从句，且so that引导的目的状语从句中常含有情态动词。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①Some foreigners think electronic payment is so convenient that they all want to use it.

②We had such terrible weather that we couldn't finish the work on time.

③So many benefits does the ocean bring to human beings that great importance can't be attached enough to protecting it.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信)大连是**一个非常有吸引力的地方**，每年都有很多游客来这座城市旅游。

Dalian is such an attractive place that lots of tourists visit the city every year.(such... that...)

→ Dalian is so attractive a place that lots of tourists visit the city every year.(so... that...)

→ So attractive a place is Dalian that lots of tourists visit the city every year.(用倒装句)

多义词汇 专练

1. figure

A. *n*. 身材；体形　　B. *n*. 人物

C. *n*. 数字　　D. *n*. 人影

E. *v*. 认为

①We're told the **figure** can reach 100,000 next year. C

②She realised she looked like a child, with her tiny **figure**. A

③The movement is supported by key **figures** in the three main political parties. B

④I saw a **figure** approaching in the darkness. D

⑤When Coach Pitt blew his whistle (哨子), Eva **figured** she would be left in the dust. E

2. refer to

A. 提及；谈到　　B. 参考；查阅

①If you don't know the exact meaning of the word, you may **refer to** the dictionary. B

②We have reached an agreement that we will not **refer to** the matter again. A

3. (2023·新课标Ⅰ卷听力) If you ever felt that there is more to life than boring jobs, then why not **subscribe** to it? B

A. *v*. 定期捐款　　B. *v*. 订阅
C. *v*. 认购(股份)

4. (2025·全国一卷) In Australia we now have over twenty million cars for just over twenty-six million people, among the highest **rate** of car ownership in the world. B
A. *n*. 费用　　B. *n*. 比率
C. *n*. 速度

5. view
A. *vt*. 观看　B. *vt*. 看待　C. *n*. 视野
D. *n*. 景色　E. *n*. 看法
①(2025·北京卷) It can draw out feelings of gratitude and appreciation if you use that comparison to broaden your **views**. C
②I thought it was impossible to persuade him into accepting my **views**, so I didn't want to waste our time discussing. E
③ Administrators often don't **view** teaching excellence as a way to increase enrolment (注册) or funding. B
④Join a guided bike tour and **view** some of the most popular monuments in Washington, DC. A
⑤I walked up to the top of the hill with my friends, where we enjoyed a splendid **view** of the lake. D

6. particular
A. *adj*. 特定的　B. *adj*. 特别的　C. *adj*. 讲究的　D. *n*. 细节
①(2025·全国一卷) As the world races to decarbonize everything, it faces **particular** problems with transportation. B
②There is one **particular** patient I'd like you to see. A
③ The new contract will be the same in every **particular** as the old one. D
④She's very **particular** about her clothes. C

Unit 1 课后素养评价(四)

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. What's more, all the topics are carefully selected (挑选) and they can help you get a better understanding of Chinese history and culture.
2. I happened to meet my former (从前的) English teacher this morning.
3. Have you exchanged (交换) ideas with your parents about your new job?
4. The listening ability can be improved (提高) as long as you practise listening every day.
5. While walking in the park, I came across an old friend who graduated (毕业) from Peking University.
6. An award (奖) ceremony for the astronauts was held on Tuesday.
7. I do hope you can offer me the precious opportunity (机会) to be a volunteer.
8. She struggled (奋斗) to cope with the pressure and won the gold medal.
9. The Paris Olympics breaks numerous records due to the significant effect that the purple track can have on an athlete's performance (表现).
10. We must never lose sight (看到) of the fact that man must live in harmony with nature.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. There are several specific problems to be dealt with.
2. The whole meal was good, and the wine in particular was excellent.
3. Miriam was too frightened (frighten) to tell her family what had happened.
4. In his speech, the man referred to a recent trip to Canada.
5. This job provides them with an opportunity to develop (develop) new skills.
6. At the Paris Olympics, records were broken through group improvement (improve) rather than individual breakthroughs.
7. In my view, watching the news on TV is a good way to learn English.
8. He was awarded (award) the Nobel Prize for literature soon after the book was published.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

refer to; at the sight of; look forward to; for sure; in particular; deal with; at the end of

1. I miss you very much; I am looking forward to your arrival as soon as possible.
2. We'll have a quiz at the end of the class.
3. I don't know when he will arrive so I can't tell you the time for sure.
4. Parents and coaches in particular should act as better examples for children.
5. There are so many mistakes in your writing, so you must deal with them immediately.
6. The famous scientist referred to global warming at least three times in his speech.
7. At the sight of the fascinating scenery, I couldn't contain my excitement any longer.

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 他的眼睛闪闪发光，就好像星星在闪烁。(as if)
   His eyes sparkled, as if stars were shining in them.
2. 她断定自己把包落在火车上了。(must have done)
   She reasoned that she must have left her bag on the train.
3. 拿起这个奖的时候，我是如此激动以至于热泪盈眶。(状语从句的省略)
   When taking up the award, I was so excited that tears welled up in my eyes.
4. 一个灿烂的笑容不仅能使我们自己高兴，而且能使他人感到愉快。(not only... but also...)
   A beautiful smile not only can make ourselves happy, but also can enable others to feel delighted.
5. 享受你将阅读到的一切，告诉我们你的想法。(what 引导宾语从句)
   Enjoy what you are about to read. And tell us what you think.
6. 他如此激动，以至于几乎连话都说不出来了。(部分倒装)
   So excited was he that he could hardly say a word.

Ⅴ. 语法填空

Making good habits in high school is really important. High school is when you start doing more things on your own. Here is why it's a good idea to get into good habits now.

Good habits help you do better in school. If you can keep track of your time, you can handle your homework and have fun too. This means you'll get better **1.** scores (score). You can do this by making **2.** a schedule for when to do your homework and study.

Good habits help you stay healthy and happy. Playing sports, eating right, and getting enough sleep **3.** are (be) good for your body and your mind. These habits can help you feel less worried and be ready **4.** to face (face) difficult situations.

What's more, good habits teach you to be **5.** really (real) responsible and independent (独立的). If you learn to manage your time and tasks well, you can take care of **6.** yourself (you). This gets you ready for the freedom (自由) you'll have in college and later in life.

High school is a big time for making habits **7.** that/which will stay with you. These habits help you do well **8.** in school and make you a happier and **9.** healthier (healthy) person. Work on making good habits now, **10.** and you'll be ready for whatever comes next.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是高一学生李华，你进入高中已经大约两个月了。请根据下列提示用英语写一篇日记，记录新学校的情况。

1. 校园面貌；
2. 老师、同学的情况；
3. 校园生活。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；
2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

Friday November 2nd Sunny

【参考范文】

Friday November 2nd Sunny

Since I became a senior high school student, it has been two months, so I have gradually adapted myself to my life here. The new campus is very fabulous, which has a variety of advanced facilities and green plants as well as colourful flowers. Our teachers are enthusiastic and friendly, the class is orderly, and everyone here studies hard.

Every day, we're occupied with our study. We have more subjects than we did in junior high school. With more subjects to learn, we have more homework to do and less leisure time. Though our

life is busy, we still have time to relax ourselves. There are lots of activities and different clubs, which make our after-class life rich.

I love my new school and new friends.

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Voice of Rigo

Rigo had a loud voice. People were always telling Rigo to be quiet. His mother would tell him to use his quiet voice inside the house because the baby was asleep. His father would ask him to speak quietly in the car so that he could concentrate on his driving. His teacher would tell him to talk quietly so he would not bother others who were studying.

Not only did he have a loud voice, but Rigo liked to talk a lot. Whenever he had time, he would talk with his classmates, sharing everything that he considered fun. He liked to yell and shout. Sometimes he just yelled, "Hey!" for no reason. He liked the sound of his very loud voice for he thought it had more penetrating (穿透的) power than that of an actor. But not everyone felt the same way.

When Rigo shouted goodbye as he left for school, his mother shook her head, "Rigo! Be quiet!" When his father drove him to school, Rigo said, "Hey! There's Chris!" He pointed at his friend, who was walking to school. His father shook his head, "Rigo, use a quiet voice in the car." At school, his teacher talked to him three times about using his quiet voice. His classmates shook their heads, throwing an upset look at him when he talked aloud.

Later, Rigo had to sit by himself for a while. His teacher wanted him to practise being quiet. Rigo had to sit quietly for five minutes. It felt like five hours or five days. When the five minutes was up, Rigo went to his desk and sat quietly. It was not easy.

After school, Rigo was waiting for his father when he saw Chris again. "Hey!" he yelled. "Chris! Hey!" The headmaster was walking by. Rigo was sure he was going to get in trouble for his loud voice. He looked quickly at the ground. Maybe the headmaster would keep walking.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

The headmaster stopped and looked at Rigo. __

He said goodbye to the headmaster and ran to get in his father's car cheerfully. __

【参考范文】

The headmaster stopped and looked at Rigo. He waited at the roadside until Rigo raised his head. Confusedly, it seemed as if the headmaster had found a great treasure. Rigo twisted uneasily. "Do you like acting?" asked the headmaster. "I've never seen an actor who speaks louder than you. You are sure to become an extraordinary actor." "Me? An extraordinary actor?" Rigo couldn't believe his ears. "Yes, you," the headmaster said. "A good actor must be able to speak aloud on the stage to make himself heard by every one of his audience. You can do that!" At that moment, Rigo saw his father. "By the way, a good actor knows he should use his quiet voice off the stage," added the headmaster.

He said goodbye to the headmaster and ran to get in his father's car cheerfully. "Dad, the headmaster said I was going to become an extraordinary actor!" he yelled proudly. The next second, he seemed to remember what the headmaster had told him, and lowered his voice, "Yes, I know when to speak at a loud voice." His father was surprised at his change. Rigo then told him what happened just now and promised he would practise speaking quietly. Pleased, his father smiled, "Yes, you're to become an extraordinary actor, for yourself, and for the headmaster."

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——有关高中生活的日记

○写作指导

日记是以记叙一天生活中所见、所闻、所做或所思为内容的一种文体。写英语日记一般要注意以下几点：

1. 规范的格式：英语日记通常由两部分组成，即书端和正文。书端用于记载写日记的日期和天气情况。它位于正文上面的第一行，顶格写起。日期写在第一行的左上角，天气情况写在第一行的右上角。
2. 正确的人称：日记是对生活的记录，是把自己一天中有意义的事情记录下来所形成的书面材料，故写日记多用第一人称。
3. 正确的时态：日记一般记叙当天发生的事，因此多用过去时态。但如果谈论个人感悟或说明客观事实、普遍真理时，可用现在时态。

○典题示例

假定你是高一学生李华，你进入高中已有一周。请根据下列提示用英语写一篇日记，介绍你的新学校的情况。

1. 校园面貌；
2. 同学情况；
3. 校园生活。

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	日记
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第一、第三人称为主
要点	1. 导入话题 2. 介绍新学校的情况 3. 个人感受

Step 2：要点补全

①I entered senior high（进入高中）a week ago.

②The new school left a deep impression on me（给我留下了深刻的印象）.

③The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around（周边有很多树）.（with 复合结构）

④They are all hard-working and it puts me under pressure（使我处于压力之下）.

⑤However, I decide to go all out（全力以赴）and face the challenges bravely（勇敢地面对挑战）.

⑥We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities（参加各种各样的课外活动）.

Step 3：句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句①升级为含有 since 引导的时间状语从句的句子

It is a week since I entered senior high.

②将 Step 2 中句④升级为含有 which 引导的定语从句的主从复合句

They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure.

Step 4：连句成篇

Tuesday September 8th　　Sunny

It is a week since I entered senior high. The new school left a deep impression on me.

The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around. Our classroom is big and there are forty-five students in our class. They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure. However, I decide to go all out and face the challenges bravely. We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities. So we lead a very colourful school life.

All in all, I think that my first week at senior high is a very good experience.

○学以致用

假定你是李华，今天（星期六，9 月 21 日，晴）在公园散步时遇到一位外国游客。你和他进行了交流。请围绕这件事写一篇英语日记。要点如下：

1. 你想跟他交谈却有些紧张；
2. 你向他介绍你的城市；
3. 他给你一些学习英语的建议。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Saturday September 21 Fine

This morning when I was taking a walk in a park, I saw a foreigner enjoying the beauty of the city.

I wanted to talk with him, but I was so nervous that I didn't know how to start a conversation. Eager to practise my spoken English, I encouraged myself and went to say hello to him. He was very friendly and we talked for about 15 minutes. As a native, I introduced some tourist attractions and tasty food of our city to him.

Finally, he gave me some advice on how to improve my English further. What an unforgettable experience!

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

I'm a sixth-grade maths teacher. One day in class, I decided to divide the kids into three teams and have them compete to solve maths problems. In the first round, each team would have one student at the blackboard to solve the same maths problem. The rest of the students weren't allowed to give the clue.

By drawing lots (抽签), it was Steven, Derek and Alyssa that took part in the first round. Steven came from Team 1, Derek from Team 2 and Alyssa from Team 3. Steven and Derek were best at maths in class. Alyssa was the opposite. But she was one of the sweetest and kindest girls in class, one who always wore a shy smile and never said a bad word about anybody.

When the three kids were at the blackboard, Team 1 and Team 2 exchanged happy looks. The students on Team 3 were upset. I gave Alyssa a look of encouragement and the competition started.

"13÷80=? And use the percentage to express the final answer," I instructed. "Go!" The boys were off like racehorses, working their problem. Alyssa just stared blankly at the blackboard. By the time she started writing, Steven and Derek had already finished.

"Steven was first, Mrs Zimmers!" Team 1 yelled. I checked his work. Unbelievably, he had the wrong answer. He had successfully divided 13 by 80 to get 0.1625. But his final answer was 1.625% when it should have been 16.25%. "That's incorrect," I said. Some students in Team 2 burst into cheers, believing the victory was theirs. I moved over to check Derek's work, assuming this would be the end of the round.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

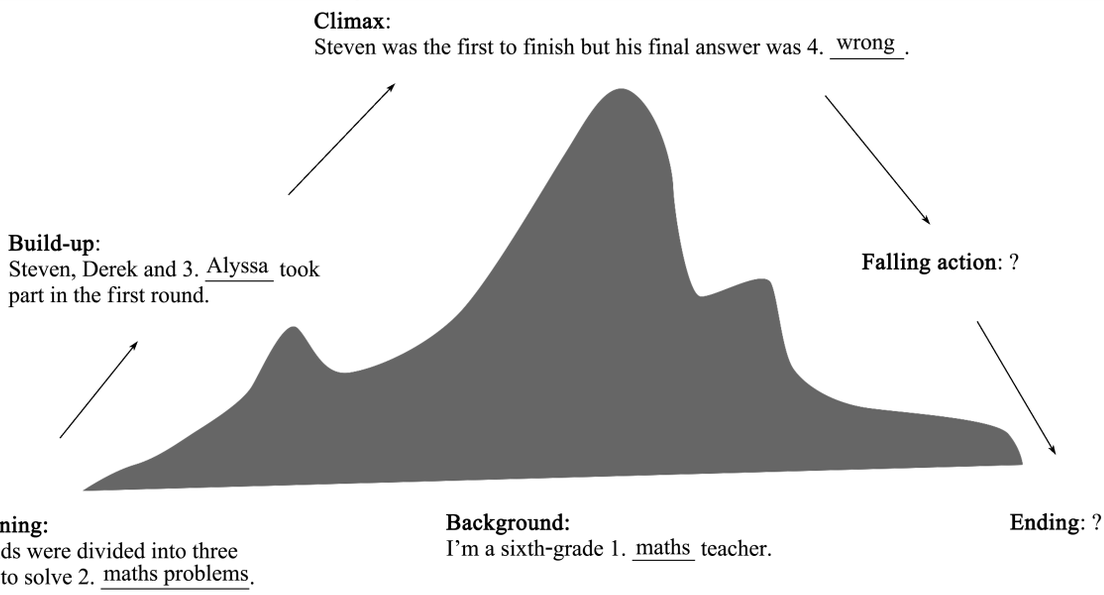
As I looked over Derek's answer, I couldn't believe what I was seeing. _____

_____

Through it all, Alyssa kept working. _____

_____

任务一:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： As I looked over Derek's answer, I couldn't believe what I was seeing. _____	**1.** What did Mrs Zimmers find? Derek made the same mistake as Steven. **2.** What was the other kids' reaction to Steven and Derek? They discussed the errors. **3.** What was Alyssa doing then? She was keeping on working out the problem.
Paragraph 2： Through it all, Alyssa kept working. _____	**1.** Did Alyssa solve the problem correctly? Yes. **2.** How did Mrs Zimmers react this time? Mrs Zimmers thought it was wrong to divide the kids into three teams.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. He had made the same mistake（犯同样的错误）as Steven.
2. I was surprised（感到惊讶）since the two boys rarely made errors.
3. "I'm sorry, Derek. That's also incorrect（那也是不正确的），" I said.
4. As I watched the boys rework their division（重新分工），I also watched Alyssa.
5. She was inching closer and closer（一点点靠近）to her own answer. "Go, Alyssa!"I thought.
6. As the two boys tried to figure out（努力想弄清楚）where they went wrong, their teams were screaming at them, adding to the pressure（增加压力）.
7. Team 3 suddenly came alive（突然变得活跃），as they realised Alyssa might score a point.
8. "Come on, Alyssa!" they screamed（他们尖叫起来）.
9. I also screamed, "Keep going（坚持下去），Alyssa!"
10. This girl, always struggling, really needed encouragement（需要鼓励）.
11. Alyssa eventually finished with the answer（最终算出答案）16.25%.
12. "Point goes to Team 3!" I yelled（我喊道）.
13. Since that class, I no longer（不再）think students fit into three categories.
14. We're all just humans（只是普通人）.
15. At times, we make mistakes; at other times, we achieve the impossible（成就不可能的事情）.

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

As I looked over Derek's answer, I couldn't believe what I was seeing. He had made the same mistake as Steven. I was surprised since the two boys rarely made errors. "I'm sorry, Derek. That's also incorrect," I said. As I watched the boys rework their division, I also watched Alyssa. She was inching closer and closer to her own answer. "Go, Alyssa!" I thought. As the two boys tried to figure out where they went wrong, their teams were screaming at them, adding to the pressure.

Through it all, Alyssa kept working. Team 3 suddenly came alive, as they realised Alyssa might score a point. "Come on, Alyssa!" they screamed. I also screamed, "Keep going, Alyssa!" This girl, always struggling, really needed encouragement. Alyssa eventually finished with the answer 16.25%. "Point goes to Team 3!" I yelled. Since that class, I no longer think students fit into three categories. We're all just humans. At times, we make mistakes; at other times, we achieve the impossible.

单元质量评估(一)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

At Steveston-London Secondary School (SLSS), over 30 clubs and extra-curricular activities, from art to weight training, are open to all students. Participation offers the chance to meet like-minded students, build friendships, and create unforgettable memories, which will make up your best memories of senior high school. Here are four most popular ones at SLSS.

· Book Club

The Book Club offers a platform for students to connect through reading, discussion, and shared curiosity. The goal is to encourage meaningful conversations and diverse opinions as well as build a stronger community of teen readers, where students can explore books beyond the classroom—developing communication and critical thinking skills through attractive, book-related activities.

· Girls Weight Room Club

The Girls Weight Room Club is built to create a space for students to explore fitness and strength training. Our club helps everyone to feel confident and comfortable in their fitness journey. The goal is to build a positive community where students can build strength, learn together, and grow both physically and mentally.

· Helping Hearts

The club aims to bring students together through fun and meaningful fundraising events that support both SLSS and the wider community, where members gain hands-on experience in event planning, teamwork, and leadership—while raising money for important causes. Most importantly, it builds a sense of unity and purpose, helping create a more connected and caring community at SLSS.

· E-Sports Club

The E-Sports Club stands out by offering students a unique chance to take part in competitive gaming while developing important skills like teamwork, communication, and problem-solving. Through organized practices, tournaments, and strategic discussions, students can connect, grow, and represent SLSS with pride.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了史蒂文森伦敦中学(SLSS)四个热门社团的活动内容与特色,供学生选择。

1. Which club is suitable for a girl who wants to keep fit?

A. Book Club.

B. Girls Weight Room Club.

C. Helping Hearts.

D. E-Sports Club.

B 细节理解题。根据·**Girls Weight Room Club**部分中的"The Girls Weight Room Club is built to create a space for students to explore fitness and strength training."可知,该社团是为学生探索健身和力量训练而设立的,适合想要保持健康的女孩。故选B。

2. What do Book Club and Helping Hearts have in common?

A. Focus on classroom learning.

B. Encourage community building.

C. Develop communication skills.

D. Raise money for important events.

B 细节理解题。根据·**Book Club**部分中的"The goal is to encourage meaningful conversations and diverse opinions as well as build a stronger community of teen readers"及·**Helping Hearts**部分中的"Most importantly, it builds a sense of unity and purpose, helping create a more connected and caring community at SLSS."可知,两个社团的共同点是鼓励社群建设。故选B。

3. What makes the E-Sports Club special?

A. It is officially organized by SLSS.

B. It gives students a chance to relax.

C. It combines gaming with personal growth.

D. It helps students gain career opportunities.

C 细节理解题。根据·**E-Sports Club**部分中的"The E-Sports Club stands out by offering students a unique chance to take part in competitive gaming while developing important skills like teamwork, communication, and problem-solving."可知,电子竞技社团的特别之处在于它将游戏与个人成长结合起来。故选C。

B

I was said to be the worst student in my class and my family thought I was hopeless. When I was in grade six, a new teacher, Miss Sadia, came to our school.

One day after class, she noticed that I was staying alone during the lunch break. She came to me and began to talk to me. It was just a normal conversation. After that day, she gave me much attention and it made me feel special. I started to work hard because she gave me the feeling that someone believed me, and my grades started to

improve in her subject.

Months later, she moved into a house near my home. We would walk home together after school. Her constant support helped me, especially in my studies, as I knew she would check my grades both in her subject and the other subjects. I finally came second in my class.

Then, after the sixth grade, she started to drift apart but still kept a check on me. By the time I was in the seventh grade, she hardly spoke to me, but by then I had become the best in my class. When I left school, I was out of touch with her as she never answered the phone when I called her.

Then I graduated and went to a good university. One fine day, our paths crossed again. I met her at a wedding. I could not help asking her, "Why did you stop talking to me?"

"You are a clever boy. I wanted you to be a tree standing on your own roots, not depending on others. Now here you are and I feel proud of you. You are your inspiration and do not need to look for a shoulder," she said. I could not say anything, but I smiled. I'll always thank her.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了成绩很差的作者在小学时遇到了 Sadia 老师，在她的帮助和鼓励下，作者的成绩很快就上来了。然而在那之后，Sadia 老师不再和他交谈了。作者在毕业后和老师的一次偶遇中才知道，原来老师就是要让他独立，不要总是依赖别人。作者很感谢 Sadia 老师。

4. What can we know about the author in his first sixth grade?

A. He did very badly in his studies.

B. He found his teacher the worst.

C. He didn't talk with his parents.

D. He was hopeful about his future.

A　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"I was said to be the worst student in my class and my family thought I was hopeless."可知，作者学习很差。故选 A。

5. What made the author decide to work hard?

A. An unusual conversation.

B. His previous teacher's support.

C. His parents' encouragement.

D. Miss Sadia's special attention.

D　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"After that day, she gave me much attention and it made me feel special. I started to work hard because she gave me the feeling that someone believed me..."可知，Miss Sadia 的特别关注使作者决定努力学习。故选 D。

6. What does the underlined phrase "drift apart" in Paragraph 4 most probably mean?

A. Be more friendly.

B. Get angry.

C. Move away.

D. Become less close.

D　词义猜测题。根据第三段中的"We would walk home together after school. Her constant support helped me..."以及画线词后面的"By the time I was in the seventh grade, she hardly spoke to me..."可知，作者和老师的关系由六年级时的亲密变成了七年级时的不太亲密，故画线词要表示这种变化。故选 D。

7. Why did Miss Sadia stop talking to the author?

A. She just disliked talking to him anymore.

B. She wanted him to grow independent.

C. She was too busy with her own wedding.

D. She had no way to get in touch with him.

B　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"I wanted you to be a tree standing on your own roots, not depending on others."可推断出，Miss Sadia 之所以不和作者交谈，其目的是想让作者变得独立起来，不要总是依赖别人。故选 B。

C

With the recent discussion about the health benefits of fish oil and other wellness plans, it can make you feel less worried to know that one thing never changes: Exercise is good for your health. Any movement, even walking, brings about a host of cardiovascular (心血管的) effects that can help you live longer, feel better, and not run out of breath when chasing children or small animals.

The question of how much exercise is best, though, is open to discussion. The answer often depends on your goals. For heart health, sessions four to five times weekly might be perfect. For mental health? As a newspaper reports, scientists believe there's a pretty specific prescription (处方): Exercising for 45 minutes three to five times a week.

Researchers at a university made the study. They examined 1.2 million subjects (实验对象) who filled out the Behavioural Risk Factor Surveillance Survey at two-year intervals (间隔时间) between 2011 and 2015.

Subjects who didn't exercise at all had an average of three-and-a-half days per month when they felt mentally unwell—stressed, depressed, or suffering from emotional problems—while those who exercised regularly reported an average of just two days.

The study found that having three to five 45-minute sessions of exercise a week was best for reducing the reported problems of feeling stressed or depressed. Exercising for longer periods—some subjects reported more than 90 minutes in the gym—was connected with a drop-off in mental health benefits. Subjects who spent three hours at a time exercising actually reported an increase in depressive symptoms (症状).

Researchers also found that the kind of exercise undertaken made a difference. While all kinds of exercise helped, people who took part in team sports

promoting social communication and gym classes like cycling described greater self-satisfaction with mental health.

Because the study included self-reported outcomes and exercise wasn't monitored, it's possible that the subjects could have misread the amount of exercise performed. The study, however, makes a convincing case for a popular opinion: If exercise were a pill, doctors everywhere would be prescribing it.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了有一件事永远不会改变——锻炼对你的健康有益。然而,一个人的最佳运动量往往取决于他的目标。

8. What is the decisive factor for a person's right amount of exercise?

A. Personal career.

B. Personal interest.

C. Family background.

D. Personal goals.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"The question of how much exercise is best, though, is open to discussion. The answer often depends on your goals."可知,一个人的最佳运动量往往取决于他的目标。故选D。

9. What do the numbers in Paragraphs 4 and 5 show?

A. The health benefits of exercise.

B. People's response to hard exercise.

C. How exercise influences one's mental health.

D. Why positive attitudes promote one's exercise.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"an average of three-and-a-half days per month when they felt mentally unwell"与"... while those who exercised regularly reported an average of just two days."和第五段中的"The study found that having three to five 45-minute sessions of exercise a week was best for reducing the reported problems of feeling stressed or depressed."可知,这两段中的数字说明了运动对健康的好处。故选A。

10. Which of the following sports may bring people more pleasure?

A. Tai chi. B. Climbing.

C. Volleyball. D. Diving.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的"While all kinds of exercise helped, people who took part in team sports promoting social communication and gym classes like cycling described greater self-satisfaction with mental health."并结合各个选项的运动项目可推知,排球这项运动能给人们带来更多的乐趣。故选C。

11. What may be the reason for the disadvantage of the study?

A. The researchers' preference.

B. The subjects' personal judgments.

C. The limited number of participants.

D. The failure to consider doctors' suggestions.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"Because the study included self-reported outcomes and exercise wasn't monitored, it's possible that the subjects could have misread the amount of exercise performed."可推知,这项研究的缺点可能是受试者的个人判断。故选B。

D

The decline of the liberal arts (文科) has drawn increasing attention in the world of higher education. As some universities around the world have adjusted and even cut liberal arts courses, we could be forgiven for wondering: are the liberal arts dead?

The history of the liberal arts can be traced back to Aristotle's classification of knowledge. In ancient China, the liberal arts also played a central role in national governance and social development. The Industrial Revolution, however, marked a turning point. During the two world wars, STEM subjects (Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics) received greater attention in order to meet urgent military demands. After World War Ⅱ, the rise of new fields like computer science led universities to prefer science and engineering majors even further.

In recent years, liberal arts majors have faced mounting challenges. In the job market, graduates with liberal arts degrees often find themselves at a disadvantage. Salary is what they care about most, but the data from the 2024 China Undergraduate Employment Report showed that among the top 20 highest-earning majors in China, no liberal arts majors made the list.

Universities have the right and the responsibility to prepare students well for future jobs. Education resources tend to be concentrated on science and engineering subjects that lead to better jobs, and this tendency (趋势) is driven by market demand.

Liberal arts aim to improve life and society. In fact, the more developed a society is, the more liberal arts are needed. Human development requires liberal arts that keep up with the times. Today, what we need is the kind of social sciences that can adapt to modern society. Liberal arts must welcome the Internet, big data, AI, and so on.

Future-centred humanities education should not and cannot promise a direct path to a specific career. Instead, they provide essential qualities for all scientists and engineers. While not teaching job skills directly, liberal arts cultivate citizens with critical thinking, cross-cultural awareness, and the ability to think on their own.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要探讨了文科发展式微的现状、历史原因,并论证了文科的价值及与时俱进的发展方向。

12. What was a historical reason for the increased

focus on STEM subjects?

A. The rise of liberal arts in ancient China.

B. The philosophical teachings of Aristotle.

C. The need to meet demands during wartime.

D. The development of the Internet and big data.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“During the two world wars, STEM subjects (Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics) received greater attention in order to meet urgent military demands.”可知，STEM学科受关注度提升的一个历史原因是战时的需求。故选C。

13. Why does the author mention the 2024 China Undergraduate Employment Report?

A. To argue that liberal arts are more important than STEM.

B. To explain why universities are cutting liberal arts courses.

C. To show that liberal arts graduates earn the highest salaries.

D. To prove that liberal arts are not listed among top-earning majors.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知，作者引用该报告是为了阐释文科毕业生在就业和薪资方面存在劣势，这也是高校调整甚至削减文科课程的重要原因。故选B。

14. How can liberal arts subjects keep up with the times?

A. By opening doors to technologies.

B. By focusing on education resources.

C. By teaching job skills directly.

D. By cultivating self-learning ability.

A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Human development requires liberal arts that keep up with the times. Today, what we need is the kind of social sciences that can adapt to modern society. Liberal arts must welcome the Internet, big data, AI, and so on.”可知，文科与时俱进的方式是接纳、融合各类新技术。故选A。

15. Which of the following would be the best title for the passage?

A. Are STEM Subjects More Important?

B. Why Liberal Arts Are Not Needed?

C. Why Liberal Arts Graduates Earn Less?

D. Are Liberal Arts Losing Ground?

D 标题归纳题。文章开篇以“高校调整、削减文科课程，文科是否已消亡”的问题引出话题，随后分析STEM学科受重视的历史原因、文科面临的就业薪资挑战，接着论证文科的核心价值，最后提出文科需融合新技术、与时俱进的发展方向。全文围绕文科发展式微的现状展开，探讨其是否走向衰落。D项“文科正在失去优势吗?”可作为最佳标题。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Mr Smith has been teaching science for over twenty years, but it was his latest project that really inspired his students. This semester, he introduced a greenhouse to the school garden. **16** The students were excited, eager to learn about planting and caring for different types of vegetables and flowers.

As the project progressed, he encouraged his students to take responsibility. **17** They learned about the science of ecosystems, the importance of photosynthesis, and how to track growth cycles. “I want to show you that science is more than just facts and figures. It's about seeing the results of your hard work,” he would say.

One day, during lunch, a group of students gathered around the greenhouse. **18** They started discussing which vegetables would be ready to harvest by the end of the month. The excitement in their voices was obvious.

19 He knew that he had succeeded in making science meaningful. He encouraged his students to think critically. He believed that these lessons would help the students not only academically but also personally.

By the end of the semester, not only did the students gain knowledge about botany, but they also learned the value of teamwork and patience. The greenhouse became more than a classroom; it was a place of discovery and growth. Mr Smith's creative teaching method created a lasting impact. **20**

A. It became a centre of activity.

B. Mr Smith smiled at their passion.

C. They eagerly shared their predictions.

D. Students learned how to start a conversation.

E. Mr Smith was disappointed at the result of the project.

F. His students left with memories they would treasure forever.

G. They took turns watering the plants, recording data and so on.

答案：16～20 AGCBF

Ⅲ. 完形填空

Donald first came across Jim in his English class. He then saw an unhappy boy, who'd gone deep into a state of ___21___.

Donald might have thought that Jim was ___22___ or uninterested. Certainly, he appeared to be both those things. But he right away became happy whenever the subject ___23___ poetry. It was ___24___ but Donald could see a change in his behaviour—a quiet but professional ___25___ in any discussion of Shakespeare, Chaucer, or Tennyson.

One day Donald ___26___ Jim after school and learned that Jim stuttered (有言语障碍). The next day, Donald told the pupils to write a ___27___. Jim turned his assignment in, and Donald was ___28___ by how good it was. Donald had noticed earlier that Jim's stutter ___29___ whenever he read his favourite

poems out loud. So he said, "Jim, would you kindly come __30__ the front of the class and read us what you've written?"

Jim rose to his feet and recited (背诵) "Ode to Grapefruit" just __31__ he had written it. What a voice it turned out to be: big and __32__ as a bell. That was the day Donald __33__ one of the most powerful and familiar voices in the world. The boy stuttered whenever he read aloud, but not when he recited from __34__. The world, it seemed, was too __35__ to contain a voice as big as Jim's.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Donald 在英语课上发现不开心的 Jim 很喜欢诗歌,所以鼓励他朗诵诗歌,最终有言语障碍的 Jim 成功地在全班同学面前背诵出自己写的诗歌。

21. A. satisfaction　　B. responsibility
C. silence　　D. comfort
C　根据下文的"Donald might have thought that Jim was __22__ or uninterested." 和 "Donald could see a change in his behaviour—a quiet but professional..."可知,Donald 看到男孩不开心,并且很安静、不说话。故选 C。

22. A. bored　　B. mental
C. curious　　D. potential
A　根据上文的"He then saw an unhappy boy, who'd gone deep into a state of __21__."可知,Jim 可能因为厌倦或者不感兴趣,所以不开心。故选 A。

23. A. stuck to　　B. turned to
C. responded to　　D. counted on
B　根据上文的"But he right away became happy..."可知,但是每当上诗歌课时他就会立刻开心起来。故选 B。

24. A. shallow　　B. wonderful
C. terrible　　D. unnoticeable
D　根据下文的"but Donald could see a change in his behaviour—a quiet but professional"可知,虽然不明显,但是 Donald 可以看出来。故选 D。

25. A. voice　　B. guidance
C. independence　　D. confidence
D　根据上文的"But he right away became happy..."可知,Jim 开心是因为学诗歌而自信,并且高兴起来。故选 D。

26. A. reminded　　B. kept
C. gathered　　D. ignored
B　根据下文的"... after school and learned that Jim stuttered (有言语障碍)."可知,Donald 在放学后留下 Jim,这才发现他有言语障碍。故选 B。

27. A. content　　B. poem
C. story　　D. saying
B　根据下文的"Jim rose to his feet and recited (背诵) 'Ode to Grapefruit' just __31__ he had written it."可知,Donald 让他的学生们写首诗。故选 B。

28. A. respected　　B. inspired
C. disturbed　　D. surprised
D　根据下文的"... how good it was."可知,Donald 没想到 Jim 能写出如此好的诗,他感到很惊讶。故选 D。

29. A. recovered　　B. continued
C. disappeared　　D. existed
C　根据下文的"The boy stuttered whenever he read aloud, but not when he recited from __34__."可知,Jim 在背诗时很流利。故选 C。

30. A. in　　B. to
C. with　　D. on
B　根据下文的"the front of the class and read us"可知,Donald 让 Jim 到教室前面给大家背自己写的诗,此处指来到教室前面,come to"来到"符合语境。故选 B。

31. A. until　　B. before
C. as　　D. when
C　结合语境可知,此处应用 as 引导方式状语从句。故选 C。

32. A. clear　　B. secure
C. efficient　　D. horrible
A　根据下文的"as a bell"可知,声音很清楚、响亮。故选 A。

33. A. raised　　B. lost
C. attracted　　D. recognised
D　根据下文的"... one of the most powerful and familiar voices in the world."可知,这是 Donald 那天认可的最强大、最熟悉的声音之一。故选 D。

34. A. books　　B. teachers
C. materials　　D. memory
D　根据上文的"The boy stuttered whenever he read aloud, but not when he recited..."可知,Jim 凭着记忆力背诵时口齿清晰。故选 D。

35. A. large　　B. small
C. tough　　D. unique
B　根据下文的"... contain a voice as big as Jim's."可知,Donald 比喻世界太小,容纳不下 Jim 这么大的声音。故选 B。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Lisa **36.** entered (enter) senior high school last week. Her first day at senior high **37.** finally (final) arrived after she had pictured it over and over again in **38.** her (she) mind. She was not outgoing and a little anxious. She wondered how to make a good first **39.** impression (impress).

She found that her first maths class was quite difficult, but the teacher was kind **40.** and friendly. He even told the students a joke **41.** to make (make) them laugh. In the afternoon, she had a chemistry class in the science lab. However, the student next to her tried to talk to her, which made **42.** it difficult for her to concentrate on the experiment.

However, after the first school day was over, Lisa's worry disappeared. She didn't feel awkward and **43.** frightened (frighten) any longer. Although she missed her friends from junior high school, she

believed that she would make new friends here. Now, she is curious **44.** about what she will learn and becomes more confident. She is looking forward to **45.** having (have) her next class.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华，你的英国笔友汤姆(Tom)即将升入高中，对海外高中校园社团活动十分感兴趣。请你给他写一封邮件，邀请他下学期加入你所在学校的线上英语社团，内容包括：

1. 社团特色(英语演讲、主题分享、小组交流)；
2. 活动时间；
3. 参与意义(结识朋友、适应全新校园生活)。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

How is everything going these days? I know you're curious about high school clubs, so I'd love to invite you to join our school's online English club next term.

We have three main activities: English speeches, themed sharing sessions, and small-group discussions. We meet every Saturday afternoon from 7:00 to 8:30 pm (Beijing time).

Joining us will help you make new friends, and get a real taste of high school life before you start.

Looking forward to your reply!

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I have a friend named Monty Robert who owns a horse ranch (大农场).

The last time I was there, he introduced by saying: "I want to tell you a story. It all goes back to a story about a young man who was the son of an itinerant (流动的) horse trainer who would go from stable (马厩) to stable, race track to race track, farm to farm and ranch to ranch, training horses. As a result, the boy's high school career was continually interrupted. When he was a senior, he was asked to write a paper about what he wanted to be and do when he grew up."

He went on saying, "That night he wrote a seven-page paper describing his goal of someday owning a horse ranch. He wrote about his dream in great details, and he even drew a diagram of a 200-acre ranch, showing the location of all the buildings, the stables and the track. Then he drew a detailed floor plan for a 4,000-square-foot house that would sit on a 200-acre dream ranch. He put much his heart into the project and, the next day, he handed it in to his teacher. Two days later he received his paper back. On the front page was a large red F with a note that read, 'See me after class.'"

"The boy with the dream went to see the teacher after class and asked, 'Why did I receive an F?' The teacher said, 'This is an unrealistic dream for a young boy like you. You come from an itinerant family. You have no money or resources. Owning a horse ranch requires a lot of money. You have to buy the land, pay for the original breeding stock and later pay large stud (配种) fees. There's no way you could ever do it.' Then the teacher added, 'Next week, if you rewrite this paper with a more realistic goal, I will reconsider your grade.'"

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

The boy thought about it long hard at home, and asked his father what he should do. _____

Monty then turned to me and said, "The boy in the story is me. _____

【参考范文】

The boy thought about it long hard at home, and asked his father what he should do. With a frown appearing on the forehead, the father decided to let his son make up his own mind, thinking that it was an important decision for him. Not getting any advice from his father, he looked at the paper he wrote. Soon, he showed his father a determined look. After a week, he handed in the same paper, making no changes at all, and stated that the teacher could keep the F and he'd keep his dream.

Monty then turned to me and said, "The boy in the story is me. Now you are sitting in my horse ranch, and I still have that school paper." He added proudly. The best part of the story was that two years ago the same teacher brought 30 kids to camp out on his ranch. When the teacher was leaving, he made him realise he had been the boy with the goal that he thought was unrealistic. Shamed, the teacher left. As Monty concluded at last, don't let anyone steal your dreams and just follow your heart.

Unit 2 Exploring English

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Self", focusing on English learning and exploration. This unit opens with an introduction to the current state of English use and learning, as well as the history of the English language. You will read texts about the diversity, creativity and misunderstandings in English. You will learn about English word-formation and the differences between British English and American English. Through this unit, you are expected to reflect on the relationship between language and society development, and develop your own understanding of cross-cultural communication in language learning.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	了解词汇的词根、词缀，掌握词性变化的规律，并用于理解和表达有关"英语学习"主题的信息和观点。
		语法	了解词汇的词根、词缀，理解词性变化的规律，能根据构词规律推断词义和进行单词重构。
		语篇	1. 能读懂故事，并且初步了解故事的内容特点、文体特点和写作手法； 2. 了解论坛专题，讨论这一新媒体语篇的文体特点。
		语用	能描述英式英语与美式英语的不同，了解英语的多样性、地域差异性及造成这些现象的原因。
	语言技能	听	听三段关于英语词汇的对话，了解英语词汇在具体语境中的应用。
		说	能以超市、餐馆为情境进行易被误解的表达的询问。
		读	1. 阅读例句并评价英语中让学习者迷惑不解的"疯狂"现象的小品文，体验英语的趣味性、创新性、多样性和吸引力； 2. 阅读四位英语学习者在学习过程中遭遇的困惑与误解，加深对英语语言多样性、创造性及其丰富文化内涵的理解。
		写	能写一篇关于英语语言中的误解的故事。
学习能力	1. 能根据篇章标题、关键词等信息，预测和理解篇章的主要内容； 2. 能通过阅读从文章中提取事实和细节，并对这些信息进行合理的总结； 3. 对英语学习保持主动和积极的态度，不断增强学习的自信心； 4. 有意识地注意和积累生活中和媒体上所使用的英语表达。		
文化意识	1. 理解常用英语成语和俗语的文化内涵，增强跨文化意识； 2. 在学习活动中初步感知和体验英语语言的美。		
思维品质	1. 能基于单元所学内容和学习体验反思自己在英语学习中遇到的问题，创造性地提出英语学习的新方法，改进自己的英语学习方法、策略等； 2. 能运用单元所学知识辨析语言的多样性和文化的差异性，思考语言与社会经济文化发展的联系，建立对语言现象、语言学习的跨文化理解。		

必备知识

必背单词	title, sculpt, sculpture, opposing, behavior, confusing, unique, alarm, reflect, creativity, visible, creative, type, unfamiliar, contact, organization, likely, subway, gas, petrol, apartment, flat, context, addition, resource, misadventure, remind, rather, comment, downtown, boot, entrance, section, exit, actually, downstairs, odd, negative, positive, error, intend, informal, recognise, base, aware
重点词块	burn up, burn down, wind up, have a frog in one's throat, be aware of, speaking of, wonder at, fill in/out a form, in one's free time, have trouble doing, spend time doing, look forward to doing
重点句型	1. neither... nor... 2. That is why... 3. as... as...
单元语法	构词法
单元写作	有关误解的故事

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Learn to get what a text is about from its pictures and title.
2. Learn some interesting things about English words and expressions, and the creativity of English.
3. Share your opinions about English and English learning.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. title *n*. 题目,标题
2. opposing *adj*. (观点、意见等)相反的,相对立的
3. behavior *n*. 举止,行为
4. confusing *adj*. 令人困惑的
5. unique *adj*. 独一无二的,独特的
6. alarm *n*. 警报器;闹钟
7. reflect *v*. 显示,反映
8. creativity *n*. 创造性,创造力
9. creative *adj*. 创造(性)的
10. have trouble doing sth. 做某事有困难
11. get... doing sth. 使……做某事
12. speaking of 讲起……

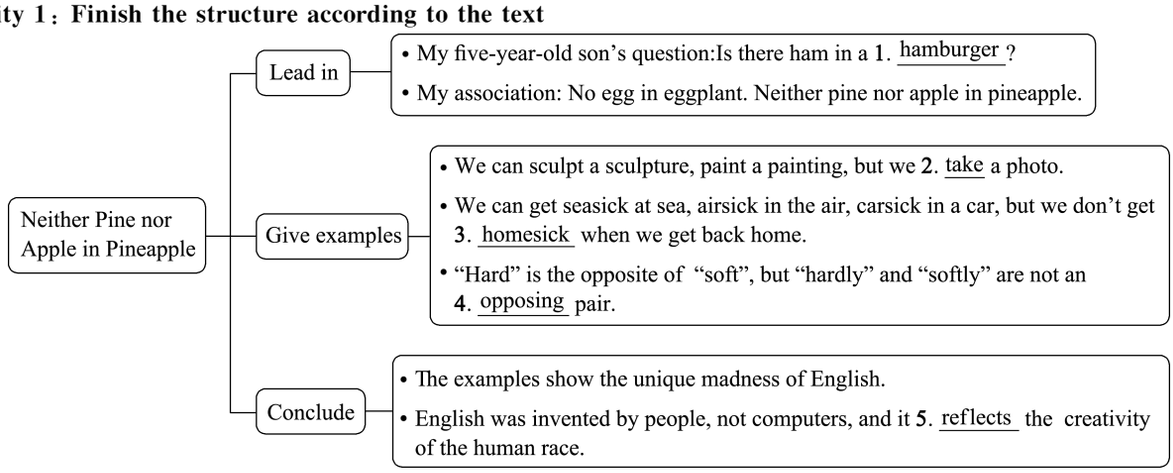
(二)阅读词汇

1. ham *n*. 火腿
2. eggplant *n*. 茄子
3. pine *n*. 松树
4. pineapple *n*. 菠萝
5. sculpt *v*. 雕刻,雕塑
6. sculpture *n*. 雕像,雕刻品,雕塑作品
7. seasick *adj*. 晕船的
8. airsick *adj*. 晕机的
9. carsick *adj*. 晕车的
10. homesick *adj*. 想家的
11. capitalized *adj*. 大写的
12. visible *adj*. 看得见的,可见的
13. burn up 烧毁,烧尽
14. burn down 烧毁
15. wind up 给(机械)上发条;使(活动、会议等)结束
16. in one's free time 在某人的空闲时间
17. wonder at 对……感到诧异
18. fill in/out a form 填写表格
19. go off (警报器)突然发出巨响;离开

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Which of the following words does not have the same meaning as the others?
   A. Seasick.　　B. Homesick.
   C. Carsick.　　D. Airsick.
2. How does the author support his/her idea in the text?
   A. By giving examples.
   B. By asking questions.
   C. By analysing.
   D. By exaggerating（夸大）the truth.
3. What does English reflect about the human race?
   A. Craziness.　　B. Instinct（本能）.
   C. Wisdom.　　D. Creativity.

答案：1～3　BAD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. While we're doing all this traveling, we can get seasick at sea, airsick in the air and carsick in a car, but we don't get homesick when we get back home.
   [句子分析]本句是并列复合句。but 前的分句是复合句，含有时间状语从句 While we're doing all this traveling；but 后的分句也是复合句，含有时间状语从句 when we get back home。
   [尝试翻译]旅游期间，我们可能会在海上晕船、在空中晕机、在汽车上晕车，但回到家时是不会想家的。
2. You also have to wonder at the unique madness of a language in which a house can burn up as it burns down, in which you fill in a form by filling it out, and in which an alarm is only heard once it goes off!
   [句子分析]本句是复合句。三个 in which 都引导定语从句；as it burns down 为 as 引导的时间状语从句；once it goes off 为 once 引导的条件状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]你也一定对这门语言独特的疯狂感到诧异。在这门语言中，当一座房子"被烧毁"时可以说 burn up，也可以说 burn down；"填表"时可以说 fill in，也可以说 fill out；闹钟只有在它响起时才被听到！

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following question

What do you think of the role that Chinese plays in the world?（Answers may vary.）

With the development of global economy, China is becoming stronger and stronger. The Chinese economic market attracts people all over the world so that the number of people speaking Chinese is getting larger and larger.

Unit 2 课后素养评价（五）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A major study with over 80,000 people has shown that speaking many languages can greatly slow down the brain's aging process and help prevent cognitive decline（认知衰退）. Published in the journal *Nature Aging*, the research finds that multilingual（多语言的）people are half as likely to show signs of speedy biological aging compared to those who speak only one language.

According to Agustín Ibáñez, a scientist of the study, the research aimed to address a long-standing question in aging studies: whether multilingualism really slows down aging. While earlier studies had suggested that speaking many languages improves cognitive functions like memory and attention, many of those studies had problems. Their sample（样本）sizes were small and their ways to measure aging weren't practical, so the results weren't the same.

This new research, however, has been praised for its size and dependability. Christos Pliatsikas, a professor at the University of Reading, noted that the findings could bring a big change to the field.

The research group looked at information from 86,000 healthy people. These people were between 51 and 90 years old and came from 27 European countries. They worked out each person's "biobehavioral age gap（差值）". This gap is the difference between how old a person really is and how old they're expected to be based on things like heart health, how they live, and their educational level. A larger gap suggests faster aging. The researchers also discovered that people who spoke only one language were two times more likely to have a big biobehavioural age gap. Moreover, the

protective effect increased with the number of languages spoken.

Even though the research subjects only self-reported their language skills without detailed examination, the large and different sample helped researchers explain things like wealth and background. Agustín Ibáñez stressed that the study strongly supports the idea that multilingualism itself—not other things—helps protect the brain during aging. He also called for future studies to include non-European populations.

The researchers hope their findings will influence educational rules to improve language learning, viewing multilingualism as a powerful tool for healthy cognitive aging.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了一项关于多语言能力的研究。该研究表明掌握多种语言能延缓大脑衰老、预防认知衰退。文章还介绍了该项研究的研究过程、优势及研究人员的期待。

1. What is the main finding of the study mentioned in Paragraph 1?

A. Education reduces cognitive decline.

B. Language learning avoids brain aging.

C. Multilingualism benefits brain function.

D. Multilingual people have speedy aging.

C　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"A major study with over 80,000 people has shown that speaking many languages can greatly slow down the brain's aging process and help prevent cognitive decline (认知衰退)."可知,该研究的主要发现是掌握多种语言对大脑功能有益。故选C。

2. What does the phrase "biobehavioural age gap" in Paragraph 4 refer to?

A. A person's actual age (in years).

B. The speed of a person's aging.

C. A person's educational level.

D. The condition of one's physical age.

B　词义猜测题。根据第四段中的"This gap is the difference between how old a person really is and how old they're expected to be based on things like heart health, how they live, and their educational level. A larger gap suggests faster aging."可知,生物行为年龄差值指的是一个人的衰老速度。故选B。

3. What is Agustín Ibáñez's attitude towards the study's finding?

A. Supportive.　　B. Negative.

C. Doubtful.　　D. Objective.

A　观点态度题。根据倒数第二段中的"Agustín Ibáñez stressed that the study strongly supports the idea that multilingualism itself—not other things—helps protect the brain during aging."可知,Agustín Ibáñez对该研究的发现持支持的态度。故选A。

4. Where is this text most likely taken from?

A. A practical guide.

B. A personal blog.

C. A language textbook.

D. A science news report.

D　文章出处题。根据全文内容可知,文章介绍了一项关于多语言能力与大脑衰老关系的科学研究,包括研究发现、研究过程、研究人员的观点和期待等专业且客观的内容。这类内容最有可能出自科学新闻报道。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Why Learn English Through the News?

Learning English through the news is a great way to improve your vocabulary, listening and discussion skills. You can choose from written, audio (音频的), video and live TV news with options both online and offline. __1__

Clear English

__2__ Their job is to give facts and summarise events for the public. English news can be easier for ESL (English as a Second Language) learners to understand because it has a clear context and presentation.

Latest information

Modern news media is a constant stream of real-life English conversations and fresh information! __3__ When you learn English through the news, you have the chance to find out what is happening in the world right now, make comments and interact with others on the social media.

Read, watch, and listen

English news comes in many different forms and this gives you more choices when learning the language. If you prefer reading, there are online newspapers and simpler news websites for ESL students. If you want to improve your listening and vocabulary skills, there are also TV news channels, videos, radio stations and podcasts (播客). __4__

Relevant (相关的) to you

Fresh news is produced daily on every imaginable topic! __5__ All you have to do is look online! If you are not interested in politics and "serious" news, why not focus on sports news or the latest from the music scene?

A. Popular stories often appear in all of these formats.
B. English news is worth including in your study plan for the following reasons.
C. Even the word "news" comes from the Latin term "nova", meaning "new things".
D. An effective way to learn English is by frequently watching English movies.
E. Most journalists and newsreaders use Standard English and express themselves well.
F. Most learners of English have difficulties understanding original newspapers and TV news.
G. Whatever you like, you will always be able to find news articles and stories that are relevant to you.

答案：1～5 BECAG

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Master the usage of important words in context.
2. Explore the secrets of English words.
3. Master and use some important sentence structures.
4. Inspire students with interest in learning English.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **title** of a passage gives readers very important information about the main idea of it. 题目，标题
2. The first letter in an English sentence should be **capitalized.** 大写的
3. It's believed that it's language that makes the human race **unique.** 独一无二的，独特的
4. The rain had stopped and a star or two was **visible** over the mountains. 看得见的，可见的
5. A **ham** is the upper part of a pig's leg that has been cured and is eaten as food. 火腿

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
sculpt *v.* 雕刻，雕塑	sculpture *n.* 雕像，雕刻品，雕塑作品
	sculptor *n.* 雕塑家
opposing *adj.*（观点、意见等）相反的，相对立的	oppose *v.* 反对，对抗，使对立
	opposed *adj.* 反对的，对立的，敌对的
behavior *n.* 举止，行为	behave *v.* 表现
confusing *adj.* 令人困惑的	confuse *v.* 使困惑
	confused *adj.* 感到困惑的
	confusion *n.* 混乱，困惑

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
reflect *v.* 显示，反映	reflection *n.* 反射；反映；映像；沉思，深思
	reflective *adj.* 反射的；反映的；（指物体表面）反光的；（指人、心情等）深思熟虑的
alarm *n.* 警报器；闹钟	alarming *adj.* 惊人的，吓人的
	alarmed *adj.* 惊恐的；忧虑的；装有警报的
creativity *n.* 创造性，创造力	creative *adj.* 创造（性）的
	create *v.* 创造
	creator *n.* 创造者，创作者
	creation *n.* 创造；产物

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难
2. in one's free time 在某人的空余时间
3. speaking of 提到，谈到
4. look out of 向外看
5. burn up/down 烧毁
6. fill in/out a form 填表格
7. go off（警报器）突然发出巨响；离开
8. wind up 给（机械）上发条；使（活动、会议等）结束

Ⅳ. 补全句子

句型公式：neither... nor...

Neither is there pine nor apple in pineapple.

pineapple(菠萝)里既没有 pine(松树)，也没有 apple(苹果)。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. confusing *adj*. 令人困惑的

[教材原文] Even the smallest words can be **confusing.**

就算是最短小的单词都可能让人费解。

[归纳拓展]

(1)confuse... with/and... 分不清……和……

(2)confused *adj*. 感到困惑的

be confused about... 对……感到疑惑

(3)confusion *n*. 混乱，困惑

in confusion 困惑地

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷) I thought my pronunciation was the problem, so I explained again more slowly, but he still looked confused (confuse).

②In addition, I always confuse John and/with his brother; they are so much alike.

③ The instructions on the box are rather confusing (confuse) and no one can understand them.

(2)写作微练

①(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷读后续写之神态描写)我跑回去告诉冈特这个坏消息。他**困惑地**看着我。

I ran back to Gunter and told him the bad news. He looked at me in confusion.

②(读后续写之心理描写)**我对大卫为什么毫无征兆地放弃比赛感到困惑**，我决定和他谈谈。

Confused about why David gave up the race without any sign, I decided to talk to him.(形容词短语作状语)

2. reflect *v*. 显示，反映

[教材原文] English was invented by people, not computers, and it **reflects** the creativity of the human race.

英语是人创造的，不是计算机发明的，它反映了人类的创造力。

[归纳拓展]

(1)reflect on/upon sth. 认真思考某事

(2)reflection *n*. 反射；反映；映像；沉思，深思

on/upon reflection 经再三思考

be lost in reflection 陷入沉思中

(3)reflective *adj*. 反射的；反映的；(指人、心情等)深思熟虑的；(指物体表面)反光的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·北京卷) When we slow down, we create space to reflect on our thoughts and emotions, which helps us identify important areas of our lives and gives us the opportunity to make right choices.

②As a musician, it's important to give maximum attention and time to your own reflections (reflect) of your own feelings.

③On reflection, I realized that I had been too hasty in my decision and should have considered all the options more carefully.

(2)写作微练

(2024·全国甲卷应用文写作之发言稿)最后，新能源汽车的兴起**反映了中国**对可持续发展和减少碳排放**的承诺**。

Finally, the rise of new energy vehicles reflects China's commitment to sustainable development and reducing carbon emissions.

3. That is why...

[教材原文] **That is why** when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

这就是为什么 stars are out(星星出现)时，我们能看到星星，而当 lights are out(灯光熄灭)时，我们却看不到灯光。

[句式分析] That is why...后接表语从句，意为“这就是为什么……”。

[归纳拓展]

(1)This/That is/was why... 这/那就是……的原因(why 引导表语从句，表示结果)

(2)This/That is/was because... 这/那是因为……(because 引导表语从句，表示原因)

(3)The reason why... is/was that... ……的原因是……(why 引导定语从句并在从句中作状语；that 引导表语从句，表示原因)

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The reason for such an extremely serious

accident was that the driver was too careless.
②There was a lot of work to do. That was why I didn't go to the cinema that day.
(2)写作微练
(应用文写作之投稿)我们人类应该保护好海洋的**原因是**海洋在许多方面都起着重要作用。
We human beings should well protect the ocean and that is because the ocean plays an important role in many aspects. (... that is because...)
→The ocean plays an important role in many aspects and that is why we human beings should well protect the ocean. (... that is why...)
→The reason why we human beings should well protect the ocean is that the ocean plays an important role in many aspects. (The reason why... is that...)

多义词汇 专练

1. I felt a growing sense of **alarm** when he did not return to our flat that night. C
A. *n*. 警报
B. *n*. 闹铃
C. *n*. 惊慌

2. reflect
A. *v*. 显示,表明 B. *v*. 反映;映出(影像) C. *v*. 认真思考;沉思
①After **reflecting** for a while, Alice decided to accept the invitation. C
② Celebrations of the Mid-Autumn Festival **reflect** traditional Chinese culture. A
③One of the things that are **reflected** in the calm water is the famous tower. B

Unit 2 课后素养评价（六）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. Alarmed (alarm) by the noise, the birds flew away.
2. They confused me by asking so many questions. I was totally confused, sitting there in confusion, and not knowing what they meant. (confuse)
3. Panda, an interesting and charming creature, is unique to China.
4. He had time to reflect on/upon his successes and failures.
5. Using a telescope, Galileo discovered stars that were invisible to the naked eye.
6. All people present are opposed (oppose) to the project for the reason that it will cause much pollution.
7. My mother often reminds me to behave myself (me) in formal occasions and not to make a fool of myself.
8. She is a devoted teacher and is recognised for her enthusiasm and creativity (creative).

Ⅱ. 短语填空

speaking of; wind up; burn down; according to; go off

1. According to the historian, the temple has a history dating back to the early Tang Dynasty.
2. The fire department arrived promptly, but unfortunately, the old warehouse had already burned down to the ground by the time they got there.
3. After a heated discussion, the speaker wound up the speech with a call to action for everyone to protect the environment.
4. The alarm did go off this morning but I turned it off and went back to sleep.
5. Speaking of traditional Chinese culture, the Spring Festival is undoubtedly one of the most significant and beloved celebrations.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. He didn't go out until he finished his homework.
他直到做完作业才出去。
2. Neither they nor Mary wants to go there with me.
他们和玛丽都不想和我一起去那里。
3. It makes no difference to me whether you leave or stay.
你离开还是留下都对我毫无影响。
4. Do you have trouble (in) finishing the work on time?
你按时完成这项工作有困难吗?
5. Tom was ill and that was why he was late for the meeting.
汤姆病了,这就是他开会迟到的原因。

Ⅳ. 完形填空

I have a strong interest in English and did well in exams. So I was __1__ to attend summer school in the US, eager (渴望的) to apply textbook knowledge to __2__ life.

But reality was hard. Two weeks later, I had to see a(n) __3__ for a toothache. When waiting, I worried. "How do I __4__ my pain in English? Can I understand the dentist's instructions?" Shortly afterwards, I was __5__ in to see Dr Smith.

After examining, Dr Smith explained there was a hole in a(n) __6__ that needed to be filled. Then he smiled with a __7__, "Do you have a sweet tooth?" I responded honestly, "I had a candy before coming here, but I brushed my teeth. So, there's no sweet tooth."

Dr Smith laughed as he started the __8__. After finishing, Dr Smith explained, "My boy, 'have a sweet tooth' has nothing to do with brushing teeth __9__. It means enjoying __10__ foods very much. But remember to brush teeth after having sweets, dear." I felt embarrassed but __11__ because Dr Smith not only helped me with my pain but also English learning.

After coming back home, I __12__ the way of learning English. Instead of only focusing on tests, I began to feel the richness of the language. I __13__ native speakers using idioms (习语) and expressions that brought the __14__ to life. Through this journey, I __15__ that having a sweet tooth—whether for candy or language—was about allowing it to enrich your life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在美国暑期学校学习英语时,通过看牙医的经历,意识到语言学习要结合实际生活的故事。

1. A. concerned　　B. calm
C. excited　　D. negative
C　根据前文的"I have a strong interest in English and did well in exams."以及后文的"to attend summer school in the US, eager (渴望的) to apply textbook knowledge to __2__ life"可知,作者对英语有浓厚的兴趣且成绩好,渴望将课本知识应用到现实生活中,所以对能参加美国暑期学校感到兴奋。故选C。

2. A. real　　B. unfamiliar
C. impressive　　D. unusual
A　根据"eager (渴望的) to apply textbook knowledge to __2__ life"可知,作者去美国暑期学校是想将课本上的理论知识运用到真实的生活中。real life为固定搭配,意为"实际生活"。故选A。

3. A. captain　　B. dentist
C. artist　　D. teacher
B　根据"I had to see a(n) __3__",后文的"for a toothache""Can I understand the dentist's instructions?"可知,作者牙痛,需要去看牙医。故选B。

4. A. explore　　B. fix
C. remember　　D. describe
D　根据后文的"my pain in English"可知,作者担心如何用英语描述自己的疼痛。故选D。

5. A. called　　B. admired
C. moved　　D. improved
A　根据前文的"When waiting",后文的"in to see Dr Smith"可知,作者在候诊,之后被医生叫进诊室,be called in意为"被请进,被叫进"。故选A。

6. A. ear　　B. nose
C. mouth　　D. tooth
D　根据上文的"for a toothache"以及"Dr Smith explained there was a hole in a(n) __6__ that needed to be filled"可知,作者牙痛,所以此处指医生解释其牙齿上有个洞需要补。故选D。

7. A. secret　　B. nod
C. question　　D. shock
C　根据后文的"Do you have a sweet tooth?"可知,下文是医生问的问题,所以此处指他笑着问了一个问题。故选C。

8. A. digging　　B. filling
C. contacting　　D. reminding
B　根据上文的"there was a hole in a(n) __6__ that needed to be filled"以及"Dr Smith laughed as he started the __8__"可知,上文描述医生解释作者的牙齿上有个洞需要补,因此这里是开始补牙的操作。故选B。

9. A. finally　　B. luckily
C. easily　　D. completely
D　根据前文的"My boy, 'have a sweet tooth' has nothing to do with brushing teeth"和后文的"It means enjoying __10__ foods very much."可知,have a sweet tooth意思是非常喜欢吃含糖的食物,这个短语和刷牙这件事根本没有关系,completely能体现这种程度。故选D。

10. A. smelly　　B. hot
C. sugary　　D. salty
C　根据"My boy, 'have a sweet tooth' has nothing to do with brushing teeth __9__. It means enjoying __10__ foods very much."可知,

have a sweet tooth是固定习语，和刷牙这件事根本没有关系，意为“爱吃甜食”，甜食即含糖的食物。故选C。

11. A. thankful　　B. helpful
C. careful　　D. harmful
A　根据后文的“because Dr Smith not only helped me with my pain but also English learning”可知，因为史密斯医生不仅帮作者解决了疼痛问题，还帮作者学习了英语，作者对史密斯医生是感激的。故选A。

12. A. measured　　B. finished
C. changed　　D. forgot
C　根据下文的“Instead of only focusing on tests, I began to feel the richness of the language.”可知，作者不再只关注考试，而是感受语言的魅力，说明他改变了英语学习的方式。故选C。

13. A. looked after　　B. talked to
C. referred to　　D. turned down
B　根据后文的“native speakers using idioms（习语）and expressions”可知，作者想要感受英语的魅力，应是和母语者交谈，从他们的表达中学习。故选B。

14. A. emotion　　B. game
C. project　　D. language
D　根据前文的“Instead of only focusing on tests, I began to feel the richness of the language.”“native speakers using idioms（习语）and expressions that brought the __14__ to life”和后文的“to life”可知，作者改变英语学习的方式，感受语言的丰富性，母语者的习语和表达能让这门语言变得鲜活。故选D。

15. A. realised　　B. observed
C. explained　　D. disagreed
A　根据后文的“that having a sweet tooth—whether for candy or language—was about allowing it to enrich your life”可知，作者通过这次经历意识到了后文描述的这个道理。故选A。

Section Ⅲ　Using language

学习任务目标

1. Understand, recognise and master four ways of word formation in English.
2. Explain the main differences between American English and British English.
3. Face challenges in English learning positively and look for appropriate methods to address them.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you have any questions about it, you can **contact** me by email.　联系，联络
2. Can you guess the meaning of the word from the **context**?　上下文，语境
3. A 24-year-old woman was given a warning ticket for eating food on the **subway**.　地铁
4. What **type** of music do you like best and why?　类型，种类

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
organization *n*. 组织，团体，机构	organize *v*. 组织，筹备，安排
	organized *adj*. 有组织的，系统的，有条理的
	organizer *n*.（活动等的）组织者
addition *n*. 增加物，添加物	add *v*. 增加，添加；加，相加；补充说
	additional *adj*. 附加的，额外的，另外的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. come across 偶然发现，偶然遇见
2. add... to... 把……加到……
3. be short for 是……的简称；是……的缩写
4. be different from 与……不同

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：现在分词短语作状语
But many of them are formed using other simpler words.
但其中许多是用其他更简单的词构成的。

2. 句型公式:过去分词短语作定语

Words formed by combining other words are called compounds...

由其他单词组合而形成的单词称为复合词……

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. addition *n*. 增加物,添加物

[教材原文]Each year, many **additions** are made to English dictionaries.

每年英语词典中都会收录许多新词汇。

[归纳拓展]

(1)in addition 除此之外

in addition to 除……以外(还)

(2)add *v*. 增加,添加;加,相加;补充说

add up 合计;把……加起来

add... to... 把……加到/加进……里

add up to 加起来共计/达(不用于被动语态)

add to 增加,增添

(3)additional *adj*. 附加的,额外的,另外的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The engines of the ship were out of order and the bad weather added to the helplessness of the crew at sea.

②(2025·全国一卷) A couple of messages came in, one wanting additional (addition) photos, another asking for a price cut.

③In addition to improving (improve) creativity, learning music cultivates many skills that will continue to be useful to children throughout their lives.

(2)写作微练

(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之建议信)**此外**,为了确保我们的口语练习顺利进行,我建议你们把三到四名学生组合在一起,其中一名学生担任组长。

Additionally/In addition, to ensure that our oral practice goes smoothly, I suggest that you put three to four students together, with one as the group leader.

2. as... as... 像/和……一样……

[教材原文]It's not **as** confusing **as** it seems: usually people from the two countries can understand each other from the context.

它并不像看上去那么难以理解:通常,来自这两个国家的人们可以通过语境互相理解。

[归纳拓展]

(1)as... as... 意为"像/和……一样……",表示同级比较,两个 as 之间通常使用形容词或副词的原级。第一个 as 作副词,第二个 as 作连词,引导比较状语从句。as... as...的否定形式为 not as/so... as...(不和……一样……)。

(2)as... as...结构还有以下几种常见形式:

- as+*adj*.+a(n)+可数名词单数+as...
- as+many+可数名词复数+as...
- as+much+不可数名词+as...

名师点拨

(1)"as... as..."结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句中,常常省去与主句相同的部分,只留下相比较的部分。

(2)"as... as..."结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句中,常用助动词或情态动词的某种形式代替与主句相同的谓语部分。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷) And are listening to and viewing content as effective as reading the written word when covering the same material?

②(2024·全国甲卷) What is moderation (适度)? Basically, it means eating only as much food as your body needs.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之环境描写)太阳照耀着大地,**温暖得就像**一位慈爱的母亲凝视着她的孩子一样。

The sun shone on the earth, as warmly as a loving mother gazes upon her child.

②(读后续写之明喻)这本书**像**过山车之旅**一样刺激**,每一页都充满了曲折的情节。

The book was as exciting as a roller-coaster ride, with twists and turns at every page.

多义词汇 专练

Keeping eye **contact** with the girl in their conversation made him rather nervous. B

A. *n*. 联系　　B. *n*. 接触

C. *n*. 熟人

语法研习课

构词法

语法感知

①chairman 主席 newspaper 报纸 hometown 家乡 airport 机场 sunrise 日出

②disagree 不同意 incomplete 不完全的 unfair 不公平的 reuse 再利用 telephone 电话

③reader 读者 inventor 发明家 Chinese 中国人 Indian 印度人 artist 艺术家 kindness 和蔼 operation 手术

④hand 手/递 clean 干净的/弄干净 shade 阴凉/遮蔽 taste 美味/品尝

1. ①组中的单词是将两个单词合并在一起，形成一个新的单词。这种构词法被称为合成法。

2. ②组中的单词都是在各自的词根前加了不同的前缀，如 dis-，in-，un-，re-，tele-等；③组中的单词是在各自的词根后加了不同的后缀，如-er，-or，-ese，-ian 等。②③组中单词的构词法被称为派生法。

3. ④组中单词的构词法被称为转化法。

语法精讲

一、理解概念

英语中，单词的构成方法主要有三种：合成法（Compounding）、转化法（Conversion）和派生法（Derivation）。合成法是指由两个或更多的词合成一个词。转化法是指单词的一种词性用作另一种词性。派生法是指由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成另一个词。

二、构成方法

（一）合成法

合成词就是由两个或更多的词合成一个新词，有时用连字符“-”连接，有时直接写在一起，有时分开写。常见的合成词主要有以下几种：

1. 合成名词

构成方式	例词
名词/代词＋名词	blood-test 验血 weekend 周末
名词＋动名词	sightseeing 观光 handwriting 书法
形容词＋名词	freeway 高速公路 blackboard 黑板

续表

构成方式	例词
动名词＋名词	freezing point 冰点 reading room 阅览室
动词＋名词	washroom 厕所 pickpocket 扒手
动词＋副词	breakthrough 突破 get-together 联欢会
副词＋动词	outbreak 爆发 downfall 垮台

还有一些以其他方式构成的合成名词。如 well-being 健康，by-product 副产品，good-for-nothing 无用之人，go-between 中间人，commander-in-chief 总司令等。

2. 合成形容词

构成方式	例词
形容词＋-ed 结尾的形容词	noble-minded 高尚的 good-tempered 脾气好的
形容词＋现在分词	good-looking 好看的 fine-sounding 动听的
形容词＋名词	high-class 高级的 large-scale 大规模的
名词＋形容词	duty-free 免关税的 airsick 晕机的
名词＋现在分词	peace-loving 热爱和平的 English-speaking 讲英语的
名词＋过去分词	man-made 人造的 snow-covered 被雪覆盖的
副词＋现在分词	hard-working 勤劳的 far-reaching 深远的
副词＋过去分词	well-behaved 行为端正的 widespread 广泛流传的

续表

构成方式	例词
数词＋名词	four-day 四天的 five-year 五年的

3. 合成副词

构成方式	例词
形容词＋名词	sometimes 有时 anyway 不管怎样
副词＋名词	indoors 在室内 upstairs 在楼上
介词＋名词	alongside 在一边
副词＋介词	nearby 附近

4. 合成动词

构成方式	例词
形容词＋动词	ill-treat 虐待 whitewash 掩饰;用石灰水刷白
副词/介词＋动词	overcome 战胜 overthrow 推翻
形容词＋名词	safeguard 保卫,捍卫 blackmail 勒索;敲诈;要挟

5. 合成介词

构成方式	例词
副词＋名词	inside 在……里面 outside 在……外面
介词＋副词	throughout 遍及 within 在……之内
副词＋介词	into 到……里面 upon 在……之上

6. 合成代词

(1)代词宾格＋self:herself 她自己　himself 他自己

(2)物主代词＋self:myself 我自己　yourself 你自己

(3)形容词＋名词:anything 任何东西

everything 所有事物

(二)转化法

把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。

用法	举例	小结
动词转化为名词	Let's go out for a **walk**. 我们出去散散步吧。 Our **builds** are similar. 我们的体形相似。 Women have an equal **say** in everything. 妇女在各方面都有平等的发言权。	英语中,有的动词可作名词,有的名词可作动词,有的形容词可作动词,这种把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。
名词转化为动词	He **backed** his car into the garage. 他把车倒进车库。 We **lunched** at the White's. 我们在怀特家吃的午饭。 Did you **book** a seat on the plane? 你订好飞机座位了吗?	
形容词转化为动词	Culture has **furthered** the advance of language. 文化促进了语言的发展。 The train **slowed** down to half its speed. 火车速度减慢了一半。 We will try our best to **better** our living conditions. 我们将尽全力改善我们的生活状况。	
形容词转化为名词	The **rich** do not necessarily live a happy life. 富人并不一定生活得幸福。 She was dressed in **blue**. 她穿着蓝色衣服。 The **old** here are living a happy life. 这里的老年人过着幸福的生活。	

名师点拨

有些词的词性转化后,词的发音或重音会发生变化。例如:

export /ˈekspɔːt/ *n*. 出口→/ɪkˈspɔːt/ *v*. 出口

import /ˈɪmpɔːt/ *n*. 进口→/ɪmˈpɔːt/ *v*. 进口

increase /ˈɪnkriːs/ *n*. 增加→/ɪnˈkriːs/ *v*. 增加

permit /ˈpɜːmɪt/ *n*. 许可证→/pəˈmɪt/ *v*. 准许

record /ˈrekɔːd/ *n*. 唱片;记录→/rɪˈkɔːd/ *v*. 记录

present /ˈpreznt/ *n*. 礼物;现在 *adj*. 当前的;在场的,出席的→/prɪˈzent/ *v*. 赠送

（三）派生法

派生法即由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成另一个词。

1. 常见的前缀（前缀通常只改变词义，不改变词性，但是也有一些前缀不但改变词义，还改变词性）

前缀	作用或意义	例词
en-	构成动词，表示“置于……之中”“使处于……状态”“赋予”“使”	encourage 鼓励 endanger 危害 enable 使能够 enrich 充实 enlarge 扩大
dis-	构成反义词	disappear 消失 discourage 使泄气 dishonest 不诚实的
in-	构成反义词	inactive 消极的 incorrect 不正确的 indirect 间接的
il-	构成反义词	illegal 非法的
im-	构成反义词	impossible 不可能的 impolite 不礼貌的
ir-	构成反义词	irregular 不规则的 irresponsible 无责任感的
un-	构成反义词	unfit 不适合的 unfair 不公平的 unknown 不出名的
non-	构成反义词	non-smoker 不抽烟的人 non-stop 直达的，不停的
co-	构成名词/动词/副词/形容词，表示“共同，一起，联合”	coexist 共存 co-author 合著者
extra-	构成形容词，表示“在……之外，超出；非常”	extraordinary 非凡的 extra-large 特大的
inter-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词，表示“在……中，相互”	international 国际的 interaction 相互作用

续表

前缀	作用或意义	例词
mis-	构成动词/名词，表示“坏，错，糟糕的”	miscalculate 错误地估计 misfortune 不幸
over-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词，表示“上面；完全地；过分；上方”	overhead 在头上方 overcoat 长大衣
post-	构成名词/动词/形容词，表示“在……后，以后”	post-war 战后的 postgraduate 研究生
pre-	构成名词/动词/形容词，表示“在……前，先于”	prehistory 史前时期 pre-war 战前的
re-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词，表示“又，再，重新”	retell 复述 reappearance 重新出现
super-	构成名词/动词/副词/形容词，表示“上（方）；超；极”	supermarket 超市 superheated 过热的

2. 常见的后缀（后缀通常改变词性，构成意思相近的其他词性的词，少数后缀同时会改变词义）

	后缀	意义	例词
名词	-age	……的状态/状况/费用	postage 邮费 shortage 不足
名词	-an	……地方的人	American 美国人 Korean 韩国人
名词	-ian	……地方的人，与……相关的人（或物）	Egyptian 埃及人 Asian 亚洲人 musician 音乐家
名词	-ist	……家，……者	artist 艺术家 communist 共产主义者 scientist 科学家

续表

	后缀	意义	例词
名词	-ism	……主义	socialism 社会主义 realism 现实主义
	-er	……的人(或物),具有……的人(或物),与…… 有关的人	computer 计算机 farmer 农民 foreigner 外国人
	-or	……的人(或物)	actor 演员 sailor 水手 director 导演 calculator 计算器
	-ese	……国的人;……国的语言	Chinese 中国人;汉语 Japanese 日本人;日语
	-ee	受动者,与……有关的人,称为……的人	employee 雇员 interviewee 接受采访者
	-eer	与 …… 有关的人	engineer 工程师 pioneer 先锋 mountaineer 登山运动员
	-ess	女……,雌……,母……	actress 女演员 hostess 女主人
	-ful	充 满 …… 的量	armful(两臂或单臂的)一抱 handful 一把 spoonful 一匙
	-ment	……的行为/组织	movement 运动 development 发展 government 政府
	-(t)ion	…… 的 行 为 或状态	action 行为 creation 创造
	-ness	…… 的 状 态、性质或特点	illness 疾病 darkness 黑暗
	-ship	地位,资格,职位;技艺,技能;状态,性质,品质	friendship 友谊 leadership 领导 professorship 教授职位

续表

	后缀	意义	例词
名词	-ure	…… 的 行 动 或过程;结果	departure 启程 failure 失败 pleasure 高兴
	-(s)ion	…… 的 行 为 或状态	conclusion 结论 possession 拥有 impression 印象
	-ty	性 质,情 况,状态	safety 安全 difficulty 困难
形容词	-able	能 …… 的,应…… 的;具有……性质的	acceptable 令人满意的 comfortable 舒服的
	-al	与 …… 有关的	national 国家的 political 政治的
	-ern	……方向的	southern 南方的 northern 北方的 eastern 东方的
	-ful	有……性质的;充满……的	helpful 有帮助的 careful 仔细的
	-ish	…… 国 家 的,像…… 似 的;近乎……的	Turkish 土耳其的 childish 孩子气的
	-ive	具 有 …… 性质或倾向的	active 积极的 creative 创造性的 expensive 昂贵的
	-y	充满……的,有……性质的	cloudy 多云的 windy 有风的 dirty 脏的
	-less	无,没有	careless 粗心的 harmless 无害的 useless 无用的
	-some	引 起 或 易于……的	fearsome 可怕的 tiresome 烦人的 quarrelsome 爱争吵的
	-en	由……制成的,像……一样的	wooden 木制的 golden 金黄色的,金质的

续表

	后缀	意义	例词
形容词	-ous	有……性质的	dangerous 危险的 humorous 幽默的
动词	-(e)n	使，变得	widen 加宽 strengthen 加强 lengthen 加长
	-ify/-fy	变成，使得	beautify 美化 purify 净化
	-ize/ise	成为，使像；以……方式说/想/行动、对待等；放在……里	apologize/apologise 道歉 popularize/popularise 宣传
副词	-ly	以……方式；每隔……时间	perfectly 完美地 suddenly 突然地
	-ward(s)	（表示方向）向……地	forward(s)向前 outwards 向外 eastward(s)向东
数词	-teen	十几	fourteen 十四 fifteen 十五 sixteen 十六
	-ty	几十	forty 四十 fifty 五十 sixty 六十
	-th	第几	fourth 第四 fifth 第五 sixth 第六

（四）首尾字母缩略法

首尾字母缩略法，即用单词首尾字母组成一个新词。读音主要有两种形式：各字母分别读音；作为一个单词读音。

缩写	全称	汉语
ID	identification	身份证明
phone	telephone	电话
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	英国广播公司

续表

缩写	全称	汉语
UN	United Nations	联合国
VIP	very important person	贵宾
WTO	World Trade Organization	世界贸易组织
AIDS	acquired immunity deficiency syndrome	艾滋病（获得性免疫缺陷综合征）

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. Mr Lee said that the smiles and happiness (happy) of the children gave him great courage every day.
2. The high-speed train that connects the two cities is both fast and comfortable (comfort).
3. He was more than just an English teacher, because he also taught me useful (use) lessons in life.
4. It is necessary to have a physical examination (examine) every year.
5. He will be remembered for his ability and his warmth (warm).
6. Tom was encouraged (courage) by his father to take part in the singing competition.
7. Our government attaches much importance to education now, which enables (able) so many people to be well educated.
8. It was impolite (polite) of you to ask him the personal question in front of so many people.

Ⅱ. 根据提示补全句子

1. She tore up the letter angrily（生气地把信撕掉）and threw it into the dustbin.
2. We fear that we do not have the strength（拥有力量）and courage to face the truth of our situation.
3. If you deepen your knowledge（加深你的知识）or understanding of a subject, you will learn more about it and become more interested in it.

Unit 2 课后素养评价（七）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

type; contact; come up with; subway; gas; come across; apartment; context

1. Chongqing has the deepest subway station in China—Hongyan Village Station of Line 9—with its train platform located 116 metres underground.
2. Underline unknown words and try to guess their meaning from the context.
3. I'm going to have to find a new apartment pretty soon.
4. If you want to know more about the competition, just contact me.
5. Write down the following information: name of product, type, date purchased and price.
6. Gas is now widely used for cooking and heating.
7. You'd better not refer to a dictionary every time you come across a new word.
8. The writer struggled for days to come up with an attractive opening sentence for her novel.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. He's the president of a large international organisation (organise).
2. The house had a fairly (fair) large garden.
3. It was a relief and I came to a sudden (suddenly) stop just in the middle of the road.
4. I am unfamiliar with the place and the people here.
5. Similarly (similar), when Ron Webster borrowed a book from the library of the University of Liverpool, he forgot to return it, too.
6. But such a small thing couldn't possibly (possible) destroy a village.
7. Most people nowadays are so busy with their lives that they do not have time to enjoy a healthy and balanced (balance) diet.
8. According to the report, young drivers are far more likely to have (have) accidents than older drivers.
9. There's a postage and packing fee in addition to the repair charge.
10. Developing healthy eating habits isn't as confusing (confuse) as many people imagine.

Ⅲ. 阅读短文，分析并写出画线部分所使用的构词法

Last **1.** weekend, I was travelling home from business. It was too late, so I decided to go to a hotel near the bus stop. At the entrance to the hotel, I met a man who was **2.** disabled, and I made up my mind to offer him some help. He spoke to me and explained his past life when he was **3.** healthy. He had worked in a **4.** steelworks for five years. Then an accident left him disabled. While listening to his story, I realised that he had **5.** experienced a lot in his life. I told him that although he was **6.** physically disabled, his heart was strong, and he could always depend on it. I offered him some money to buy food and **7.** drinks and then he went home. I have learnt that if you say a few good words and offer a little help to others, it will not only bring **8.** happiness to you, but it will also be in people's hearts forever.

1. 合成法 **2.** 派生法 **3.** 派生法
4. 合成法 **5.** 转化法 **6.** 派生法
7. 转化法 **8.** 派生法

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French. The reason dates back to the year 1066, when Norman troops invaded（入侵）what is now Britain. The Normans were from northern France and spoke French. During the Norman occupation（占领期）, French became the language of England's rulers and

wealthy class. This lasted for more than 300 years. Other people in England continued to speak English during this period.

Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language. However, although English took many French words, their meanings have not always stayed the same. Sometimes the differences in meanings can be very important, and lead to funny or strange situations if the words are used in the wrong way.

Take, for example, the French word "college". In English, college can often be used in place of the word "university", or sometimes as a school within a university. However, in French, college actually means "middle school", or the level of schooling for students in grades five or six through eight.

There are many other similar words in the two languages with completely different meanings. In English, the word "chat" is a verb which means "to talk casually", but in French, the word "chat" is the word for an animal: a cat.

If an English speaker says someone is jolly, that means they are cheerful or friendly. But in French, "jolie" means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at. In any case, both are nice things to say to someone.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英语中存在大量法语词汇的现象。

1. What language did the upper class speak in Britain of Norman times?

A. English.

B. French.

C. Both English and French.

D. Some unknown language.

B　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"During the Norman occupation（占领期）, French became the language of England's rulers and wealthy class."可知，在诺曼时期，法语成了英国统治者和富裕阶层的语言。

2. What does a Frenchman mean if he says he likes a chat?

A. He likes a kind of pet.

B. He wants to have a talk.

C. He hates to speak English.

D. He prefers to chat in French.

A　推理判断题。根据第四段中的"... but in French, the word 'chat' is the word for an animal: a cat."可知，在法语中，单词 chat 指的是 cat。由此可以推断出，如果一个法国人说他喜欢 a chat，他的意思是"他喜欢一种宠物"。

3. What is the French word "jolie" used to do?

A. Replace "jolly" in English.

B. Describe people's looks.

C. Refer to people's happiness.

D. Prove the change in French.

B　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"But in French, 'jolie' means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at."可知，在法语中 jolie 的意思是"某人长得好看或看上去是令人愉快的"。由此可知，jolie 在法语中是用来"描述人的外表"的。

4. What is the text mainly about?

A. Comparison between two languages.

B. Difficulty in grasping English.

C. French words in English.

D. Development of English.

C　主旨大意题。根据第一段中的"You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French."和第二段中的"Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language."可知，本文主要介绍的是英语中的法语词汇。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the text and master its new expressions.
2. Get to know online forums and features of online posts.
3. Retell misadventures in the posts based on story lines.
4. Pay attention to the use of slang in English contexts.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. What she did was unforgivable (不可原谅的), but the **odd** thing was he didn't seem to mind. 奇特的,古怪的
2. The Internet is often used as a **resource** and as a tool for distance learning. 资料,(教学)资源
3. Their holiday was ruined by a whole series of **misadventures**. 事故,灾难
4. It was a **rather** difficult maths problem. 相当,颇
5. He made no **comments** on our suggestion. 评论
6. We thought the figures were correct. However, we have now discovered some **errors**. 错误,谬误
7. Our family went out, hanging round Wangfujing Street—a **downtown** area of Beijing. 在城镇中心区的,在闹市区的
8. The lady at the information desk told me that the clothes **section** was on the second floor. 区域

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
remind *v*. 提醒,使……想起	reminder *n*. 引起回忆的事物;提醒的事物;通知单
entrance *n*. 大门(口),入口(处)	enter *v*. 进入
	exit *n*. 出口
downstairs *adv*. 在楼下	upstairs *adv*. 在楼上
negative *adj*. 消极的,负面的	positive *adj*. 积极的,正面的
intend *v*. 计划,打算	intention *n*. 打算;目的,意图
recognise *v*. 认识,辨认出	recognition *n*. 认出,识别;承认,认可
base *v*. 以……为基础	basis *n*. 基础,根据
	basic *adj*. 基本的,基础的
	basically *adv*. 基本上,从根本上说

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
aware *adj*. 意识到的,明白的	unaware *adj*. 不知道的,未意识到的,未察觉的
	awareness *n*. 意识;认识

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. ring a bell 听起来耳熟(但记不真切),有印象
2. small potatoes 微不足道的人或物
3. toilet water 花露水
4. at sixes and sevens 混乱的,杂乱无章的
5. green fingers 园艺技能,种植技能
6. pull up one's socks 再加把劲;奋发图强
7. play safe 谨慎行事,避免冒险
8. have a frog in one's throat (尤因喉咙痛)说话困难
9. look for 寻找
10. be aware of 意识到,察觉到

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:what 引导名词性从句
   People say that the British always play safe with what they eat.
   人们都说英国人吃东西很讲究。
2. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语
   When I first visited New York, I went to a downtown shopping centre to buy some winter boots.
   第一次去纽约的时候,我去了市中心的一家购物中心买冬靴。
3. 句型公式:spend... doing sth.
   I spent days preparing and writing my first English paper.
   我的第一篇英语论文,从准备到写作花了若干天时间。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text

A question and its responses

⇩ Last week, our forum asked if you had any funny or strange stories about using English. We didn't expect to get so many 1. posts !

Yancy

⇩ Her English teacher Maggie didn't come to teach them because she had a frog in her 2. throat . Why did she try to eat such a big frog?

Sophie

⇩ While going shopping in New York, she found "the first floor" in American English was actually "the ground floor". She was 3. confused .

Julien

⇩ He didn't understand why his English penfriend used 4. "wicked" to describe his grandfather, a nice man.

Zheng Xu

When he got his English paper back, he found his teacher had written the 5. comment "Not bad!" He was a bit disappointed.

○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What does the sentence "We didn't expect to get so many posts!" in Paragraph 1 mean?
   A. People are not interested in the topic.
   B. People are too shy to give their opinions.
   C. We don't think it is interesting.
   D. People responded enthusiastically to the topic, which is out of our expectations.
2. Why couldn't English teacher Maggie teach that day?
   A. She ate a big frog.
   B. She was afraid that she had a frog in her stomach.
   C. She had a sore throat and couldn't speak.
   D. She was very tired after eating a frog in her throat.
3. Which statement is true according to the text?
   A. "The first floor" in America may be called "the ground floor" in another country.
   B. When we say someone is "wicked", we only want to show the person is bad.
   C. If you want to go to "the first floor" in America when you enter a building, you should go downstairs.
   D. In China, we use "Not bad!" to give a positive comment.
4. What's the main idea of the text?
   A. An exciting adventure in English learning.
   B. Some strange English words difficult to learn.
   C. The difference between what we learn in class and in life.
   D. Some funny posts about what we should learn in class.

答案：1～4 DCAC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Here are some of our favourites, to remind us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different from the English in the outside world!
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。here 位于句首引起了完全倒装；that 引导宾语从句，作 remind 的直接宾语；在该宾语从句中，we learn in the classroom 为省略了关系词的定语从句，修饰 English。
   [尝试翻译]以下是我们最喜欢的几篇，它们让我们意识到，有些在课堂上学到的英语和在课堂之外使用的英语真是太不一样了！
2. He told us that Maggie couldn't teach that day COZ she had a frog in her throat.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。that Maggie couldn't...为 that 引导的宾语从句；COZ 相当于 because，引导原因状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]他告诉我们玛吉老师那天没法来上课，因为她的喉咙里卡了一只青蛙。
3. When I was looking for the exit, I saw that shoes were actually sold downstairs on the ground

floor, not the first floor.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。when 引导时间状语从句,that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]就在我找出口的时候,我发现鞋区实际是在一楼,不是在二楼。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4:Think and answer the following questions

1. Which post do you find most interesting? Why?

(Answers may vary.)

Have a frog in her throat. This expression is vivid and amusing, and easy to remember.

2. What should you pay attention to when using English in a foreign country?

Only when you really understand the meaning of the expression can you use it. Otherwise, that can cause misunderstanding.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. remind *v*. 提醒,使……想起

[**教材原文**]Here are some of our favourites, to **remind** us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different from the English in the outside world!

以下是我们最喜欢的几篇,它们让我们意识到,有些在课堂上学到的英语和在课堂之外使用的英语真是太不一样了!

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事

remind sb. of sth./sb. 使某人想起某事物/某人

remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

remind sb. that/how/what... 提醒某人……

(2)reminder *n*. 引起回忆的事物;提醒的事物;通知单

名师点拨

熟记下面"*v*.+sb.+of sth."短语:

cure sb. of sth. 治好某人的病

accuse sb. of sth. 指控某人某事

inform sb. of sth. 通知某人某事

convince sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事

rob sb. of sth. 抢劫某人某物

warn sb. of sth. 警告某人某事

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷)Neighbors will bring me freshly made cheese and will come to my door to remind me to close (close) the window in my car when rain is coming.

②What the teacher had said reminded me of the famous saying, "Where there is a will, there is a way."

③Take the note as a reminder (remind) in case you forget about the meeting tomorrow at 3 pm in the conference room.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之通知)举行该活动是为了**提醒人们必须立即采取措施**保护濒临灭绝的动物。

The activity is due to be held to remind people that we must take immediate measures to protect endangered creatures.(remind sb. that)

→The activity is due to be held to remind people to take immediate measures to protect endangered creatures.(remind sb. to do)

2. intend *v*. 计划,打算

[**教材原文**]morally wrong and **intending** to hurt people

道德上是错误的并且有意伤害人

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)intend doing/to do sth. 打算/想要做某事

had intended to do...=intended to have done... 原本打算做……

be intended for 打算为……所用,专为……而设计的

(2)intention *n*. 打算;目的,意图

名师点拨

intend 的过去完成时表示本打算做某事,但实际没做成。有类似用法的动词还有 plan, hope, think 等。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① The campaign started with the intention (intend) of stopping tourists damaging sculptures.

②(2023·全国甲卷)Behind the simple style, however, is a serious message intended (intend) for everyone.

③We intend making/to make (make) a detailed study plan for the coming college entrance examination.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)我们计划专门**为**对中国传统文化感兴趣的**学生**开一次班会。

We are planning to have a class meeting specially which is intended for students who are interested in traditional Chinese culture.

②(应用文写作之道歉信)我**本打算**这个周末**和你一起去书店**,但出了意料之外的事。

I had intended to go to the bookstore with you this weekend but something unexpected happened.

3. recognise *v*. 认识，辨认出

［教材原文］**recognise** differences between American English and British English
识别美式英语和英式英语之间的差异

［归纳拓展］

(1)recognise... as/to be... 承认/认为……是……
be（widely）recognised as/to be... 被公认为是……
It is（widely）recognised that... 人们(普遍)认为……

(2)recognition *n*. 认出，识别；承认，认可 beyond recognition 认不出来

名师点拨

recognise 还有“意识到；承认，认可”之意。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) With my father's support, I learned a valuable lesson: attention cannot be forced; true recognition (recognise) comes from honourable acts.

②The book is recognised as one of the greatest works of literature of the 21st century.

③(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷) Shanghai may be the recognized (recognize) home of the soup dumplings.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿)看英语电影**被公认为是**提高英语口语的一种手段。

Watching English movies is widely recognised as a means of improving oral English.(be recognised as)

→It is widely recognised that watching English movies is a means of improving oral English.(It is recognised that...)

4. aware *adj*. 意识到的，明白的

［教材原文］be **aware** of cultural differences
意识到文化差异

［归纳拓展］

(1)be/become aware of 意识到，察觉到；明白，了解
be aware that... 察觉到……
make sb. aware of/that... 使某人知道……

(2)awareness *n*. 意识；认识
raise/enhance one's awareness (of/about) 增强某人(对……)的意识

(3)unaware *adj*. 不知道的，未意识到的，未察觉到的

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①Only if you are aware of the importance of English can you learn it well.

②(2025·全国二卷) Each dish was tailor-made to raise awareness (aware) regarding food waste.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之活动介绍)这次活动的目的是**提高我们保护中国传统文化的意识**。

The activity is intended to raise/enhance our awareness of/about protecting traditional Chinese culture.

②(应用文写作之投稿)说到海洋，我们**已经意识到海洋污染变得越来越严重了**。

When it comes to the ocean, we have been aware that its pollution is becoming more and more serious.

多义词汇 专练

1. recognise

A. *v*. 认出；辨认出　　B. *v*. 承认；意识到
C. *v*. 认可　　D. *v*. 公认

①The book is now **recognised** as a classic. D

②(2024·北京卷) ... but that they are less likely to **recognise** or admit that they are wrong when events do not match their predictions. B

③(2024·全国甲卷) Your cat will likely smell your face and store the smell in its memory and use it to **recognise** you in the future. A

④We should **recognise** their work, and encourage them to work harder. C

2. After the attack, the soldiers returned to their **base**. A

A. *n*. 基地　　B. *n*. 基础
C. *n*. 主要成分

Unit 2 课后素养评价（八）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. Some patients are actually（实际上）receiving the treatment.
2. There are too many errors（错误）in your homework, so you'd better correct them before you hand it in.
3. There is a fire exit（出口）on each floor of the building.
4. I have received no letters since my arrival, and this does seem rather（相当）odd.
5. You must not view what happened in a negative（消极的）side.
6. Some people pay more attention to the comments（评论）than the quality of products.
7. We are doing our best to finish the task as soon as possible with the limited resources（资源）.
8. Will you please show me the entrance（入口）to the museum?
9. This is an informal（非正式的）meeting, so you can just wear what you like.
10. The website has three main sections（区域）: Vocabulary, Grammar, and Expressions & Idioms.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Not only his wife but also his three children were (be) invited to enjoy the wonderful performance last evening.
2. It is said that he has spent three days decorating (decorate) his new apartment.
3. It reminded us of the exciting moments we enjoyed together.
4. He left England with the intention (intend) of travelling in Africa.
5. I called her from a public phone booth near the entrance to the bar.
6. It is recognised that teenagers play an important part in sports and games.
7. Raise people's awareness (aware) of obeying the traffic rules.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

play safe; be aware of; look forward to; at sixes and sevens; look for; beyond recognition; be based on

1. I'm looking forward to visiting the art gallery with you next week.
2. If you want to play safe, cut down on the amount of salt you eat.
3. People around the world should be aware of the real situation of water shortage（短缺）.
4. It's about time he started looking for a job.
5. I went into my brother's room and got a big surprise when I saw the room was at sixes and sevens.
6. The film which is based on that event is scheduled to be on at 8 pm next Saturday.
7. The old photograph was damaged beyond recognition after being kept in a damp basement for years.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. I spent three hours (in) finishing writing the report.
   我花了三个小时写完了这个报告。
2. Here are the conclusions from the experiments.
   下面就是实验的结论。
3. Nodding the head means agreement, while shaking it means disagreement.
   点头表示同意，而摇头表示不同意。
4. It turns out that it's this section that sells what we need for a picnic.
   结果是，这个区域才是售卖我们野餐所需要的东西的地方。
5. It is widely recognised that practice makes perfect, so if you speak Chinese more, you can learn better.
   人们普遍认为熟能生巧，所以如果你多说汉语，你就能学得更好。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

What does "barking up the wrong tree" mean? In this article, let's learn the **1.** expression (express).

The phrase "barking up the wrong tree" means **2.** following (follow) a mistaken plan of action. The phrase comes from the old hunting（捕猎）practice in which dogs would bark to show they have made other animals up trees unable **3.** to run (run) away. Sometimes the dogs were mistaken, and the animals had **4.** actually (actual) run away. When this happened, the dogs were barking up the wrong tree.

This phrase first began appearing in **5.** written (write) works after the 1820s, and was later widely used by Western writers. It was used to describe a person **6.** who/that was following a wrong lead.

Below is an example of how to use the phrase. Recently **7.** a friend of mine needed a large amount of money **8.** for his new business idea. So he went to an event to meet possible investors（投资者）. However, the people he met **9.** were (be) those also looking for money. Then we can say that he was barking up the wrong tree!

When using the phrase, avoid these **10.** mistakes (mistake) in spelling. For example, don't write it as "barking up in the wrong tree".

Ⅵ. **写作**

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是一位英语学习博主，曾经在英语学习方面遇到过种种困难，但最终克服了它们。请你简要描述曾遇到的困难，分享自己学习英语的方法，并发布在自己的博客上。内容要求：

1. 发帖的目的；
2. 自己学习英语的方法；
3. 对网友进行鼓励。

注意：词数 80 左右。

【参考范文】

In the past, I was really afraid of speaking English. I'm writing this post to share how I overcame that fear and improved my spoken English.

I started by practising every day. I recorded myself reading short articles aloud and checked for mistakes in my pronunciation. I also practised speaking English while walking or doing housework. Later, I went to the English Corner to speak with others in English.

Now, I can speak English more fluently and I feel much more confident. To anyone who is struggling, my advice is: don't be afraid to speak and practise every day.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Devin was 16 years old, who was a most hard-working boy. He took things seriously and always went all out for what he was doing. Recently, he had led his soccer team to the big game—Championship game, which was scheduled on Thursday afternoon.

For Devin, Thursday would be huge—the big soccer game in the afternoon, and the school's autumn concert in the evening. Ms Poltis had chosen him to sing a brief solo. Devin couldn't wait till Thursday.

As the team gathered after daily training on Tuesday afternoon, his coach said, "Be here by 6:30 on Thursday to warm up." "Six thirty?" Devin asked. That didn't sound right. His coach explained that it would be a night game and that they would play under the lights.

Devin's heart sank. The concert was at 7:00, which was almost the same time as the game. He couldn't possibly do both. He sat on the bench, pulling off his cleats (球鞋). His teammates were super excited. They were on the edge of a champion, and Devin was a big reason why. He led the league in scoring, and his soccer knowledge made him like a coach on the field. He couldn't let his team down by skipping the game.

Devin frowned (皱眉). He would tell Ms Poltis in the morning. There were other kids who could sing the solo. He wasn't the best singer anyway, and he knew it.

That night, Devin lay in bed, staring at the ceiling. "No matter how hard the struggle, I will never let you down..." The lyrics of the solo flew into his mind. The solo was only four lines in the middle of a song that the entire choir would sing, but every time he sang the song, he would be full of strength to carry on. His team was counting on him. The soccer game was a perfect excuse. But so was Ms Poltis. It was a long time before he fell asleep.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

In the morning, hardly eating any breakfast, Devin went to school and straight to the music room. _____

The big day came and so many people came to watch tonight. _____

【参考范文】

In the morning, hardly eating any breakfast, Devin went to school and straight to the music room. Noticing Devin looked worried, Ms Poltis let him sit down and asked if he was nervous for the concert. Devin looked up at her, eyes filled with tears. Ms Poltis smiled warmly and told him it was no secret that several other choir members had better singing voices than he did, but she chose him because he worked hard, like the person in the song. "Don't be nervous. Be proud," Ms Poltis cheered him up.

The big day came and so many people came to watch tonight. Devin had made a difficult choice. He liked the song and he appreciated how kind Ms Poltis always was. There would be other Championship games. He told his coach he had to miss the game and gave advice to his teammates on how to work together. The bright lights came on. Devin stayed calm, singing with confidence. "No matter how hard the struggle..." Devin finished the solo and smiled at Ms Poltis. He was proud of the choice he made.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——有关误解的故事

○写作指导

本单元的写作项目是讲述一件有关误解的趣事，该类作文以叙述为主，突出趣事的发生、发展和结果。

1. 基本框架

(1)开头——交代故事的时间、地点、人物等；

(2)主体——叙述趣事引发的误会、困惑和惊讶；

(3)结尾——消除误解。

2. 记叙文的语言特点

(1)以一般过去时为主，其他时态为辅。合理地使用丰富多彩的动词时态是记叙文的首要语言特点；

(2)多用动词，尤其是动态性强的行为动词是英语记叙文的又一个明显的语言特点；

(3)适当使用连接词。

3. 记叙文的写作顺序

记叙文一般是按时间顺序来叙述的，其叙述方法多采用顺叙，也就是按照客观事物发生、发展的先后顺序进行叙述，也可采用倒叙。

○典题示例

请根据下列故事梗概，用英语写一篇题为“I Don't Know the Time”的故事，可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

故事梗概：一位司机把车停在路边想休息一下。当他躺在座位上闭上眼睛时，一个人走过来，敲了敲车窗并询问时间。司机睁开眼睛看了看表说：“8:05。”接着司机又睡去。可是不久，又有一个人敲窗把他吵醒。“先生，现在几点了?”那人问道。司机又看了看表说：“8:30。”司机怕再次被人打扰，休息不好，就在车窗上贴了一张便条，上面写着“我不知道几点了”，便又躺下休息。不久，又有人敲打着车窗说：“先生，现在是8:45。”

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 三次询问的时间 2. 每次询问后司机的反应

Step 2：要点补全

①A driver stopped his car on the street side to have a rest（来休息一下）.

②He lay down（躺下）in the seat and closed his eyes.

③A person came up and knocked at the window（敲窗户）to ask the time.

④The driver looked at his watch（看了看他的表）and said，“8:05.”

⑤But soon he was woken up（被喊醒）again and saw a second person knocking at the window（正在敲窗户）.

⑥In order to have a good rest，he stuck a note on the window（在窗户上贴了一张便条），on which it said，“I don't know the time.”

Step 3：句式升级

①将Step 2中句②③升级为含有when引导的时间状语从句的句子

When he lay down in the seat and closed his eyes，a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time.

②将Step 2中句④中的分句升级为现在分词作状语

The driver looked at his watch，saying，“8:05.”

③将Step 2中句⑤中的分句升级为现在分词作状语

But soon he was waken up again，seeing a second person knocking at the window.

Step 4：连句成篇

I Don't Know the Time

A driver stopped his car on the street side to

have a rest. When he lay down in the seat and closed his eyes, a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time. The driver looked at his watch, saying, "8:05." Then he went to sleep again. But soon he was woken up again, seeing a second person knocking at the window. "Sir, do you know the time?" he asked. The driver looked at his watch again, and told him it was half past eight.

In order to have a good rest, he stuck a note on the window, on which it said, "I don't know the time." Again he lay down for his sleep. A few minutes later, a third person came and knocked at the window. "Hey, sir," he said. "It's a quarter to nine!"

○学以致用

假如你是李华，去年夏天你和你的父母第一次到美国旅游，因为对"restroom"和"WC"的误解，发生了一件趣事。请你根据以下内容用英语写一篇80词左右的小故事。

1. 餐馆吃饭，寻找WC；
2. 服务生提醒没有WC，有restroom；
3. 你的感悟。

【参考范文】

Last summer, I went abroad to the USA for a trip with my parents. On the first day my parents went to a restaurant and looked around for a toilet. However, they didn't find it. When they asked the waitress, she indicated a sign to the "restroom". But my parents didn't want to rest. Then I asked for the "WC", but the girl said they didn't have one. We were confused. At last, she understood what we wanted. She laughed and so did we. From this experience, I made up my mind to study English harder.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章，完成任务。

I didn't like Del so much. He always called me "Germy" instead of my real name "Jamie". Besides, he was known as a trouble-maker in school. So when the head teacher Mr Smith asked Del to come to his office, I naturally thought that Del had done something mean to someone. Through the window, I caught sight of a smaller boy crying. Del seemed unhappy, too.

He did not return to class that day. All of us were discussing what had happened to him. What else could such an annoying boy do? "He must have hit the boy and was sent home," I whispered to my friends. Their eyes widened. It felt good to see them so interested in what I said.

The next morning, the whole school was talking about Del being expelled (开除) for beating up a kid. I was surprised that my assumptions were passed on so quickly. So when Del walked into the classroom, all the kids were shocked. The kids next to him shifted their desks away. "What's your problem?" Del asked. "I don't want you to attack me," one kid said. Some laughed. "Yeah, I might," said Del. I could tell he was joking, but many kids thought he admitted he did beat up someone.

During recess (课间休息), Del tried to join the kickball game. "Neither team wants you," one of the players said. "Why?" Del asked, looking confused. "I always play with you guys." They ignored him and went on playing. Del sat by himself while the rest of the school enjoyed their recess away from him. Del looked lonely and sad, much different from before. I started to feel sorry for him.

Later that day, I learned what really happened. The kid was Del's little brother and he was crying because their mother fell ill and was sent to hospital. I felt even sorrier for what I said before. I started a rumor (谣言).

注意：续写词数应为150左右。

At recess the next day, I saw Del sitting alone watching the kickball game. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Now that Del had forgiven me, I decided to do more before the recess was over. _____

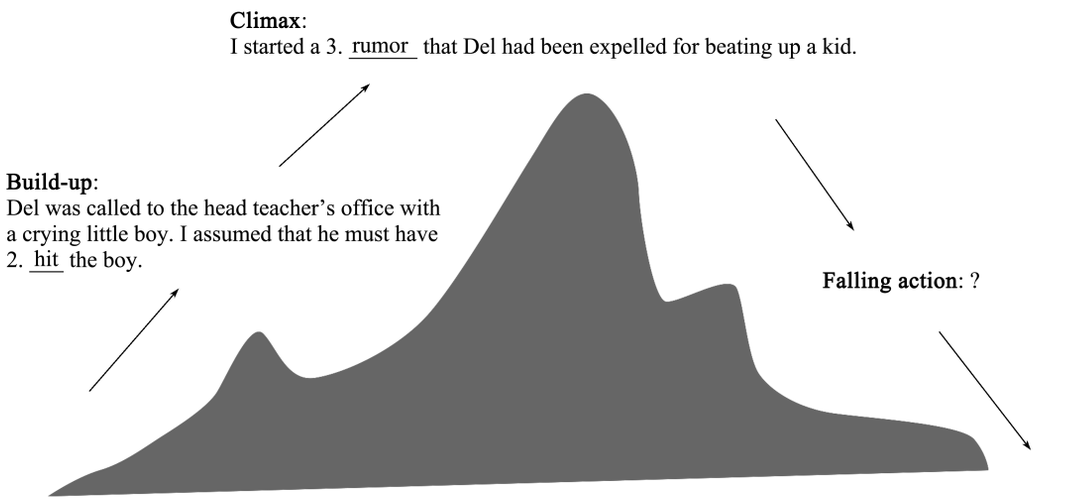
_____

_____

_____

_____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： At recess the next day, I saw Del sitting alone watching the kickball game. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	**1.** How did I feel? I felt very nervous. **2.** What did I say to Del? I told him I had started a rumor. **3.** How did Del react? Del was surprised and angry.
Paragraph 2： Now that Del had forgiven me, I decided to do more before the recess was over. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	**1.** What did I do then? I told all the players the truth. **2.** How did other students react? They welcomed Del to play together. **3.** How did Del feel? Del felt excited to play the game with others.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. I walked up to him, so nervous that（如此紧张以至于）I could hardly talk.

2. "Hey," I said（我说）.

3. "What do you want, Germy?" Del said impatiently without taking his eyes off the game（目光始终没离开比赛）.

4. I took my courage/plucked up the courage（鼓足勇气）and explained to him the whole story.

5. Surprised and angry（既吃惊又生气）, Del looked at me with an unbelievable look.

6. "I will tell everyone the truth（将告诉大家真相）," I promised.

7. "Okay, Jamie. I owe you an apology（该向你道个歉）too," he said with a shrug.

8. It was the first time（这是第一次）he'd used my real name.

9. I knew I had done the right thing（做了正确的事情）.

10. I approached the players（靠近选手）and asked them to stop for a moment.

11. Everyone was surprised（很惊讶）.

12. Guys, I am sorry, but I got something to say（有事情要说）.

13. I admitted that it was I who started the rumor（是我传出的谣言）.

14. "Del didn't beat up anyone（没有打任何人）," I said.

15. Upon hearing this（一听到这）, the players were confused first but soon figured out what had really happened.

16. "Hey, welcome back," they waved to（朝……挥手）Del.

17. Del nodded willingly（欣然点了点头）.

18. Seeing Del playing the game vigorously, I finally felt relieved that I eventually mended a big mistake（弥补了一个大错误）.

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

【参考范文】

At recess the next day, I saw Del sitting alone watching the kickball game. I walked up to him, so nervous that I could hardly talk. "Hey," I said. "What do you want, Germy?" Del said impatiently without taking his eyes off the game. I plucked up the courage and explained to him the whole story. Surprised and angry, Del looked at me with an disbelieving look. "I will tell everyone the truth," I promised. "Okay, Jamie. I owe you an apology too," he said with a shrug. It was the first time he'd used my real name. I knew I had done the right thing.

Now that Del had forgiven me, I decided to do more before the recess was over. I approached the players and asked them to stop for a moment. Everyone was surprised. "Guys, I am sorry, but I got something to say." I admitted that it was I who started the rumor. "Del didn't beat up anyone," I said. Upon hearing this, the players were confused first but soon figured out what had really happened. "Hey, welcome back," they waved to Del. Del nodded willingly. Seeing Del playing the game vigorously, I finally felt relieved that I eventually mended a big mistake.

单元质量评估(二)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

English 4 Professionals
Walk and Talk English
Communicate Fluently & Effectively in English

The Cities Are My Classrooms!

Why spend your time in a classroom when you can invest your time in studying during breakfast or dinner?

And why stay inside in the afternoon when you can study by the beach or in a car? That's right. That's the way we teach.

Walk and Talk English & Eat and Drink English!

Are you considering new challenges? Would you like to take your English to the next level with our in-house methods that are highly effective, yet relaxing and fun?

How about spending your vacation time studying English during a delicious breakfast, or during lunch in a historical restaurant, or at night from a sky room as you enjoy views of London or Dublin? You could be sitting comfortably inside or in front of a palace or castle, drinking coffee or tea while you study. Why not?

What is your greatest challenge with the English language?

Get in touch with us and let us know your difficulty as well as your goals in life.

It is essential that the solution we offer also fits in well with your personality, mindset, objectives with English, your available time to travel, and your family commitments.

We recommend continuous learning with some famous universities like Oxford, Cambridge.

Lastly, your holiday in Europe, as well as your experiences with the English language and your travels to different cities, should have that "Wow!" factor that helps you to remember your holiday forever.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 English 4 Professionals 这个英语学习项目,目的是吸引潜在的学生或客户参加。

1. What is the writing purpose of this passage?

A. To advertise for the English programme.

B. To inform you of the chance to learn English.

C. To highlight the importance of learning English.

D. To explain the process of learning effective English.

A　写作意图题。纵观全文可知,文章主要介绍了 English 4 Professionals 这个英语学习项目,并强调其独特的学习方式和体验。由此可以推断出,本文的写作目的是为这个英语项目进行广告宣传。故选 A。

2. What does English 4 Professionals promise to offer?

A. A relaxing learning experience beyond classrooms.

B. A cultural learning experience throughout the world.

C. A tourism learning experience made for your family members.

D. An individualised learning experience designed for your whole life.

A　细节理解题。根据表格第二格中的"Why spend your time in a classroom when you can invest your time in studying during breakfast or dinner?""And why stay inside in the afternoon when you can study by the beach or in a bar? That's right. That's the way we teach."可知,English 4 Professionals 提供了一种在课堂之外轻松、愉悦的学习方式。故选 A。

3. Where will you probably study if you sign up for the programme?

A. On Wenlock Road in Italy.

B. In a historical restaurant in England.

C. On the Oxford campus playground.

D. In a traditional palace near your home.

B　推理判断题。根据表格第三格中的"How about spending your vacation time studying English during a delicious breakfast, or during lunch in a historical restaurant, or at night from a sky room as you enjoy views of London or Dublin? You could be sitting comfortably inside or in front of a palace or castle, drinking coffee or tea while you study. Why not?"可知,如果你报名参加这个项目,你可能会在英国的一个历史悠久的餐馆里学习。故选 B。

B

Some polyglots (通晓多种语言的人), who can speak quite a few languages, may seem especially talented. Zhao Yuanren, a Chinese American linguist, could speak seven languages and more than 30 dialects. England's Queen Elizabeth Ⅰ could speak at least 7 languages. A famous Italian named

Giuseppe Mezzofanti was reported to have been able to communicate in 30 to 40 languages. Polyglots are indeed amazing, but American teenager Tim Doner is living proof that anyone can try to be one.

As a child, Tim studied French and Latin at school, but he found it difficult to be interested in just words and grammar rules. When he was 13, Tim started listening to Hebrew rap music. One day, he looked up the words in a dictionary and realised he could put them together to make sentences! He started looking for people who spoke Hebrew so he could practise, and then, he decided to sign up for a summer Arabic class. One evening, just for fun, he posted a video of himself speaking Arabic and another of him speaking Hebrew. Hebrew and Arabic speakers wrote nice comments on his videos and gave him advice. Tim loved it. He could actually communicate with people! After that, Tim started looking for new languages to learn, and posting more videos of himself speaking new languages, including Chinese. Tim also began to use many other methods to make learning fun.

Tim wishes everyone would learn more than one language and not just as a school subject. "Knowing a language is a lot more than knowing a couple of words out of a dictionary," Tim says. Languages are for communicating with people, learning about their culture, and understanding how different people think. "Open up your mind to the fact that language represents a cultural worldview," says Tim. "You can translate words easily, but you can't quite translate meaning." As Nelson Mandela said, "If you talk to a man in a language he understands, that goes to his head. If you talk to him in his language, that goes to his heart."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要介绍了美国少年 Tim Doner 如何通过多种有趣的方式学习多种语言，以及他对语言学习的看法。

4. What helped Tim understand Hebrew at first?

A. Watching movies.

B. Talking to friends.

C. Using a dictionary.

D. Taking online courses.

C　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"When he was 13, Tim started listening to Hebrew rap music. One day, he looked up the words in a dictionary and realised he could put them together to make sentences!"可知，最初帮助 Tim 理解希伯来语的是字典。故选 C。

5. How is Tim different from historical polyglots mentioned?

A. He uses modern technology to learn.

B. He speaks fewer languages than they do.

C. He learns languages only at school.

D. He doesn't care about grammar rules.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"One evening, just for fun, he posted a video of himself speaking Arabic and another of him speaking Hebrew. Hebrew and Arabic speakers wrote nice comments on his videos and gave him advice."可知，Tim 使用现代技术学习，这是他与文中提到的历史上通晓多种语言的人的不同之处。故选 A。

6. What can be inferred from Mandela's quote at the end?

A. Language affects emotional connection.

B. Everyone should learn African languages.

C. Speaking well impresses other people.

D. Translation is often unnecessary.

A　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"As Nelson Mandela said, 'If you talk to a man in a language he understands, that goes to his head. If you talk to him in his language, that goes to his heart.'"可推知，语言影响情感联系。故选 A。

7. What is the main purpose of the passage?

A. To list famous polyglots in history.

B. To show how to become a linguist.

C. To encourage language learning for communication.

D. To compare school language teaching and self-study.

C　写作意图题。根据最后一段中的"Tim wishes everyone would learn more than one language and not just as a school subject. 'Knowing a language is a lot more than knowing a couple of words out of a dictionary,' Tim says. Languages are for communicating with people, learning about their culture, and understanding how different people think."可知，这篇文章的主要目的是鼓励为了交流而学习语言。故选 C。

C

Arseny Moskvichev dreams of the day he can have a meaningful conversation with artificial intelligence. But the problem is that Large Language Models (LLMs) are complete amnesiacs. "Even the most advanced chatbots can only process about 16,000 words of text within a prompt (提示框)

when in conversation with a human user," says the cognitive and computer scientist. "They only have so much context they can attend to. If you're out of this context, they forget everything you spoke about with them. And they can't connect the information they receive during different 'conversations' with a human, or build a storyline."

To help chatbots improve their comprehension of the deep complexities (复杂性) of context, Moskvichev and his colleagues are teaching them to read novels, the way we might learn to read them in high school literature classes. The act of reading a novel might seem like an entertaining (娱乐的) pastime, but it requires intelligence. We use memory and complex comprehension to follow multiple characters through plots, scene changes, and narrative. The average novel averages around 80,000 words. All those words gradually build a story we hold and examine in our minds. But such skills are currently out of reach to LLMs, which can process text but cannot be said to read the way we do.

Moskvichev and his group built a new database from 1,500 books. They trained LLMs in reading comprehension by having the AI read a book in the database, analysing long stretches of text, then asking it to find a correct scene summary from a pool of options. As a training tool, the database offers more than a million questions for LLMs to practise on.

However, to accurately summarise a book requires someone to read it, and design the training questions. "It's very expensive to collect a data set of this type," Moskvichev says. It is here that the scientists showed their power of creative imagination—they got an artificial intelligence model to summarise short book sections. It is an example of a machine being used to train a more powerful machine.

While Moskvichev and his group have found the LLMs still make mistakes about half of the time, they have observed significant improvement in trained LLM performance versus untrained. "There's still room for improvement," Moskvichev says.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了在人工智能领域中大型语言模型(LLMs)在处理上下文理解方面的局限性,以及科学家 Arseny Moskvichev 和他的团队如何通过训练这些模型阅读小说来提高它们的阅读理解能力。

8. What does the underlined word "amnesiacs" in Paragraph 1 refer to?

A. People who tend to forget things.

B. People who are poor at giving a speech.

C. People who stick to one's own opinion.

D. People who have trouble analysing texts.

A　词义猜测题。根据第一段中的"They only have so much context they can attend to. If you're out of this context, they forget everything you spoke about with them. And they can't connect the information they receive during different 'conversations' with a human, or build a storyline."可知,LLMs 只能关注有限的上下文,超出范围这些模型就会忘记,所以"But the problem is that Large Language Models (LLMs) are complete amnesiacs."中的"amnesiacs"指的是会忘记事情的人。故选 A。

9. What can we infer from Paragraph 2?

A. What is related to humans and AI needs deep comprehension.

B. What matters to AI may be of the same importance for humans.

C. What humans do to relax themselves can be a big trouble for AI.

D. What humans and AI share may be some seemingly simple skills.

C　推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,第二段主要讲述了阅读小说这一人类的娱乐活动需要运用记忆和复杂的理解能力,而目前 LLMs 还没有这种能力,即阅读这一项对人类来说是放松自己的活动,对 AI 来说却是一项巨大的挑战。故选 C。

10. For Moskvichev and his group, what is the challenge of building training tools for chatbots?

A. Raising narrative ability.

B. Seeking suitable novels.

C. Designing training tools.

D. Finding human resources.

D　推理判断题。根据第四段中的"However, to accurately summarise a book requires someone to read it, and design the training questions. 'It's very expensive to collect a data set of this type,' Moskvichev says."可知,为聊天机器人构建训练工具的挑战在于需要有人阅读书籍并设计训练问题,而收集这种类型的数据集非常昂贵。由此可推知,Moskvichev 和他的团队在为聊天机器人构建训练工具时面临的挑战是找到人力资源。故选 D。

11. What is Moskvichev's attitude towards LLMs' future?

A. Positive.　　B. Doubtful.

C. Worried.　　D. Changing.

A　观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知，尽管还有错误和改进的空间，但他们看到了训练后的进步；因此，Moskvichev 对 LLMs 的未来持积极态度。故选 A。

D

Language is not just a tool for communication; it's also a playground for the mind. English, in particular, is famous for its rich vocabulary and influence from many different languages, which provides a great basis for creativity and humour. One example of this is the use of puns—the clever or humorous use of a word that has more than one meaning, or of words that have different meanings but sound the same.

Puns can be sorted into different types. Homophonic puns rely on word pairs that sound alike but have different meanings, like "A bicycle can't stand on its own because it's two-tired." Homographic puns use words that are spelled the same but have different meanings and sometimes different pronunciations, for example, "I can't bear the weight of that bear."

Compound puns often combine homophonic and homographic elements, creating even more complex wordplay, for example, "I was struggling to figure out how lightning works, but then it struck me."

The history of puns in English literature and culture is rich and interesting. Following their development shows how language, culture, and humour have changed over time. Puns have been a part of English literature from the early days, appearing in medieval（中世纪的） texts and Shakespeare's plays, often used for humour or to show double meanings. During the Victorian Era, strict social norms promoted the use of puns, as they allowed people to comment on issues cleverly while avoiding directness. Today, puns are widely used in advertising, television, and social media, reflecting how English wordplay adapts to different contexts and media.

People's opinions of puns have changed throughout history. Once seen as a sign of cleverness, puns were sometimes looked down on as low-level humour. However, in recent years, they've regained popularity, largely because of the Internet and social media, which allow for quick sharing and creativity in pun-based humour.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了双关语的定义、类型、历史发展及人们对它的态度变化。

12. What can we learn from Paragraph 1?

A. Language is difficult to learn.

B. Language develops over time.

C. Language serves different social purposes.

D. Language has a creative and playful nature.

D　推理判断题。根据第一段中的"Language is not just a tool for communication; it's also a playground for the mind. English, in particular, is famous for its rich vocabulary and influence from many different languages, which provides a great basis for creativity and humour."可知，语言具有创造性和趣味性。故选 D。

13. Which of the following contains a homographic pun?

A. You can call a bee from America a USB.

B. Six is afraid of seven because seven ate nine.

C. Time flies like an arrow; fruit flies like a banana.

D. I only know 25 letters of the alphabet; I don't know Y.

C　推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Homographic puns use words that are spelled the same but have different meanings and sometimes different pronunciations"可知，C 项"Time flies like an arrow; fruit flies like a banana."中"flies"和"like"均为同形不同义，属于同形双关。故选 C。

14. What was the major purpose of using puns in the Victorian Era?

A. To break social rules.

B. To express ideas indirectly.

C. To spread different opinions.

D. To make communication easier.

B　细节理解题。根据第四段中的"During the Victorian Era, strict social norms promoted the use of puns, as they allowed people to comment on issues cleverly while avoiding directness."可知，维多利亚时代使用双关语是为了间接表达观点。故选 B。

15. What is the last paragraph mainly about?

A. The rise and fall of the popularity of puns.

B. The new changes of language in recent years.

C. The influence of social media on modern humour.

D. The link between puns and social communication.

A　段落大意题。根据最后一段中的"People's opinions of puns have changed throughout history. Once seen as a sign of cleverness, puns

were sometimes looked down on as low-level humour. However, in recent years, they've regained popularity"可知,本段主要讲双关语受欢迎程度的起伏变化。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Simple Ways to Improve Your Written English

Many people think it is really difficult to improve their writing in English. Don't worry, though. Here are some simple steps that you can take to improve your written English.

Increase your vocabulary.

To express yourself clearly, you need a good active vocabulary. That's not just being able to know lots of words—it means actually being able to use them correctly. **16**

Tip: When you learn a new word, try to learn all the forms of that word.

17

People often say that we learn to write best by reading. Reading in English is useful in many ways. It is a great way to get an idea of the different styles of writing and see how to use words properly.

Tip: **18** Learning shouldn't be boring. Read each text several times to make sure you understand how to use new words and expressions in the text.

Improve your grammar.

Grammar is very important because it improves the quality of your writing.

Tip: **19** The first time, look for general mistakes and the second time look for mistakes with the grammar point you are studying at the moment.

Just do it!

The best way to improve your writing is to get a pen and paper and write. Be prepared to write several versions (版本) of each text. **20**

A. Know your readers.

B. Read widely and often.

C. Always check your writing twice.

D. Remember, practice makes perfect!

E. Choose books or articles that interest you.

F. Use simpler language and shorter sentences to show your ideas.

G. Do this by learning new words with example sentences, not just word lists.

答案:16～20 GBECD

Ⅲ. 完形填空

One year my children came home from school asking where we were going on the summer vacation. I couldn't 21 to take them anywhere but I didn't want to tell them that so I just said, "It's a surprise!" They were 22.

I called several amusement 23 to see if there was a half-price event during the summer but no such 24. I tried everything, with no success, so I called some of the other mums to find that most were in the same situation that I was. We decided to 25 something fun for our kids to do. We had a meeting, all five of us, and 26 what is now called a "playcation".

One mother was a 27, so on Mondays the kids would all go to her house. They would play games using plants and 28. They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.

Another mother had novel readings on Tuesdays. She asked some questions about the novels. The kid who answered 30 got a penny, which they all turned in at the end to buy their goodie bags (礼品袋).

At our house on Wednesdays, I made 31 obstacle training with my spare tires. The kids also walked a balance beam and raced through large cardboard boxes taped together.

On 32 they had arts and crafts across the street. Fridays were 33 by a wonderful single dad with a metal detector (金属探测器) who took everyone out to play treasure 34.

The summer was a big 35. The kids didn't miss anything. My son actually asked me, "Can we do this again next year?"

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和几个朋友生活很拮据,暑假无法带她们的孩子出去玩,但是她们通过自己的努力,给了孩子们一个别样的暑假,这个暑假活动非常成功且有意义。

21. A. sacrifice　　B. offer
C. select　　D. afford

D 根据下文的"I called several amusement 23 to see if there was a half-price event during the summer..."可知,作者生活很拮据,所以这里的意思是作者不能负担得起(afford)带他们去任何地方玩。

22. A. disappointed　　B. satisfied
C. shocked　　D. delighted

D 根据上文的"It's a surprise!"可知,孩子们听到暑假会有惊喜,自然很开心(delighted)。

23. A. schools　　B. shops
C. parks　　D. libraries

C 根据下文的"if there was a half-price event during the summer"可知,作者是给游乐园(parks)打电话询问优惠事宜。

24. A. hope　　B. luck
C. attitude　　D. hobby
B　根据下文的“I tried everything, with no success...”可知，作者尽力了，但是没有成功。由此可知，作者说自己运气(luck)不好。

25. A. come up with　　B. face up to
C. look forward to　　D. step away from
A　根据下文可知，作者和其他妈妈们决定为她们的孩子想出(come up with)一些有趣的事情去做。

26. A. discovered　　B. enjoyed
C. created　　D. controlled
C　她们创造了(created)一个被称为“playcation”的活动。

27. A. teacher　　B. doctor
C. gardener　　D. grocer
C　根据下文的“They would play games using plants and 28. They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知，这位母亲是一位园艺爱好者(gardener)。

28. A. books　　B. vegetables
C. sweets　　D. toys
B　根据下文的“They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知，他们用植物和蔬菜(vegetables)做游戏。

29. A. guessed　　B. watched
C. affected　　D. felt
B　他们也种植蔬菜，并且在整个夏天观察(watched)它们的生长。

30. A. easily　　B. patiently
C. correctly　　D. hurriedly
C　根据下文的“got a penny”可知，回答正确(correctly)的小孩会获得一美分的奖励。

31. A. indoor　　B. outdoor
C. mountain　　D. speech
B　根据下文的“The kids also walked a balance beam and raced through large cardboard boxes taped together.”可知，作者用备用轮胎对孩子们进行了户外(outdoor)障碍物训练。

32. A. Thursdays　　B. Saturdays
C. Sundays　　D. Mondays
A　上文依次介绍了孩子们在星期一、星期二、星期三这三天的活动安排，下文介绍了周五的活动，故本空应介绍孩子们在星期四(Thursdays)进行的活动。

33. A. hosted　　B. forced
C. avoided　　D. forbidden
A　每周星期五由一位单身父亲举办(hosted)这次活动。

34. A. hiding　　B. making
C. hunting　　D. donating
C　这位单身父亲用一个金属探测器，带着孩子们外出去玩寻找(hunting)宝物的游戏。

35. A. failure　　B. challenge
C. business　　D. success
D　根据下文的“The kids didn't miss anything. My son actually asked me, ‘Can we do this again next year?’”可知，这个暑假非常成功(success)。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Language is a keystone of Chinese culture, working **36.** as both a bridge and a reflection of its rich traditions. Mandarin Chinese, the official language of China, **37.** is spoken (speak) by the majority of Chinese people and is essential for navigating daily life. The written language, with its elegant characters and long history dating back to the Shang Dynasty, is **38.** an important part of Chinese.

In Chinese society, effective communication is more than just exchanging **39.** words (word); it's about showing respect, **40.** especially (especial) during festivals, business meetings, and other formal occasions. The use of honourable language and respectful titles **41.** stresses (stress) the importance of social system and harmony in Chinese customs.

Drinking tea is another cherished aspect of Chinese communication. Sharing a pot of tea is not only a gesture of hospitality **42.** but also a way to build relationships and establish trust. Whether in a busy city or a quiet village, the ceremony of tea drinking, **43.** which is a common activity, brings people together.

By learning about the role of language in Chinese culture, families can gain a deeper appreciation for the subtle differences of **44.** traditional (tradition) Chinese cultures. Encourage your children **45.** to explore (explore) Mandarin Chinese, try writing a few characters, or practise polite greetings.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，你的朋友刘洋一直想要在趣味中探索、学习英语。请你给他写一封邮件，向他推荐一款优质的英语趣味学习应用软件，帮助他探索多样的英语学习方式，内容包括：

1. 该软件的核心学习功能(原声阅读、趣味词汇闯关、口语跟读)；
2. 适用人群与学习优势；
3. 使用建议。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Liu Yang,

I'm delighted to hear you're eager to explore and study English in an engaging way, so I'm writing to highly recommend a fantastic learning app to you.

It boasts three core features: authentic reading materials, fun vocabulary challenges, and AI-powered oral repetition practice. Suitable for learners of all levels, it turns tedious learning into an enjoyable experience. I suggest you set a fixed daily time slot to keep using it, so you'll have more new insights.

I hope you'll find it helpful!

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Robert and Henry were two friends in the same class. They always played together and went home together. One day Robert and Henry were going home from school, when, on turning a corner, Robert cried out, "A fight! Let's go and see!"

"No," said Henry. "Let's go quietly home and not meddle with (插手) this quarrel. We have nothing to do with it and may get into trouble. Also our parents are expecting to have dinner with us together at home and I don't want them to worry about me."

"You are a coward (胆小鬼), and afraid to go," said Robert, and he ran off. Henry went straight home, and in the afternoon went to school as usual.

But Robert had told all the boys that Henry was a coward, and they laughed at him a great deal. From then on, they looked down upon Henry and didn't want to play with him together.

Henry was sad but he wasn't angry with Robert for his rude behaviour, because he learned that true courage is shown most in bearing misunderstanding when it was not deserved, and that he ought to be afraid of nothing but doing wrong. Thus, he just ignored the other boys' laughter and continued to go to school and study as well. However, Robert didn't invite Henry to go home with him anymore. Instead, he had some other boys who also thought Henry was a coward. Every day after school, they didn't go home directly but went to the river or somewhere to play games and had a lot of fun.

A few days later, Robert was bathing with his new friends in a river, and got out of his depth. He struggled, and screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could, but they did not even try to help him.

注意：续写词数应为150左右。

Robert was fast sinking.

Thus, Robert's life was saved.

【参考范文】

Robert was fast sinking. It seemed as if Robert would be drowned. Just at the moment, Henry happened to be passing by. Hearing the screams, Henry ran to the riverside, threw off his clothes and jumped into the water without hesitation. He reached Robert just as he was sinking the last time. By great effort, and with much danger to himself, he brought Robert to the shore.

Thus, Robert's life was saved. Robert and his new friends were ashamed at having called Henry a coward. They realised that Henry had true courage. They said sorry to Henry for their rude behaviour and asked for his forgiveness. Henry forgave them happily. He and Robert were friends again and they went home together as usual. From this, Robert learned what true courage was: never be afraid to do good, but always fear to do evil.

Unit 3 Family matters

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Self", focusing on relationships between family members. In this unit, you will read thematic texts about family life, including a story about the family welcoming Grandfather, a play about the generation gap between father and son, and an account of unforgettable family memories such as brothers helping each other. You will also listen to and discuss tense conversations from Grandma's birthday party. You must also have your own unforgettable family stories. You will learn to get along well with your family members and handle family matters appropriately. Finally, you will develop the values of cherishing family bonds and loving your family members.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"家庭生活"主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	能理解英语中常见的五种时态的形式、功能及意义。
		语篇	1. 能读懂戏剧，分析其基本要素、语篇结构特征及语言特点； 2. 能读懂新闻特写，分析其与一般故事在结构、写作方法等方面的区别，了解其结构特点与功能，理解事件中隐含的深层意义。
		语用	了解涉及家庭话题的词汇和句式，提升口语表达，增强表达能力，理解多元文化中的家庭观念。
	语言技能	听	听"Alice's journal entry"，注意道歉时的语气和情感态度，探讨向家人道歉的表达方式。
		说	能讲述生活中需要道歉的情景故事，且能根据语境的需要正确使用重读，使口语表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读戏剧，了解父子之间的分歧与冲突，分析人物性格与品质，了解日常生活中的家庭矛盾； 2. 阅读新闻特写，理解故事内容以及事件中隐含的深层意义。
		写	1. 能在具体语境中整合并使用正确的时态描述生活经历； 2. 能记述一段难忘的家庭往事。
学习能力	1. 能通过阅读从文章中提取事实和细节，并基于这些信息形成自己的结论； 2. 能根据时间顺序或事件发展的先后次序叙事； 3. 能区分一些近义词的差异，并根据语境正确使用这些词汇。		
文化意识	了解不同文化背景下家庭生活的差异，能正确看待并妥善解决日常生活中的家庭矛盾，树立正确的家庭观。		
思维品质	1. 能基于单元所学内容和生活体验梳理和提炼对家庭生活主题的思考； 2. 通过视频、图片、音频和语篇理解家庭概念及家庭关系，进而引发对家庭相关话题的思考。		

必备知识

必背单词	character，approach，chat，focus，assume，respect，studio，court，ignore，professional，suit，talent，option，generation，gap，currently，regularly，responsible，memory，nowadays，skin，jogging，slim，nation，aim，issue，theme，observe，range，apologise，stress，impact，strength，admire，judge，settle，series，onto，track，media，obviously，feature，typically，individual，style，extra，detail，contain，summary，powerful，despite，throughout，entire，enormously，athlete，medal，somehow，indeed
重点词块	turn to... for，focus on，raise one's voice，calm down，be proud of，take one's advice，jump in with both feet，in the lead，now and then，leave... behind
重点句型	1. 完全倒装句 2. 动词-ing 形式作主语 3. 主语＋be＋*adj.*＋动词不定式
单元语法	复习时态
单元写作	有关家庭回忆的记叙文

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the general idea of the text.
2. Summarise the basic elements of play and their functions.
3. Learn how to solve conflicts with others and develop a good attitude towards family life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. character *n*. (书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色
2. approach *v*. 走近,靠近
3. chat *n*. 闲谈,聊天
4. focus *v*. (把……)集中(于)
5. respect *v*. 尊敬,敬重
6. ignore *v*. 忽视,不理
7. professional *adj*. 职业的,专业的
8. suit *v*. 适合
9. talent *n*. 天赋,才能
10. option *n*. 选择,可选择的东西
11. generation *n*. 一代(人)
12. gap *n*. 差距,差别
13. assume *v*. 假定,假设,认为
14. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……
15. focus on 集中注意力于;聚焦于……
16. calm down 镇定下来,平静下来
17. be proud of 以……为骄傲/自豪
18. take one's advice 采纳某人的建议/意见

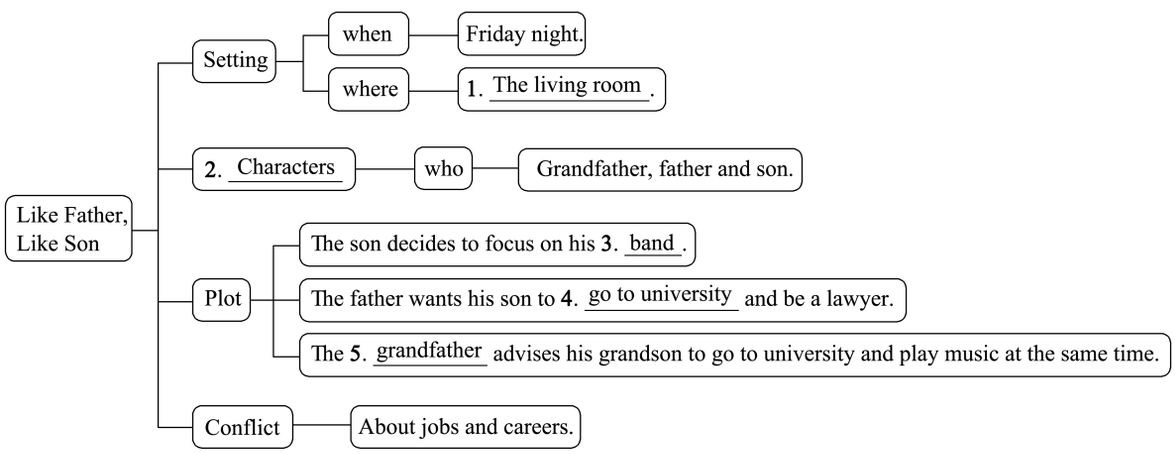
(二)阅读词汇

1. career *n*. 职业,事业
2. lawyer *n*. 律师
3. studio *n*. (音乐)录音室
4. court *n*. 法院,法庭
5. sigh *n*. 叹气,叹息(尤因厌烦、失望、疲倦等)
6. curtain *n*. (舞台上的)幕,帷幕
7. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加,全心全意投入
8. play music 搞音乐

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What is the conversation mainly about?
   A. The conflict between Father and Son about the career.
   B. The advice from Grandfather.
   C. The talent of Son.
   D. The suitable career for Son.
2. What did the son want to be?
   A. A lawyer.　　B. A musician.
   C. A soccer player.　　D. An engineer.
3. What does the father think of a career as a lawyer?
   A. Famous but tiring.
   B. Important but boring.
   C. Helpful and respectable.
   D. Demanding and challenging.
4. What did the grandfather advise his grandson to do?
   A. To go to university and play music.
   B. To be a professional musician.
   C. To have three opinions.
   D. To ignore adults' advice.
5. Which column may the text be taken from?
   A. Entertainment.　　B. Employment.
   C. Family.　　D. Sports.

答案：1～5　ABCAC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. You just assume I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but 为并列连词，连接两个并列句；在第一个分句中，I want to be a lawyer 是宾语从句，省略了连接词 that；在第二个分句中，because 引导表语从句。
   [尝试翻译]您以为我想当律师，可那只是因为您自己是律师。
2. I remember when you were his age, you said that you wanted to be a professional football player.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。remember 后面是省略了连接词 that 的宾语从句，其中 when 引导时间状语从句，而 that 引导宾语从句。
   [尝试翻译]我记得你像他这么大的时候，你说你想成为一名职业足球运动员。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Is Son satisfied with the result? Give your opinion. (Answers may vary.)
   According to the phrase "with a sigh" in the text, we can know that Son is not quite satisfied with the result.
2. Analyse the root of the problem in the play and try to voice your opinion. (Answers may vary.)
   The old and the young in the family usually hold different opinions about the same topic. The generation gap arises. It is obvious that the generation gap is quite common and it is hard to distinguish who is right and who is wrong. The best way to deal with that problem is to communicate with each other face to face. Stating opinions freely with family members will result in the suitable solution. Additionally, narrowing the generation gap with children is essential to each family member of a family.

Unit 3 课后素养评价（九）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

When children do something wrong, parents expect an apology. Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying "I'm sorry". Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to make their parents angry. Children always look timid (胆小的) because they have been anxious or nervous about being punished by parents.

When parents force them to apologise, they will lose the opportunity to think by themselves why they should apologise or what was wrong. So, how can we make them understand properly what was wrong?

If parents never give children a chance and say something like, "That's not good" or "Say you're sorry", children cannot learn to reflect their behaviour. So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words.

Children do not have enough skill to tell good or bad things. Therefore, it is necessary for parents to teach them what was wrong. When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible. Moreover, it would be more effective to tell children what kind of behaviour makes parents feel a certain way. For example, it would be good to express a mum's feelings with something like "When you hit me, mommy will get hurt" or "When you call me stupid, I feel sad".

In this way, children can understand that they hurt their mum or they make her sad, and therefore they will become able to apologise naturally. That would be more understandable for children why their behaviour was wrong than being scolded by parents something like "Hitting is not good" or "You cannot say stupid to someone else".

Many people believe that children are too young to understand what parents say. However, children actually can understand parents' feelings if parents use simple words and speak calmly. Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了当孩子出现不当行为时，家长应该如何正确引导。

1. Why do children apologise when they don't want to?

A. They want to show their politeness.

B. They want to please their parents.

C. They show regrets for their mistakes.

D. They want to act like their parents.

B　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying 'I'm sorry'. Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to make their parents angry."可知，即使孩子没有认识到自己的错误，也会道歉，是因为他们想取悦父母。故选B。

2. What is important for parents in making children apologise?

A. Timeliness.　　B. Seriousness.

C. Patience.　　D. Kindness.

C　推理判断题。根据第三段中的"So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words."可推知，父母的耐心是非常重要的。故选C。

3. What should parents do when explaining children's wrongdoings?

A. Speak briefly and clearly.

B. Teach them the harm seriously.

C. Do the same thing to children.

D. Show what other children do.

A　细节理解题。根据第四段中的"When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible."可知，父母在解释孩子的错误行为时应该简洁、明了。故选A。

4. What's the author's advice in correcting children's bad behaviours?

A. Trying to let children listen to them.

B. Communicating with them equally.

C. Giving them a lesson about behaviours.

D. Letting them alone because of small age.

B　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way."可推知，作者建议父母平等地与孩子们沟通，以纠正孩子们的不良行为。故选B。

Ⅱ. 七选五

If you want to improve your relationship with Mum or Dad, try listening to them, just like you would listen to a friend.

Now, it may seem kind of strange to treat your parents as if they were normal people and all, but it's worth trying. We're always saying to our parents, "__1__" But have you ever considered that

maybe you don't understand them?

They have pressures, too, you know? While you're worrying about your friends and your upcoming history test, they're worrying about their bosses and how they're going to pay for your education. __2__ Your mum may have too much work stress to just sit down and relax at night. Your dad may get laughed at because of the car he drives. They may have given up their dreams so that you can reach yours. They laugh, they cry, and they get their feelings hurt. __3__

If you take time to listen to your parents, two wonderful things will happen. __4__ Second, if you take time to understand your parents, you'll get your way much more often. If they feel that you understand them, they'll be more willing to listen to you, they'll be more flexible, and they'll trust you more.

__5__ Start by asking them some questions. When's the last time you asked your mum or dad, "How was your day today?" or "Tell me what you like and don't like about your job." or "Is there anything I could do to help around the house?"

A. You don't understand me.
B. First, you'll have greater respect for them.
C. It's important to get on well with your parents.
D. They are common people, just like me and you.
E. So how can you better understand your parents?
F. Talk to them and you will find a proper solution.
G. They have days when they don't know how they will pay the bills.

答案:1～5 AGDBE

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Master the usage of important words and phrases in context.
2. Master and use some important sentence structures.
3. Learn to choose effective ways to solve family conflicts.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I often have a **chat** with my friends on the telephone. 闲聊,聊天
2. My sister is studying law in the university and she will become a **lawyer** in the future. 律师
3. Faulkner has been considered as the greatest American novelist of his **generation**. 一代(人)
4. The girl suffered a terrible pain in her knees, which made it impossible for her to continue her **career** as a tennis player. 职业,事业
5. "I'm afraid we don't have enough money to buy it," **sighed** the mother. 叹气,叹息
6. As you **approach** the town, you'll see the college on the left. 走近,靠近
7. A **studio** is a room where radio or television programmes are recorded, CDs are produced, or films are made. (音乐)录音室
8. Before the **curtain** fell, the audience rose to their feet and a storm of applause burst out. (舞台上的)幕,帷幕

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
assume *v*. 假定,假设,认为	assumption *n*. 假定,假设,认为
respect *v*. 尊敬,敬重	respectful *adj*. 表示敬意的;尊敬的
	respectable *adj*. 体面的;令人尊敬的
	respective *adj*. 分别的,各自的
ignore *v*. 忽视,不理	ignorant *adj*. 无知的,愚昧的
	ignorance *n*. 无知,愚昧

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
professional *adj*. 职业的，专业的	profession *n*. 行业，职业
suit *v*. 适合	suitable *adj*. 适宜的
talent *n*. 天赋，才能	talented *adj*. 有天赋的，有才能的
option *n*. 选择，可选择的东西	optional *adj*. 可选择的
character *n*.（书、剧本、电影等中的）人物，角色	characteristic *adj*. 典型的，独特的 *n*. 特征，特色，特点

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. focus on 集中（注意力）于；聚焦于……

2. be interested in 对……感兴趣

3. calm down 冷静下来

4. raise one's voice 提高嗓门

5. be proud of 以……为傲，对……感到自豪

6. in the end 最终，最后

7. take one's advice 采纳某人的建议

8. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加，全心全意投入

9. at the same time 同时

10. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：完全倒装句

Oh look, here comes my boy.

哟，我的孩子来了。

2. 句型公式：because 引导表语从句

You just assume I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer.

您以为我想当律师，可那只是因为您自己是律师。

3. 句型公式：动词-ing 形式作主语

Playing in a band is not a job.

搞乐队根本不是一份工作。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. assume *v*. 假定，假设，认为

［教材原文］You just **assume** I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer.

您以为我想当律师，可那只是因为您自己是律师。

［归纳拓展］

(1)assume sb./sth. (to be)＋*n*./*adj*. 假定/假设某人/某物为……

It is (generally) assumed that... 人们（普遍）认为……

assume (that)... 认为，假设……

(2)assumption *n*. 假定，假设，认为

make an assumption/assumptions about 对……做出假设

(3)assuming *conj*. 假如，假设……为真

assuming (that)... 假定……

(4)assumed *adj*. 假定的，假设的

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①Let's assume his idea about the matter to be (be) right. What should we do to solve it?

②It's unwise to make an assumption (assume) that everyone will support your decision.

(2)写作微练

（应用文写作之申请信）**假如我被选为学生会主席**，我将组织更多丰富多彩的课外活动来丰富我们的学校生活。

Assuming (that) I am chosen to be chairman of the Student Council, I will organise more colourful after-class activities to enrich our school life.

2. suit *v*. 适合

［教材原文］Yes, and you have found the career that **suits** your talents.

是的，而且你找到了适合你天赋的职业。

［归纳拓展］

(1)suit... to... 使……适合……

suit *n*. 西服；套装

(2)suitable *adj*. 适合的

be suitable for... 适合于……

be suitable to do sth. 适合做某事

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①A good teacher suits his lessons to the age of his pupils.

②(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷) A torch (手电筒) along with suitable (suit) clothing is essential for walking in the dark.

③(2025·浙江1月卷) The concept is certainly not new—men have been renting good suits (suit) for decades—but for female shoppers, it is just taking off.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之申请信)我相信我的技能和经验**适合为**志愿者工作**做出贡献**。

I'm sure that my skills and experience are suitable to contribute to the voluntary work.

②(应用文写作之推荐信)我写信推荐这些课程,因为它们**既适合初学者,也适合高年级学生**。

I'm writing to recommend the courses because they are suitable for both beginners and advanced students.

3. 完全倒装句

[**教材原文**]Oh look, **here comes my boy**.

哟,我的孩子来了。

[**句式分析**]本句是 here 置于句首引起的完全倒装句。

[**归纳拓展**]

表示时间、地点、方位的副词或介词,如 here, there, now, then, up, down, in, out, off 等放在句首,主语是名词,且谓语动词是 be, lie, sit, stand, come, go, exist, live, rush 等不及物动词时,句子用完全倒装。

名师点拨

如果主语是人称代词,则不能进行完全倒装。如,"Here you are!"

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① When I was looking at the door, in came (come) a girl, wearing a white skirt.

②On the side of our school building runs (run) a crystal clear river.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之场景描写)我的学校**位于独山脚下**,它像一个大花园,里面有花、草和树木。

At the foot of Dushan Mountain stands my school, which is like a big garden with flowers, grass and trees.

②(读后续写之动作描写)铃声一响,**孩子们**就飞快地**跑了出来**,大声欢笑,蹦蹦跳跳。

Instantly the bell rang, out rushed the children as quickly as possible, laughing loudly and bouncing.

多义词汇 专练

1. character

A. *n*. 品质;性格

B. *n*. 特色

C. *n*. (书籍、戏剧中的)人物,角色

D. *n*. 文字,字母

① The book gives a detailed description of Mr Smith's **character**. A

②Mr James is fond of learning Chinese **characters**. D

③The modern hotels here have no real **character**. B

④She had some cartoon **characters** on her sweater. C

2. He won after only 52 minutes on the badminton **court**. C

A. *n*. 宫廷 B. *n*. 法庭 C. *n*. 球场

3. The lights in the theatre dimmed as the **curtain** rose. A

A. *n*. 幕布 B. *n*. 窗帘 C. *n*. 覆盖物

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. The job market has changed and our approaches to finding (find) jobs must change as well.

2. I have no option but to ask (ask) him to leave.

3. The new wing of the museum was not really in character with the rest of the building.

4. Generally speaking, it is assumed (assume) that stress is caused by too much work.

5. She showed a talent for dancing and acting at such an early age.

6. I have a chat with my parents last night about whether we will plant some trees in the yard.

7. Children often behave badly out of ignorance (ignore), so we should not be always hard on them.

8. When I entered the room, I found him seated (seat) in an armchair, deep in thought.

9. Choosing (choose) a proper title is the first step to make a good impression on your teacher.

10. This book, written in simple English, is recommended, because it is suitable (suit) for English beginners.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

calm down; focus on; in surprise; in the end; be proud of; at the approach of; in every respect; turn up

1. She looked at the man in surprise and said she did not know him at all.
2. The meeting focused on whether we should build a new teaching building.
3. I have a good reason to be proud of the work done by my father.
4. In the end, the young man arrived home safe and sound.
5. Once you've calmed down, decide how you want to move forward.
6. The owner of the apartment turned up on schedule and we chatted with each other about some topics.
7. To be honest, I am enormously satisfied with him in every respect.
8. At the approach of the interview, I sighed in anxiety.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. The fish caught yesterday was still alive.
   昨天捕到的鱼还活着。
2. Here is/stands a tall tree with a history of more than 500 years.
   这是一棵有着500多年历史的大树。
3. His coming late to school again made the teacher very angry.
   他上学又迟到了，这让老师很生气。
4. Since you have so many problems, why don't you take my advice or turn to him for help?
   既然你有这么多问题，为什么不采纳我的建议或者向他寻求帮助呢？
5. What about going out with me tomorrow?
   明天和我一起出去怎么样？

Ⅳ. 完形填空

As Katie Lopus began her journey down the path to marry Jon Ball, her grandmother, Frances Lopus, happily covered the path with a lot of petals (花瓣), __1__ the outdoor wedding ceremony (婚礼仪式), held on September 7, into a scene of beauty. Frances __2__ the flower girl, and she made the event more __3__.

"A flower girl __4__ petals, makes people happy and sets the stage for love, growth and commitment (奉献), and this is what my grandma has done for me my whole life," Katie said. "This is a symbol of what she's been to me and my whole family—the __5__ of smiles and joy."

"There wasn't a dry __6__ in the house," Katie remembers. "__7__ everyone was crying." After the wedding, her grandmother told her that being her flower girl made her __8__. Wedding guests noted that Frances had a big smile across her face, __9__ to be a part of the ceremony. They also said it was special to __10__ such a meaningful moment.

Katie says that making Frances her flower girl was an easy __11__. "The role of a flower girl is to bring __12__ to the ceremony, and my grandmother has been my guiding light," she says.

What wasn't as easy was the cross-country trip Frances had to take in order to attend the __13__. Frances lives in Florida and the wedding was in Montana, but __14__ she was more than willing to __15__ for the big day.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了Katie Lopus在9月7日的户外婚礼上，让住在佛罗里达州的祖母Frances Lopus担任花童，为她铺就花瓣之路，这一举动不仅让婚礼现场充满魅力，还让在场的所有人都感动落泪。

1. A. developing　　B. changing
   C. putting　　D. breaking
   B　change... into...为固定搭配，意为"把……变成……"，此处指祖母用花瓣将户外婚礼变成美丽的场景，符合语境。故选B。
2. A. served as　　B. pointed at
   C. waited for　　D. looked like
   A　served as意为"担任；充当"，此处指祖母担任花童的角色，符合文义。故选A。
3. A. orderly　　B. accessible
   C. peaceful　　D. magical
   D　此处指祖母作为花童让婚礼仪式变得更"神奇(magical)"了。故选D。
4. A. spreads　　B. catches
   C. picks　　D. holds
   A　花童的职责是"撒(spreads)花瓣"。故选A。
5. A. receiver　　B. observer
   C. operator　　D. deliverer
   D　deliverer意为"传递者；给予者"，此处指祖母是微笑和欢乐的传递者，契合她对家人的积极意义；receiver(接收者)、observer(观察者)、operator(操作员)代入语义不准确。故选D。
6. A. hand　　B. face
   C. eye　　D. head
   C　a dry eye为固定表达，意为"不哭的眼睛"，指现场所有人都感动落泪，符合下文"everyone was crying"的描述。故选C。
7. A. Actually　　B. Slowly
   C. Suddenly　　D. Finally
   A　actually"实际上"用于强调事实，此处指"实际上所有人都在哭"，进一步说明现场的感动氛围。故选A。

8. A. curious　　B. proud
C. calm　　D. confused
B　祖母担任花童后应是“自豪的(proud)”，curious(好奇的)、calm(平静的)、confused(困惑的)均与下文“had a big smile”的状态不符。故选B。

9. A. longing　　B. happening
C. competing　　D. pretending
A　longing to do sth.意为“渴望做某事”，此处指祖母渴望参与婚礼仪式，与“big smile”呼应。故选A。

10. A. experiment　　B. experience
C. value　　D. take
B　宾客们认为“经历(experience)”这样有意义的时刻很特别。故选B。

11. A. judgment　　B. schedule
C. decision　　D. measure
C　easy decision意为“容易的选择”，指让祖母当花童是Katie很容易做出的决定。故选C。

12. A. comfort　　B. honour
C. quality　　D. happiness
D　根据上文“A flower girl ___4___ petals, makes people happy and sets the stage for love, growth and commitment (奉献)”的提示可知，花童的作用是为婚礼带来“欢乐(happiness)”，与上文的“smiles and joy”呼应。故选D。

13. A. celebration　　B. festival
C. party　　D. wedding
D　全文围绕“婚礼(wedding)”展开，此处指祖母为参加婚礼进行了跨州旅行。故选D。

14. A. seriously　　B. luckily
C. patiently　　D. nervously
B　祖母从佛罗里达州到蒙大拿州参加婚礼，“幸运的是(luckily)”，她愿意为之奔波。故选B。

15. A. pay　　B. organise
C. travel　　D. prepare
C　上文提到“cross-country trip”，此处指祖母愿意为婚礼“出行(travel)”。故选C。

Section Ⅲ　Using language

学习任务目标

1. Review and master the five tenses.
2. Complete and understand the tense-related exercise.
3. Learn to use the tenses correctly in sentence writing.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Nowadays** many people prefer watching TV to reading.　现今，现时
2. It is important to protect your **skin** when you are outside.　皮肤
3. He keeps up his **jogging** whether it's blowing or snowing.　慢跑锻炼
4. Taking exercise is one way of keeping **slim**.　苗条的，修长的
5. Her speech made a profound **impact** on me.　作用，影响
6. The **theme** of the project is “Protecting health from climate change”.　主题
7. Taking everything into consideration, the **event** was a great success.　活动
8. There are a number of different points of view on this **issue**.　争论的问题
9. A **range** of activities have been introduced aimed at improving children's health.　一系列

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
responsible *adj*. (对事故、错误、罪行等)负有责任的，应承担责任的	responsibility *n*. 责任，职责；任务
memory *n*. 记忆，回忆	memorise *v*. 记忆，记住
	memorable *adj*. 值得纪念的，难忘的
nation *n*. 国家	national *adj*. 国家的；民族的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
aim *v*. 力求达到	aimless *adj*. 没有方向的，无目标的，无计划的
	aimlessly *adv*. 漫无目的地
observe *v*. 庆祝，过（节日、生日等）	observation *n*. 观察，观测；监视；（尤指据所见、所闻、所读而作的）评论
	observer *n*. 观察者；观察员
apologise *v*. 道歉	apology *n*. 道歉
stress *n*. 重音，重读	stressful *adj*. 充满压力的；紧张的
	stressed *adj*. 感到有压力的；焦虑不安的
strength *n*. 强烈程度	strong *adj*. 强壮的
	strengthen *v*. 加强

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. in fact 事实上；实际上
2. even though/if 即使；尽管
3. in one's forties 在某人四十几岁时
4. kind of 有点儿
5. be related to 与……有关
6. a wide range of 大范围的，广泛的
7. be busy with sth. 忙于某事
8. be worried about 担心……
9. make up for 弥补，补偿（令人不快的遭遇或损失）
10. have a/an... impact on 对……有影响
11. work on 忙于某事；从事于……

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：the same as...
   In fact, we stayed at the same campsite as we did ten years ago.
   事实上，我们和十年前一样住在同一个营地。
2. 句型公式：虚拟语气
   I wish she had come!
   我真希望她来了！
3. 句型公式：不定式作目的状语
   To make up for it, next week we plan to go to the countryside together.
   为了弥补这一点，下周我们计划一起去乡下。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. responsible *adj*.（对事故、错误、罪行等）负有责任的，应承担责任的

［教材原文］Who's **responsible**?
谁负责？

［归纳拓展］
(1)be responsible for... 对……负责，是……的原因
(2)responsibility *n*. 责任，职责；任务
It's one's responsibility to do sth. 做某事是某人的责任。
a sense of responsibility 责任感

［即学即练］
(1)单句语法填空
①（2025·北京卷）While raising an adult is a parent's job, it's also our responsibility (responsible) as a society to ensure that we support schools that nurture（培养）emotional and identity development.
②（2025·全国一卷）Moving goods and people around the world is responsible for a large part of global CO_2 emissions（排放）.
(2)写作微练
（应用文写作之倡议书）呼吁人们保护我们的环境免受污染**是我们的责任**。
It is our responsibility to appeal to people to protect our environment from being polluted. (responsibility *n*.)
→We are responsible for appealing to people to protect our environment from being polluted. (responsible *adj*.)

2. aim *v*. 力求达到；力争做到；瞄准；目的是；旨在；针对 *n*.［C］目标；目的［U］瞄准

［教材原文］It **aims** to deepen people's understanding of issues that are related to families.
它旨在加深人们对与家庭有关的问题的理解。

［归纳拓展］
(1)aim at/for... 力求获得；瞄准；目标是……
aim at doing sth./aim to do sth. 力争做某事
be aimed at (doing) sth. 旨在（做）某事
with the aim of... 以……为目标
achieve one's aim 实现某人的目标
(2)aimless *adj*. 没有方向的，无目标的，无计划的
(3)aimlessly *adv*. 漫无目的地

［即学即练］
(1)单句语法填空
①That's why this book aims to help (help) you

figure out how to write the best ending for whatever kind of writing you're doing.

②Jane moved aimlessly (aim) down the street, not knowing where she was heading.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之通知)我们将举办一次英语演讲比赛,**旨在练习英语口语**。

We will have an English speech contest, which is aimed at practising/aims to practise our oral English.(which 引导定语从句,aim *v*.)

→We will have an English speech contest, aiming at practising our oral English.(分词作状语,aim *v*.)

→We will have an English speech contest, with the aim of practising our oral English.(aim *n*.)

3. apologise *v*. 道歉

[**教材原文**]Act out the conversation to **apologise** to a family member.

表演对话,向家人道歉。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)apologise to sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事向某人道歉

(2)apology *n*. 道歉

make/offer an apology to sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事向某人道歉

accept/refuse one's apology 接受/拒绝某人的道歉

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① Victor apologised for his not being able to inform me of the change in the plan.

②I must make an apology (apologise) to him for not going to his party.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之道歉信)我写信**向你表达我的歉意**,因为我不能按计划和你一起去看艺术展。

I am writing to make/offer an apology to you for not being able to go to the art exhibition with you as planned. (apology *n*.)

→I am writing to apologise to you for not being able to go to the art exhibition with you as planned. (apologise *v*.)

多义词汇 专练

observe

A. *v*. 看到;注意到　　B. *v*. 观察

C. *v*. 遵守　　D. *v*. 庆祝

① Though having lived abroad for years, many homesick Chinese still **observe** traditional customs. C

② The scientist devoted most of his lifetime to **observing** the behaviour of the chimps. B

③Could you tell me how you usually **observe** your birthday? D

④The thief was **observed** to open the window and run away. A

语法研习课

复习时态

语法感知

①Grandfather and Father, seated at the table, **are playing** chess.

②You **know** you can always turn to your dad for a chat.

③**I've decided** not to go to university.

④I knew you'**d say** that.

⑤I **told** you to calm down, both of you!

⑥If you go to university and play music at the same time, you **will have** two options for your future.

⑦She **had learned** some English before she came to the institute.

⑧Jenny **was looking** for a seat when, luckily, a man got up and left.

1. 句①中黑体部分的构成形式为"are+现在分词",故其时态为"现在进行时"。
2. 句②中黑体部分的构成形式为"动词原形",表示一种客观事实,故其时态为"一般现在时"。
3. 句③中黑体部分的构成形式为"have+过去分词",表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在,故其时态为"现在完成时"。
4. 句④中黑体部分的构成形式为"would+动词原形",故其时态为"过去将来时"。
5. 句⑤中黑体部分的构成形式为"动词过去式",故其时态为"一般过去时"。
6. 句⑥中黑体部分的构成形式为"will+动词原形",故其时态为"一般将来时"。

7. 句⑦中黑体部分的构成形式为“had＋过去分词”，表示过去的过去，故其时态为“过去完成时”。

8. 句⑧中黑体部分的构成形式为“was＋现在分词”，故其时态为“过去进行时”。

语法精讲

一、理解概念

在英语中，不同的时间里以不同方式发生的动作或存在的状态要用动词的不同形式表示出来，动词的这种不同形式构成了动词的时态。一般来说，发生在现在的事情用现在的时态进行描述；发生在过去的事情用过去的时态进行描述；将要发生的事情用将来的时态进行描述。

二、语法规则

（一）一般时态

1. 一般现在时

（1）构成

一般现在时主要由动词原形构成。动词 be 的第一人称单数形式用 am，第三人称单数形式用 is，其他人称形式均用 are。动词 have 的第三人称单数形式用 has。实义动词的第三人称单数形式的变化规则：

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-s	hate—hates
以 s，x，sh，ch 或 o 结尾的动词加-es	discuss—discusses wash—washes teach—teaches fix—fixes go—goes
以“辅音字母＋y”结尾的动词，变 y 为 i 再加-es	carry—carries study—studies

（2）一般现在时的用法

①表示经常发生的、习惯性的、反复出现的动作或状态。常与表示习惯的副词（词组）always，every time，now and then，often，seldom，never，sometimes，usually，every day/night 等连用。

He **often goes** to work by bus，and he **takes** a walk with his wife after dinner **every day**.

他经常乘公共汽车去上班，而且每天晚饭后和妻子一块散步。

②按时间表、时刻表、日程表等安排好要发生的动作。只限于 go，arrive，leave，start，stay，return，begin，come 等动词。

Look at the timetable. Hurry up! Flight 4026 **takes** off at 18:20.

看看时间表。快点儿吧！4026 航班 18:20 起飞。

③用在时间、条件或让步状语从句中表示将来。

If it **is** fine tomorrow，we will go there.

如果明天晴天，我们就去那里。

2. 一般过去时

（1）构成

一般过去时由动词的过去式构成。动词的过去式的变化规则：

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-ed	look—looked
以 e 结尾的动词后加-d	hope—hoped like—liked
以“辅音字母＋y”结尾的动词，变 y 为 i 再加-ed	study—studied try—tried
以重读闭音节或/r/音节结尾，词尾只有一个辅音字母时，双写词尾的辅音字母再加-ed	stop—stopped prefer—preferred admit—admitted permit—permitted

（2）一般过去时的用法

表示过去一段时间内经常性或习惯性的动作。常与 often，usually，seldom 等表示频度的副词连用。还可以表示在过去某一时间所发生的动作或存在的状态，常与 yesterday，the other day，last week，the day before yesterday 等过去的时间状语连用。

In 1931，Addams **became** the first American woman to win the Nobel Peace Prize.

1931 年，亚当斯成为第一位赢得诺贝尔和平奖的美国女性。

3. 一般将来时

（1）构成

一般将来时由“shall/will＋动词原形”构成。其中 shall 用于第一人称，will 可用于各种人称。

（2）一般将来时的用法

表示将要发生的动作或状态，常与表示将来的时间状语 tomorrow，next year，“in＋一段时间”等连用。“will＋动词原形”还可以表示说话时临时作出的决定。

—What time is it?

——几点了？

—I have no idea. But just a minute，I **will check** it for you.

——我不知道。稍等，我给你查查。

（3）其他表示“将来”的结构及用法

①“be going to＋动词原形”表示按计划、打算要做某事或根据某种迹象预示着要发生某事。

Look! Dark clouds are gathering. It **is going to rain** soon，I think.

瞧！乌云正在聚集。我想快要下雨了。

②“be to+动词原形”表示按计划、约定或按职责、义务必须做的事或即将发生的动作。

You **are to hand in** your papers by 10 o'clock.

到 10 点你们得交上试卷。

③“be about to+动词原形”表示正要或即将要做某事，一般不与具体的将来时间状语连用。

Tom **was about to close** the window when his attention was caught by a bird.

汤姆正要关上窗户，就在这时一只鸟引起了他的注意。

名师点拨

如果表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或存在的状态，要用过去将来时(would/should+动词原形)。该时态主要出现在间接引语中。

I telephoned him yesterday to ask what I **would/should do** next week.

我昨天给他打电话，问他我下周要做什么。

(二)进行时态

1. 构成

现在进行时由“am/is/are+现在分词”构成；过去进行时由“was/were+现在分词”构成；将来进行时由“will/shall+be+现在分词”构成；现在完成进行时由“have/has+been+现在分词”构成。现在分词的变化规则：

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-ing	ask—asking
以不发音的 e 结尾的动词，去 e 再加-ing	write—writing take—taking face—facing
以重读闭音节结尾，且末尾只有一个辅音字母时，双写该辅音字母再加-ing	cut—cutting begin—beginning swim—swimming
以 ie 结尾的动词，变 ie 为 y 再加-ing	lie—lying die—dying

2. 进行时的用法

(1)现在进行时

①表示说话时正在进行或表示现阶段正在进行的动作，虽然此时此刻该动作不一定正在进行。

—I hear you **are working** in a bookstore. What's it like?

——我听说你在书店工作。感觉怎么样？

—Well, it's very hard work and I'm always tired, but I don't mind.

——哦，工作很辛苦，我也总是很累，不过我不介意。

②表示按计划或安排即将发生的动作，常用于 go, come, leave, start, arrive, return, work, sleep, stay, have, wear, run out 等动词(词组)。

Food supplies in the flood-stricken area **are running out**. We must act immediately before there's none left.

洪灾区的食物供给快要耗尽了。我们必须在食物吃完前马上行动。

(2)过去进行时

①表示过去某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作，常与表示过去的时间状语从句以及 at that time, at that moment, at this time yesterday, at ten o'clock yesterday 等连用。

He must have sensed that I **was looking at** him. He suddenly glanced at me and said quietly, “Why are you staring at me like that?”

他一定感觉到了我正在看他。他突然瞥了我一眼，轻声说：“你为什么那样盯着我？”

②表示过去的两个动作中持续进行的一个，常用在“be doing... when...”结构中。

Jack **was working** in the lab **when** the power cut occurred.

杰克正在实验室里工作，这时突然断电了。

(3)将来进行时

表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作，常与一些标志性的时间状语连用，如 at this time tomorrow, by then, from 1:30 to 4:30 tomorrow 等。

Jane can't attend the meeting at 3 o'clock this afternoon because she **will be teaching** a class at that time.

简不能参加今天下午三点的会议了，因为她那个时间在授课。

(4)现在完成进行时

①表示从过去某一时间开始一直持续到现在的动作，常与延续性动词连用。这个动作可能刚停止，也可能继续下去。

She **has been writing** the letter since four o'clock in the afternoon.

从下午四点钟到现在，她一直在写信。

②表示在现在以前的这个阶段重复发生的事情。

He **has been calling** me since 10 minutes ago.

十分钟前他就一直在给我打电话。

③强调动作延续时间长或表达某些感情色彩。

We **have been expecting** to see you for a long time.

我们盼望见到你已经很久了。

名师点拨

某些不能用于进行时的动词同样也不能用于现在完成进行时，只能用于现在完成时，如 see, hear 等表示感官的动词；have, be 等表示状态的动词；like 等表示喜好的动词和 know 等表示思维活动的动词。

（三）完成时态

1. 构成

现在完成时由“have/has＋过去分词”构成；过去完成时由“had＋过去分词”构成；将来完成时由“shall/will＋have done”构成，第一人称用 shall/will，其他人称都用 will。

2. 用法

(1)现在完成时的用法

①表示发生在过去的动作或存在的状态到说话时刚刚完成或结束，且对现在仍有影响。常用的时间状语：already，just，yet，never，before，lately，recently，in the last/past few days/years，up to now，till now，so far 等。

He **has already received** three similar invitations this week.

本周，他已经收到了三个相似的邀请。

②表示从过去某时开始而延续至今（可能还要延续下去）的动作或状态。常用的时间状语：“since＋时间点”“for＋时间段”等。

—I remember you were a talented pianist at college. Can you play the piano for me?

——我记得你在大学时是一位极有才华的钢琴师。你能为我弹钢琴吗？

—Sorry，**I haven't played** the piano **for years**.

——抱歉，我好多年没有弹钢琴了。

③在条件和时间状语从句中，用现在完成时表示将来某时间前已完成的动作。

Will you come to my office when you **have finished** your work?

你完成工作后到我办公室来一下，好吗？

(2)过去完成时的用法

①表示在过去某一时间或某一动作之前完成的动作或存在的状态，即“过去的过去”。句中一般有明确表示“过去的过去”的时间状语（从句）。

When walking down the street，I came across David，whom I **hadn't seen** for years.

沿街走时，我偶然遇见了戴维，我们已经有好几年没见了。

②表示从过去某一时间开始，一直延续到另一过去时间的动作或状态，常用的时间状语：before，by then，by that time，by the end of，“by the time＋从句”等。

It took me a long time **before** I was able to fully appreciate what they **had done** for me.

很久以后我才能够完全领会到他们为我做的一切。

③表示“愿望、打算”的动词（如 hope，want，expect，think，mean，suppose，plan，intend 等）用于过去完成时表示过去本打算实现而未实现的希望或计划。

I **had intended** to call on you yesterday，but I had an unexpected visitor.

昨天我本来打算去看你，但是来了一位不速之客。

(3)将来完成时的用法

①表示动作或状态延续到将来某一段时间，常用延续性动词，多与 by，for，before 等时间状语连用。

We **shall have walked** a long way **before** we reach there.

在我们到达那里之前，我们还要走很长一段路。

②表示动作在将来某一段时间之前已经结束，但其影响却持续到那一时间，常用终止性动词。

You **will have reached** Shanghai **by this time tomorrow**.

明天这个时候你应该已经到达上海了。

③在时间和条件状语从句中要用现在完成时代替将来完成时。

I will give my opinion when I **have read** the book through.

我读完这本书后，会给出我的意见。

(4)常使用完成时的句型

①This/It/That is the first/second... time＋that sb. has/have done.

This/It/That was the first/second... time＋that sb. had done.

这是/那是某人第几次做某事。

②It/This is/was the＋最高级＋名词＋(that)定语从句(从句中的谓语用完成时)

③It is/has been＋一段时间＋since sb. did...

It was/had been＋一段时间＋since sb. had done sth.

自从……以来多久了。

④hardly/scarcely... when.../no sooner... than...

—……就……(主句用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时)

It was the third time (**that**) he **had made** the same mistake.

那是他第三次犯同样的错误了。

No sooner had I got home **than** the rain poured down.

我刚到家，大雨就倾盆而下。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. If it turns (turn) cold again，they'll dive back down. But they will come out again if it is warm.

2. He was looking (look) for a house when he saw an advertisement in a newspaper one day.

3. To the customers' satisfaction，teas of the same high quality are served (serve) in each shop every day.

4. After everything was done (do) and just after he left the barber's，he saw a man in the street with long dirty hair.

5. It's said that running regularly is (be) more effective at lengthening life than walking, cycling or swimming.
6. Confucius believed knives would remind people of killings and were (be) too violent (暴力的) for use at the table.
7. Ice Bucket Challenge (冰桶挑战) is a great success until now, and lots of money has been received (receive).
8. By next Thursday, they will have completed (complete) the construction (建造) of the new school.
9. One study in America found that students' grades improved (improve) a little after the school introduced uniforms.
10. —Sorry, I forgot (forget) to buy the book you need for you.
—Never mind. I will buy (buy) it myself after school.

Ⅱ. 根据提示补全句子

1. One day I saw an advertisement in a local newspaper. I rang up the company (打电话给公司), and I was given the job immediately.
2. Mother promised she would buy me a bike (她会给我买一辆自行车).
3. When summer comes (夏天到来时), they will invite their students to pick the fresh vegetables!
4. Last summer I went to London for a holiday. I spent just a week (只度过一周的时间) there.
5. This is the first time I have come to Chengdu (我来到成都) and I am truly impressed by the lifestyle of people here.
6. Hearing the strange noise, Tony was scared and began to cry (开始哭泣).

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十一)

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

regularly; theme; currently; be related to; observe; apologise; issue; memory; stress; event

1. Can you tell me how the Spring Festival is usually observed in this country?
2. We are currently advertising for a new sales manager.
3. You misunderstood your brother so I think you should apologise to him.
4. The theme of the book is the conflict (冲突) between love and duty.
5. For your health, do remember to take the medicine regularly three times a day.
6. In the future, pay increases will be related to productivity in our company.
7. As he aged, he found that his memory got worse and worse.
8. Too much time was spent discussing environmental issues.
9. It's advised that we organise more social events.
10. Only then did the mother realise the stress his son was under.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. Because she was under age, her parents were still responsible for her.
2. The library was built in memory of the scientist who has made significant contributions to society.
3. They are aiming to reduce (reduce) unemployment by 50% this year.
4. After supper my mother was observed to go (go) out, with a bag in her hand.
5. The team contained ten players whose ages ranged from 10 to 16.
6. The bus company made an apology to passengers for any inconvenience caused.
7. The fans seemed to be very calm. Actually they couldn't wait to see (see) their favourite player.
8. A study shows drinking coffee before exercise has a negative impact on/upon the heart.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. In the last few years, China has made great achievements in environmental protection.
过去几年,中国已经在环境保护方面取得了巨大的成就。
2. If my brother comes back from Beijing tomorrow, I will ask him to call you back.
如果我哥哥明天从北京回来,我会让他给你回电话。
3. This is the first time that we have seen a film in the cinema together as a family.
这是我们全家第一次一起在电影院看电影。
4. Sometimes I just relaxed under a tree or sat on the grass.
有时,我仅仅是在树下休息或是在草地上坐一坐。
5. I will not believe you unless I have seen it with my own eyes.
除非我亲眼看到过,否则我是不会相信你的。

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Researchers recently studied 3,000 middle school students. Among them were 618 teenagers with one parent who lived away from home for long periods of time because of work. The researchers wanted to know how the work of these "fly-in, fly-out" parents might influence the health of their children.

A higher percentage (比例) of teenagers who experienced the long work absence of a parent had emotional (情感的) or behavioural problems compared with those whose parents worked more traditional hours. This supports earlier research finding high percentages of emotional problems in teenagers who often returned to an empty house after school or whose parents were seldom at dinner.

Findings also suggest that parents don't have to be home all the time to be present in their children's lives, but it helps to be home at certain times. And the best parental presence for a teenager may sometimes be like a potted (盆栽的) plant. Many parents of teenagers have known this to be true and find ways to be present without trying to start a conversation. One friend of mine quietly does housework each evening in the sitting room where her teenagers watch TV. They enjoy one another's company (陪伴) without the need to talk.

In fact, many years of research suggest that children use their parents as a safe base from which to explore the world. Studies tell us that young children quietly follow their parents' movements from room to room, even while carrying on with their own activities. Perhaps our teens, like babies, feel most at ease when their parents are still around. They don't want to stay away from parents who allow them freedom.

A new school year is at hand, so as parents we could offer our teenagers a "potted flower" as a gift, whose quiet and steady (稳定的) presence will give them a great day.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了一项研究，该研究表明，父母不必一直待在家里陪伴孩子，但在特定时间待在家里会有所帮助。因此，作者鼓励父母给青少年提供安静和稳定的陪伴。

1. What did the study find about the 618 teens?

A. They had more dinners with their parents.

B. They were more prepared to help themselves.

C. They were more likely to have trouble with their feelings.

D. They showed more dislike for traditional working hours.

C　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"A higher percentage (比例) of teenagers who experienced the long work absence of a parent had emotional (情感的) or behavioural problems compared with those whose parents worked more traditional hours."可知，研究发现了这618名青少年更有可能在情感上有麻烦。故选C。

2. What is the author's attitude to her friend's practice?

A. She doubts it.

B. She supports it.

C. She is worried about it.

D. She cares little about it.

B　观点态度题。根据第三段中的"One friend of mine... without the need to talk."和第四段中的"Studies tell us... stay away from parents who allow them freedom."可推知，作者支持她朋友的做法，孩子们喜欢父母的陪伴。故选B。

3. What does earlier research say about young kids according to Paragraph 4?

A. They prefer to play with babies.

B. They want more freedom (自由) from parents.

C. They pay attention to parents' behaviour.

D. They show more interest in new activities.

C　细节理解题。根据第四段中的"In fact, many years of research... even while carrying on with their own activities."可知，关于小孩子的早期研究表明了他们关注父母的行为。故选C。

4. What is the best title for the text?

A. Teens Want Potted Plant Parents

B. Your Kids Still Need Conversation

C. Quiet Families Raise Healthier Teenagers

D. Parents Know Little about Today's Teenagers

A　标题归纳题。根据第二段中的"A higher percentage... those whose parents worked more traditional hours."和第三段中的"Findings... a potted (盆栽的) plant."，并结合其他内容可知，父母不必一直待在家里陪伴孩子，但在特定的时间待在家里会有所帮助。由此可知，A选项"青少年想要盆栽式的父母"最适合作为文章标题。故选A。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Grasp the structure and the main idea of the text.
2. Summarise the characteristics of the feature stories.
3. Develop an awareness of the value of brotherly love.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I always have some **extra** cash with me for emergencies. 额外的，另外的
2. She is the first Chinese player to win the gold **medal** at the Olympic Games. 奖牌，勋章
3. Look at the students who are running on the **track**. 跑道
4. The **media** play a major role in influencing people's opinions. 新闻媒体，传媒
5. She was good at physics **despite** the fact that she found it boring. 尽管
6. She was **disqualified** after failing a drug test. (因犯规而)取消……的资格
7. He has his own **individual** method of organising his work. 独特的，与众不同的
8. The newspaper is running a long **feature** on the football match. (报纸或杂志的)特写
9. His **style** of painting has been imitated (模仿) by other artists. 风格
10. A **summary** is a short statement that gives the main information about something, without giving all the details. 总结，概要
11. The two teams finished level on points at the end of the **series**. 系列比赛
12. There was a strained atmosphere (紧张的气氛) **throughout** the meeting. 在整个期间，自始至终

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
admire *v*. 钦佩，赞美，羡慕	admiration *n*. 钦佩，赞美，羡慕
	admirable *adj*. 可钦佩的，值得赞赏的，令人羡慕的
judge *v*. 认为，判断	judgement *n*. 判决；判断力；评价

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
settle *v*. 和解，结束(争论)	settler *n*. 移民；殖民者
	settled *adj*. 稳定的，固定的；定居的
detail *n*. 细节，细微之处	detailed *adj*. 详细的；细致的；精细的
contain *v*. 包含，含有	container *n*. 容器，集装箱，货柜
powerful *adj*. 强有力的，有影响(感染)力的	power *n*. 力量；权力
	powerfully *adv*. 有力地；强大地；强烈地
athlete *n*. 运动员，田径运动员	athletic *adj*. 运动的
	athletics *n*. 体育运动

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. settle for 勉强接受，将就
2. in the lead 领先
3. now and then 偶尔，有时
4. leave... behind 把……剩下，把……落下
5. at that moment 在那时
6. no longer 不再
7. throw away 扔掉
8. end up doing sth. 以做某事结束
9. meet up (朋友)碰头，相聚
10. pick up 捡起；(开车)接人；偶然学会；继续；振作精神

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：with 复合结构
   With just 700 metres to go, Alistair Brownlee was in third place and his younger brother, Jonny, was in the lead.

离终点只有700米了，阿利斯泰尔·布朗利名列第三，他的弟弟乔尼领先。

2. 句型公式：过去分词短语作状语
Watched by millions, the ending to the race has divided opinions: should the brothers have been disqualified or highly praised for their actions?
数百万人观看了这场比赛，对于比赛的结果也是众说纷纭：兄弟二人是应该因他们的行为被取消比赛资格，还是应该受到高度赞扬？

3. 句型公式：主语＋be＋*adj.*＋动词不定式
But for Alistair, his decision was easy to explain...
但对于阿利斯泰尔来说，他的决定很容易解释……

4. 句型公式：现在分词短语作定语
At that moment, he was no longer an athlete aiming for a medal—he was just a brother.
在那一刻，他不再是一名想赢得奖牌的运动员——他只是一位兄长。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text

JUST A BROTHER

- Setting
  - The final part of the 2016 World Triathlon Series in 1. Mexico.
- Characters
  - Alistair Brownlee and his younger brother, Jonny.
- Plot
  - Alistair Brownlee was in 2. third place and Jonny was in the lead. Jonny 3. fell onto the track. Alistair helped his brother.

○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What can we infer from the text?
A. Alistair was in the lead when his brother was about to fall.
B. Alistair was younger than his brother.
C. Alistair may have won the race.
D. Alistair thought what he did was wrong.

2. Why does Alistair think that having a brother is "an advantage"?
A. He can't leave his brother.
B. He likes arguing with his brother.
C. His brother sets him a good example to learn from.
D. His brother can bring him positive force in everything.

3. From Alistair's explanation for his decision, what can we know?
A. Alistair is afraid of his mother.
B. Alistair really treats himself as a brother.
C. Alistair's mother loves his brother more than him.
D. Alistair doesn't like others' opinions on his actions.

4. What does the text mainly tell us?
A. People's different opinions about the Brownlee brothers.
B. Love and competition are equally important in the match.
C. The value of brotherly love.
D. Love is precious.

答案：1～4 CDBC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Alistair pushed himself towards the finish line in the burning heat, but as he came round the corner, he saw his brother about to fall onto the track.
[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but前的第一个分句为简单句；but后的第二个分句为主从复合句，as he came round the corner为as引导的时间状语从句。
[尝试翻译]阿利斯泰尔在酷热中奋力奔向终点。但就在他转过弯道时，却看到弟弟即将摔倒在跑道上。

2. Alistair says that they encourage each other as much as they can when they train.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。主句为主谓宾结构，that 引导宾语从句；when 引导时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]阿利斯泰尔称，他们在训练时尽可能互相鼓励。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following question

How many opinions were there when the match ended and what are they?

Two divided opinions. One is that the brothers should be disqualified, and the other is that the brothers should be highly praised.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. admire *v*. 钦佩，赞美，羡慕

[归纳拓展]

(1)admire sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事羡慕/钦佩某人

(2)admiration *n*. 钦佩，赞美，羡慕

have/express admiration for 对……/表达对……的钦佩

(3)admirable *adj*. 可钦佩的，值得赞赏的，令人羡慕的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①While getting along with others, I will admire them for their outstanding performance at work.

②While still at primary school, he had already shown admirable (admire) acting talent.

③I'd like to express my admiration (admire) for the courage and uncomplaining spirit of the firefighters.

(2)写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动分享)接触大自然不仅激发了我的创造力，也让我**欣赏了风景**。

Being exposed to nature not only sparked my creativity but also made me admire scenery.

2. judge *v*. 认为，判断 *n*. 裁判员，评委；法官

[归纳拓展]

(1)judge... from/by... 从……来判断……

as far as I can judge 据我判断；我认为

(2)judging by/from 从……来看；根据……判断(在句中作状语)

(3)judgement *n*. 判决；判断力；评价

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①As the old saying goes, "You can't judge a book by its cover."

②Judging (judge) from the number of cars, he thought there were not many people in the club yet.

③I respect his judgment (judge) and I'll follow any advice he gives me.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)**我认为**，这次活动非常有意义。

As far as I can judge, the programme was very meaningful.

3. settle *v*. 和解，结束(争论)；解决；定居

[归纳拓展]

(1)settle down 定居，安顿下来；平静下来；集中精力做；开始认真做

settle on 选择；选定

settle for 勉强接受，将就

(2)settler *n*. 移民；定居者；殖民者

(3)settlement *n*. (解决纷争的)协议；解决；处理；(关于钱财转让的)协议(书)

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷) Much is still to be settled (settle), but here are some of the solutions to get us going green.

②I couldn't find the exact shoes I wanted, so I settled for a similar pair.

③In 1916, two girls of wealthy families travelled to a settlement (settle) in the Rocky Mountains to teach in a one-room schoolhouse.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之动作链)他们冲下车，搭起帐篷，**舒适地坐在草地上**，欣赏着周围美妙的景色。

They dashed out of the car, put up the tent and settled down on the grass, enjoying the surrounding breathtaking sights.

4. 主语＋be＋*adj*.＋动词不定式

[教材原文]But for Alistair, **his decision was easy to explain**: "Mum wouldn't have been happy if I'd left Jonny behind."

但对于阿利斯泰尔来说，他的决定很容易解释：

“如果我把乔尼留下，妈妈肯定会不高兴的。”

[句式分析]本句中 his decision was easy to explain 为“主语＋be＋*adj.*＋动词不定式”结构。

[归纳拓展]

(1)常用于该句型的形容词多为表示主语性质、特征的词，如 hard，difficult，pleasant，easy，comfortable，interesting 等；

(2)动词不定式和主语在逻辑上为动宾关系，不定式用主动形式表示被动意义；当不定式中的动词为不及物动词时，要加上适当的介词；

(3)不定式有时会带上自己的逻辑主语，并由 for 引出；

(4)表示喜、怒、哀、乐等情感的形容词，后跟不定式表原因，不可用不定式的主动形式表示被动意义。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·全国一卷) Liquid ammonia is easy to keep (keep) and transport, but it is hard to ignite (点燃) and requires an engine redesign.

②The problem looks rather easy, but in fact it is very hard to deal with.

③Among the four seasons in a year, summer is my favourite. The morning air is so good to breathe (breathe).

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之主旨升华)即使这个问题**很难解决**，我也没有放弃，因为我坚信“有志者，事竟成”。

Even though the problem was difficult to solve, I didn't give it up because I firmly believed that “Where there is a will, there is a way”.

多义词汇 专练

1. settle

A. *v.* 定居　B. *v.* 解决(纠纷)　C. *v.* (最终)决定，确定　D. *v.* (使)安静下来，(使)平静下来　E. *v.* (鸟等)降落

①With the problem **settled**, the two companies decided to cooperate with each other. B

②Please go upstairs and **settle** the children down; they are restless and won't sleep. D

③When I looked out of the window, I saw a beautiful butterfly **settle** on a flower. E

④Having stayed in several cities, he finally decided to **settle** down in Hangzhou. A

⑤Be patient! Our plan will be **settled** at the end of this week. C

2. When talking about his son, the father could hardly **contain** his pride in him. A

A. *v.* 抑制，控制　B. *v.* 包含　C. *v.* 容纳

Unit 3 课后素养评价（十二）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. They produced two reports, neither of which contained (包含) any useful suggestions.

2. During your working day what kind of work might you typically (通常) do?

3. The first paragraph should give a brief summary (总结) of the paper.

4. His speech is so powerful (强有力的) that all the people present are deeply moved.

5. When he lost his job, his entire (全部的) world was turned upside down.

6. Obviously (显而易见地) the boy is interested in music as well as in painting.

7. For further details (细节) about the course, please call the following number.

8. It will take a few more years to judge (判断) the impact of these ideas.

9. I don't agree with her, but I admire (钦佩) her for sticking to her principles.

10. If you want to improve your situation, you must adopt a positive (积极的) attitude.

11. The second part introduces the individual (独特的)

feature of his music.

12. Despite（尽管）her problems, she carried on working as usual.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. He refused to settle for anything that was second best.

2. All those who knew him admired him for his work.

3. Judging only by/from teaching quality, the school is the best one in our city.

4. Her teaching experience gave her a big advantage over the other applicants for the job.

5. Not knowing when we should meet, I called our teacher for information in detail.

6. In summary, this was a disappointing performance.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

a series of; settle for; now and then; end up; in the lead

1. If he carries on driving like that, he'll end up in prison.

2. Now that I am in the lead, I believe I can win this race!

3. The government has taken a series of measures to improve the air quality.

4. The road is so narrow that there are bound to be traffic jams now and then.

5. He had to settle for a low-paid job because he needed a job very much.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. Even though/if we completely differ from each other in character, we are still great friends.
虽然我们在性格上完全不同，但是我们仍然是很要好的朋友。

2. We cannot wait to see them!
我们迫不及待地想要见到他们！

3. I was about to hand in the paper when I found another mistake and then corrected it carefully.
我正要交卷，这时我发现了又一处错误，然后仔细地改正了它。

4. We'd better leave things as they are until the police arrive.
在警察到来之前，我们最好什么都别动。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

On Friday evening, Grandfather and Father were playing chess in the living room **1.** when Son entered. He nervously **2.** approached (approach) the table and told Father that he decided not to go to university but to focus **3.** on/upon music and become a **4.** professional (profession) singer. What he said shocked Father because he expected Son to be **5.** a lawyer. In his opinion, lawyers were respected by people while singing was not a good job. But Son thought he was not **6.** interested (interest) in law. So Father argued with Son and blamed Son, with his voice **7.** raised (raise). It was Grandfather that calmed them down and gave his advice—going to university and **8.** playing (play) music at the same time. It meant Son would have two **9.** options (option) for his future. **10.** Finally (final), Son took his advice.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，昨天你因为不耐烦和家人发生了争吵，事后感到非常后悔。请你给家人写一封道歉信，表达你的歉意，并说明你会如何改变。内容包括：

1. 为自己的冲动道歉；
2. 解释自己当时的想法；
3. 表达你对家人的爱与承诺。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；
2. 可以适当增加细节，使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Mum and Dad,

I'm writing to sincerely say sorry for losing my temper yesterday. I was extremely stressed about my heavy homework and studies, so I spoke to you impatiently, which hurt you a lot.

After calming down, I realised how wrong I was. You always care about me, and I shouldn't have let my bad mood affect you. I promise to control my temper and communicate with you patiently from now on.

I love you both so much.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I live in a city where jobs are difficult to get and if you want to find a well-paid job, it will be even harder. Therefore, it is not surprising for you to see many people in our city walk a long way because they can't even afford an old used car.

It was a cold windy day. I saw one of these people who often have to walk from and to work every day, when I was driving after work. A middle-aged man wearing only a thin overcoat was walking down the road and trying to ask for a ride from the passing cars. Unluckily, there was no driver willing to stop their cars. When I saw two cars in front of me pass him by, I wanted to do the same. But the sight of that poor man remained in my mind for quite a moment. I felt as if a big hand was dragging me and forcing me not to leave. Finally I drew back and gave him a ride.

As I drove along, we had a conversation, during which he told me something about himself and his family. I learnt that the man was doing everything he could to support his family using the limited salary from several part-time jobs. As you could imagine, every coin he earned was going to be used to pay for the house and food.

It was a long drive before we got to his home. All the way, I could feel his hardship and tiredness. But as we came close to the house where he was living, I saw his tired eyes grow bright and the whole body was lit up. His lovely girl was playing in the front yard. Seeing her father was out of the car, she ran to him as quickly as possible, reaching out her two small hands. He held the girl with his two strong hands, laughing and kissing her cheeks. I was lost in that happy moment. I smiled, said goodbye to them, wished them the future happiness and then drove off.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

On my way home, something came into my mind. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Half an hour later, I got home. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

On my way home, something came into my mind. I thought of my lovely daughter and my happy family. Usually, as a manager of a small firm, I was so busy that I had broken many promises to have dinner with my family. Even I had never seen my honey girl for ten days. Because every night when I got home, she had fallen asleep and the next morning when I left, she was still in her dream. I felt quite sorry for everything I had done before.

Half an hour later, I got home. My daughter was shocked to see me go home so early. But quickly a big smile spread on her face. She put down her toy, flew to me and hugged me tightly. "Dad, am I dreaming?" she asked. "Of course not." I told her what had happened today and promised to spend more time with her and her mum as they are the most valuable treasures in the world to me.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——有关家庭回忆的记叙文

○写作指导

本单元的写作任务是写一篇有关家庭回忆的记叙文。该类作文以叙述事件为主，通过完整的故事情节和生动形象的语言，使读者在享受故事情节的同时有所感悟。

在写叙事性记叙文时要注意以下几个方面：

1. 四定：定内容——确定叙述要点；定关键词——确定所用词、词组；定人称——第一人称还是第三人称；定时态——一般过去时、一般现在时还是一般将来时。
2. 三步骤：(1)开头(the beginning)——交代必要的背景，如时间、地点、人物等。(2)主体(the body)——交代故事情节(事情的主体)，如事件的发生、发展和前因后果(可以使用表示时间或空间的连接词，使文章连贯，如 at first; then; few minutes later 等)。(3)结尾(the ending)——事情的结果或感想、愿望等。所表达的感想或愿望应与所记叙的内容有关系，起到扣题或点题作用，使文章结构紧凑。好的结尾往往不仅有完美的结局，还能引人深思。
3. 叙述方式：可根据不同情况采用顺叙、倒叙或插叙等方式。

○典题示例

上周五是你的生日，父亲送你一份特殊的生日礼物。请你以“Father's Gift for My Birthday”为题，用英语讲述这个故事。要点如下：

1. 上周五早晨，父亲带我去了他家乡的一所乡村学校；
2. 唯一的教室里有 21 个学生；
3. 虽然那里的条件有限，但学生学习很努力；
4. 你的感想：原来这就是父亲送给我的特殊的生日礼物……

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 除要求的内容外，可酌情自由发挥。

Father's Gift for My Birthday

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 交代事件的缘由 2. 具体描述事件的经过 3. 提出自己的感想或态度

Step 2：要点补全

①Last Friday morning, my father brought me to a village school（带我去了一所乡村学校）in his hometown.

②The school had just one classroom（仅仅一间教室）.

③There were only 21 students and they were listening to the teacher carefully（正专心地听老师讲课）.

④Although their study conditions were limited, all the students studied very hard（学习很用功）.

⑤I was deeply struck by（被……深深地打动了）their stories.

⑥I did not realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me（我父亲送给我的特殊的生日礼物）until then.

Step 3：句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句③升级为含有定语从句的句子

There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher carefully.

②将 Step 2 中句⑥升级为 not until 置于句首引起的部分倒装句

Not until then did I realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me.

Step 4：连句成篇

Father's Gift for My Birthday

My birthday of this year fell on last Friday. My father gave me a special gift.

Last Friday morning, my father brought me to

a village school in his hometown. The school had just one classroom. There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher carefully. Although their study conditions were limited, all the students studied very hard.

I was deeply struck by their stories. I should learn from their persistence and efforts. Not until then did I realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me.

○学以致用

假设你是李华，请你用英语谈一谈自己和家人庆祝春节的经过。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 开头已给出，但不计入总词数。

参考词汇：对联 couplet；春节联欢晚会 the Spring Festival Gala

I like the Spring Festival _____

_____

【参考范文】

I like the Spring Festival because all the family members will get together and have fun with each other.

Several days before the Spring Festival, we had a thorough cleaning of our house and put up new couplets on our doors, hoping for good luck in the coming year. Then we went shopping and bought a lot of food. On the eve of the Spring Festival, all my family had a big feast together and then watched the Spring Festival Gala, chatting and laughing. We can receive lucky money from our parents and the elders.

In the following days, we went to visit our neighbours and relatives and gave them our best wishes.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章，完成任务。

Jeff and I had many conversations during the year, but I will always remember the time he told me about his family. His father, a successful physician, was cold and strict according to Jeff. His father had even paved the way for Jeff to attend the same college from which he had graduated.

Jeff was twenty-seven and a successful business planner at a company—without a degree. His passion was skiing. When he graduated from high school, he decided to decline his father's offer and, instead, to work with a ski patrol (滑雪巡逻队). With pain in his eyes, Jeff told me he still remembered the day when he told his father he was going to give up college and take a job at a ski resort.

Hearing Jeff's decision, his father stood staring into the distance. Then came the words that still echoed in Jeff's mind: "No son of mine is going to work with a ski patrol and does not attend college. I should have known you'd never amount to anything!" The two had not spoken since that conversation.

Later, he was back in the area near where he grew up and he certainly did not want his father to know he was attending college. He was doing this for himself, not for his father. He said it over and over again. Jeff's sister had always remained supportive of Jeff's decisions. She stayed in contact with their father, but Jeff had made her promise that she would not share any information about his life with him.

The day when the graduation ceremony came, I walked around talking to people before it started. I noticed a man with a confused expression.

"Excuse me," he said as he politely approached me. "What is happening here today?"

"It's graduation day," I replied, smiling. "Well, that's odd," he said. "My daughter asked me to meet her at this address." His eyes sparkled and he smiled. "Maybe she completed her associate's degree and wanted to surprise me!" I helped him find a seat.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

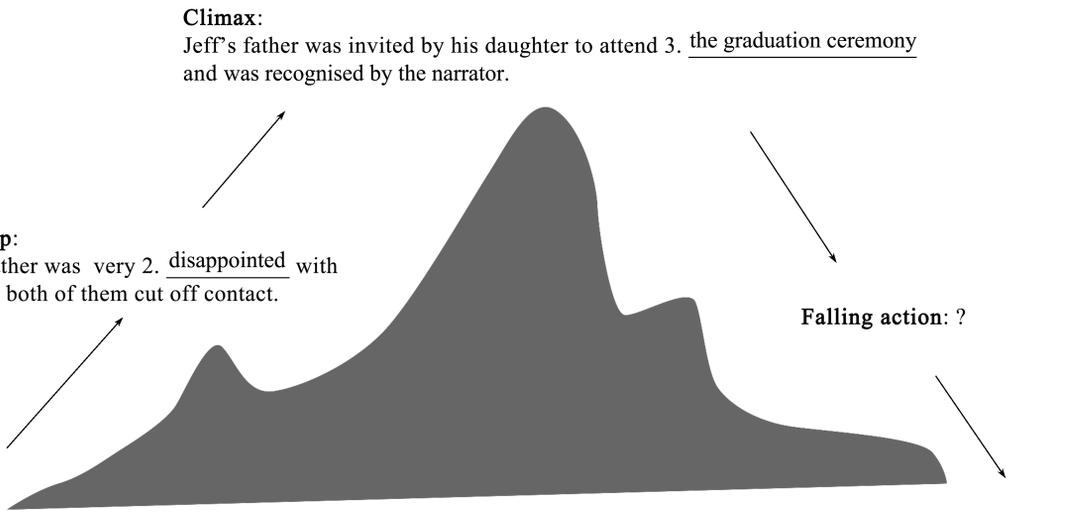
As I left him, he said, "Thank you. By the way, my name's Holstrom." _____

_____

_____

Jeff was the last person to cross the stage. _____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： As I left him, he said, "Thank you. By the way, my name's Holstrom." _____	**1.** What was my reaction when hearing the name? I felt very surprised or even shocked. **2.** What would I do, think or feel? I couldn't believe it and wanted to prove whether it was true or not. **3.** Would I speak out the truth to the man? I would not tell him the truth.
Paragraph 2： Jeff was the last person to cross the stage. _____	**1.** How did Jeff restore good relationship with his father? Jeff greeted his father with a smile. **2.** At the sight of his father, what would Jeff do, think or feel? Jeff was very happy to see his father and that was unexpected for him. **3.** What did he do next? Jeff was eager to go back home with his father.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. The name ringing in my mind, I froze on the spot（僵在原地）.

2. Jeff Holstrom! Could this be the cold, strict father who demanded his son attend college（上大学）or never enter his home again?

3. Curiosity and doubt bubbling up, I turned around to get a glimpse of（瞥一眼）Mr Holstrom, attempting to find some facial resemblances.

4. Beaming and scanning, Mr Holstrom seemed to be looking for his daughter（正在找他的女儿）.

5. Speeches given, the dean began to read the names of the graduates（读毕业生的名字）, inviting them onto

the stage one by one（一个接一个）to receive their diplomas.

6. Having received his diploma, he turned towards the audience（转向观众席）, radiant with joy.

7. Suddenly, a lone figure popped into his eyes（映入他的眼帘）—Mr Holstrom.

8. I was not sure how Jeff spotted him in the crowd（在人群中发现他）, but I could tell their eyes met.

9. Mr Holstrom, gazing at（凝望）Jeff thoughtfully for a few seconds, opened his arms（张开双臂）as if to embrace the air around him.

10. For a moment time seemed to stand still（似乎静止了）.

11. Jeff came down, smiling with tears in eyes（含泪微笑着）.

12. "My father is here," he whispered to me（低声对我说）. "I think I'm going home."

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

【参考范文】

As I left him, he said, "Thank you. By the way, my name's Holstrom." The name ringing in my mind, I froze on the spot. Jeff Holstrom! Could this be the cold, strict father who demanded his son attend college or never enter his home again? Curiosity and doubt bubbling up, I turned around to get a glimpse of Mr Holstrom, attempting to find some facial resemblances. Beaming and scanning, Mr Holstrom seemed to be looking for his daughter. Speeches given, the dean began to read the names of the graduates, inviting them onto the stage one by one to receive their diplomas.

Jeff was the last person to cross the stage. Having received his diploma, he turned around and faced the audience, radiant with joy. Suddenly, a lone figure popped into his eyes—Mr Holstrom. I was not sure how Jeff spotted him in the crowd, but I could tell their eyes met. Mr Holstrom, gazing at Jeff thoughtfully for a few seconds, opened his arms as if to embrace the air around him. For a moment time seemed to stand still. Jeff came down, smiling with tears in eyes. "My father is here," he whispered to me. "I think I'm going home."

单元质量评估(三)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Now Enjoy Brilliant College
Courses in Your Home or Car

Scientific Secrets for a Powerful Memory

Why does our memory fail us? And how can you fix it? In Scientific Secrets for a Powerful Memory, you'll explore research on how memory functions—and then apply these findings to help you make better use of your memory abilities. Tap into scientifically proven strategies to process information more effectively and increase your powers of memory.

Course No.1965

6 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

~~DVD 99.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars

How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication

Successful conversations help you advance professionally and make, maintain, and deepen relationships. In just six lectures, How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication will teach you key strategies that can surely improve your ability to speak with anyone from strangers to your manager.

Course No.9382

6 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

~~DVD 99.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars

~~CD 94.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars

The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the Greatest Speeches in History

In The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the Greatest Speeches in History, Professor Hale teaches you how to be a more effective public speaker. He shows time-tested techniques and strategies used by history's greatest public speakers—Lincoln, Gandhi, and many others!

Course No.2031

12 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

~~DVD 199.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars

~~CD 134.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars

The Secrets of Mental Maths

In The Secrets of Mental Maths, award-winning Professor Benjamin teaches you the basic strategies of mental mathematics. This powerful ability to perform mental calculations will give you an edge in business, at school, at work or anywhere else that you come across maths.

Course No.1406

12 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

~~DVD 199.95 dollar~~s NOW 9.95 dollars

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是在家里或车里能读的大学课程。

1. What do Course No. 9382 and Course No. 2031 have in common?

A. They are the cheapest courses of all.

B. Their readers have the same purpose.

C. They both teach some strategies for speaking.

D. They share the same discount for every lecture.

C 细节理解题。根据 **How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication** 部分中的"In just six lectures, How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication will teach you key strategies that can surely improve your ability to speak with anyone from strangers to your manager.""Course No.9382"和 **The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the Greatest Speeches in History** 部分中的"In The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the Greatest Speeches in History, Professor Hale teaches you how to be a more effective public speaker.""Course No.2031"可知,课程编号 9382 和课程编号 2031 的共同之处是它们都教一些说话的策略。故选 C。

2. How much can you save if you buy Course No. 1965 and Course No.1406?

A. 180 dollars. B. 250 dollars.

C. 280 dollars. D. 300 dollars.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Scientific Secrets for a Powerful Memory** 部分中的"~~DVD 99.95 dollars~~

NOW 9.95 dollars""Course No.1965"和 **The Secrets of Mental Maths** 部分中的"~~DVD 199.95 dollars~~ NOW 9.95 dollars""Course No.1406"可知，如果你购买课程编号为 1965 和课程编号为 1406 的课程，可以节省的钱是"99.95－9.95＝90"再加上"199.95－9.95＝190"，也就是 90＋190＝280 美元。故选 C。

3. Who may be the intended readers of this advertisement?

A. The public.　　B. The students.

C. The officers.　　D. The educators.

A　推理判断题。根据标题"**Now Enjoy Brilliant College Courses in Your Home or Car**"和最后一个课程中的"This powerful ability to perform mental calculations will give you an edge in business, at school, at work or anywhere else that you come across maths."可知，本文主要介绍的是在家里或车里能读的大学课程，且课程的对象可能是从事商业，在学校读书，或者有工作的人，也就是说这些课程的对象是普通的公众。因此，这则广告的对象可能是公众。故选 A。

B

Recently, I took him for a classic English afternoon tea at the hotel. The thought of showing him a piece of authentic British life excited me for weeks, so when we finally sat down in the elegant tearoom, with the sound of a pianist in the background, I was thrilled.

I looked at the shiny silver tea stand topped with finely cut sandwiches, freshly baked scones (烤饼), and mouthwatering pastries and teacakes. I was ready to dig in. Then I looked at Dad and a trace of nervousness flashed across his face. He carefully copied what I ate and how to use the knife and fork, and from time to time anxiously looked up at the waiter in his bow tie who was serving our table.

When we got to the scones, Dad took a big bite and remarked how delicious it was. He asked me to explain how the British eat scones, so I supplied him with details about the custom of breaking scones into small pieces, spreading cream and strawberry jam on top, before consuming each piece in one mouthful.

"Oh, why did you not tell me earlier?" Dad's face turned red in embarrassment, suddenly realising his mistake. For the rest of the scones session, he busied himself with neatly spreading the cream and jam like an obedient (听话的) child.

Suddenly, I felt a complex mixture of happiness, sadness and loneliness. Growing up, Dad was my hero, my mountain. I still remember flying into his arms after school at the kindergarten gate. Through the sound of his voice, I learned to feel and understand the world.

After moving to London alone, I have learned to achieve academic grades, found a job, and started a new life all by myself. But I did not fully realise how much I had grown up, until I saw how dependent Dad was on me in London. Although he is still a mountain in my heart, I realised I have built a strong mountain of my own in the meantime. And by being away from Dad's protective wings I have come to understand more of myself and to find my own place in the world.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者带父亲去喝经典的英式下午茶，这一经历让作者意识到自己可以让父亲依靠，也让作者深刻地体会到自己与父亲在角色上的转变。

4. Why did the author take her father for a classic English afternoon tea?

A. The food in the restaurant was delicious.

B. She wanted her father to experience real British life.

C. Her father was deeply attracted by the elegant tearoom.

D. She intended to introduce an excellent restaurant to her father.

B　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"The thought of showing him a piece of authentic British life excited me for weeks, so when we finally sat down in the elegant tearoom..."可知，作者带她父亲去喝经典的英式下午茶是因为她想让父亲体验一下真正的英国生活。故选 B。

5. Which of the following can best describe the author's father when eating scones?

A. Disappointed and painful.

B. Embarrassed and desperate.

C. Nervous and cautious.

D. Displeased and helpless.

C　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Then I looked

at Dad and a trace of nervousness flashed across his face. He carefully copied what I ate and how to use the knife and fork, and from time to time anxiously looked up at the waiter in his bow tie who was serving our table."可知,作者的父亲在吃烤饼时紧张且拘谨。故选C。

6. What did the author realise after the experience?

A. She had a happy childhood.

B. She had achieved a lot in the academic area.

C. Her father was not her mountain any more.

D. She should be the person for her father to rely on.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"But I did not fully realise how much I had grown up, until I saw how dependent Dad was on me in London."可知,作者在经历之后意识到她应该是她父亲可以依靠的人。故选D。

7. What can we learn from the passage?

A. An eating experience changed a father.

B. Eating with Dad spoiled their relationship.

C. The dining environment was important for a restaurant.

D. The eating experience indicated their changed roles.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段并结合文章主要内容可知,作者带父亲去喝经典的英式下午茶,这一经历让作者意识到自己可以让父亲依靠,也让作者深刻地体会到自己与父亲在角色上的转变。由此可知,这段用餐的经历表明了他们角色的改变。故选D。

C

Holidays are often described as picture-perfect moments: families happily united around a table filled with seasonal food favourites against a perfect background. For many parents, making efforts to meet such unrealistic expectations can destroy their self-worth gradually. In the real world, parents are juggling (同时兼顾) more activities from work to home. It's all too easy to fall into survival parenting, one way where the focus is on simply getting through the day. These holidays can feel like anything but a holiday.

US Surgeon General Dr Vivek Murthy released a warning in August 2024 calling for a rapid recovery of parental well-being. Murthy along with scientists and parents sees that the modern-day stress of parenting is seriously affecting the physical and mental health of caregivers. He states his deep worries about reports that most days, nearly half of all parents feel seriously stressed.

Data from a 2022 Household Pulse Survey found that most of parents—including 35% with children under 5 and 54% with children between 5 and 11—had no formal child care support. This is surely caused, in part, by two facts: the rising costs for child care and fewer choices for child's day care.

The research shows that focusing only on getting through the day with your kids is connected to more stress and harsher (严苛的) parenting behaviours. When a mum or dad is in survival mode, it's possible for them to shout requests and criticise their children's behaviour, instead of thinking through the impacts of these behaviours. Stressed-out parents are quicker to criticise little things that get in the way of reaching immediate goals, such as spilling (洒出) flour on the floor. And they are slower to notice and admit their child's strengths, such as their interest in helping in the kitchen.

However, bringing joy back to parenting during holidays—and any time of the year—is more direct than the "perfect" meal plans on social platforms. The secret to getting away from the surviving the moment is to refocus on the future you want to create.

【语篇解读】文章主要指出节假日父母面临的育儿压力,分析其成因与影响,还提及找回育儿幸福感的关键思路。

8. What is the parents' real situation during the holidays according to the passage?

A. They fight hard through great stress.

B. They improve their parenting mode for kids.

C. They effortlessly reunite with a large family.

D. They deal with work-from-home tasks easily.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"In the real world, parents are juggling (同时兼顾) more activities from work to home. It's all too easy to fall into survival parenting, one way where the focus is on simply getting through the day. These holidays can feel like anything but a holiday."可知,假期里父母的真实状况是顶着巨大压力艰难地撑过每一天。故选A。

9. What's the purpose of Paragraph 3?

A. To tell readers the fact of rising costs.

B. To showcase the parents' stress.

C. To analyse causes of parents' stress.

D. To explain how to get the data.

C 写作意图题。根据第三段的内容可知，第三段的目的是分析父母产生育儿压力的部分原因。故选C。

10. What will most likely be discussed after the last paragraph?

A. Ways to achieve long-term family goals.

B. Practical steps to bring back parenting joy.

C. Several perfect meal plans for good parents.

D. The kind of future for parents to build for families.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知，最后一段提出了找回育儿幸福感的核心方向，接下来最有可能讨论的是找回育儿幸福感的具体可行方法。故选B。

11. What is the most suitable title for the text?

A. Holiday Daycare Crisis: A Hidden Threat to Parents

B. Harsh Holiday Parenting: Stress Shaping Child Behaviour

C. Behind Parental Burnout: Holidays Hurting Modern Families

D. Beyond Holiday Survival Mode: Rebuilding Parenting Well-being

D 标题归纳题。通读全文，文章先描述父母在假期陷入生存式育儿、承受巨大压力的现状，再分析其压力成因和生存式育儿的负面影响，最后提出要摆脱这种生存模式、找回育儿幸福感的观点和核心思路。全文围绕走出生存式育儿模式、重建育儿幸福感展开，由此可知，D项可以概括文章主题，最适合作为本文标题。故选D。

D

When my son was little, he liked to run in our driveway until he fell. He would then turn to me to see if he was hurt. If my face betrayed worry or concern, he would cry. If I stayed calm, he would brush himself off and get back to running. Here was this human being who was counting on me to make sense of the world—not just how to tie his shoes or recite the ABCs, but how to feel.

Years later, in middle school, this lesson returned. One night, my son told me about a classmate who had been unkind to him. My first reaction was to rush to fix it—email the parents, call the school, demand action. But instead of reacting, I paused. "That sounds hard. What did you do?"

"I decided not to hang out with him for a while," my son replied. "I am going to try playing soccer at lunch instead." "That's a great solution," I said, and he went back to his homework.

These ordinary parenting moments taught me an important truth: sometimes, the best thing a parent can do is doing nothing at all. Over 30 years in schools, too often I've watched parents overreacting, robbing their kids of the confidence that comes from struggling, and exhausting themselves in the process. Most Americans now believe that young people will not be better off than their parents. They see greater competition for fewer resources—be it college admissions, jobs, or housing. However, a young person who gets used to having a parent intervene on his behalf begins to believe that he's not capable of acting on his own, feeling both anxiety and dependence.

I want to make a case for the Lighthouse Parent, a term that the educator has used. A lighthouse parent stands as a steady, reliable guide, providing safety and understanding without controlling every aspect of their child's journey, like a lighthouse that helps sailors avoid crashing into rocks. The key is learning when to step back and enable them to find their own way.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。作者通过自身育儿经历，提出了"灯塔式父母"的教育理念——父母应成为孩子可靠的引导者，而非过度干预孩子的成长，以此培养孩子的独立性。

12. What does the author want to tell with the example of his child falling?

A. Children should be prevented from taking risks.

B. Parents can feel exactly what their children feel.

C. Parents' reaction influences children's mental state.

D. Children would cry regardless of parental guidance.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“If my face betrayed worry or concern, he would cry. If I stayed calm, he would brush himself off and get back to running.”可知，孩子的反应会随作者的情绪而变化，这说明父母的反应会影响孩子的心理状态。故选C。

13. What does the underlined word “intervene” in Paragraph 4 probably mean?

A. Step in.

B. Move on.

C. Speak up.

D. Take off.

A 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“Over 30 years in schools, too often I've watched parents overreacting, robbing their kids of the confidence that comes from struggling, and exhausting themselves in the process.”及“However, a young person who gets used to having a parent intervene on his behalf begins to believe that he's not capable of acting on his own, feeling both anxiety and dependence.”可知，画线词intervene指父母介入、干预孩子的问题。故选A。

14. What kind of parent is the author?

A. Distant.

B. Traditional.

C. Supportive.

D. Overprotective.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“But instead of reacting, I paused. ‘That sounds hard. What did you do?’”可知，作者没有急于干预，而是引导儿子自己解决问题，是一位懂得引导、给予孩子支持的家长。故选C。

15. What would lighthouse parents do when children are anxious about a school presentation?

A. Complete the task for the child.

B. Contact and criticise the teacher.

C. Ask the child to report every step.

D. Guide the child while letting them act.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“A lighthouse parent stands as a steady, reliable guide, providing safety and understanding without controlling every aspect of their child's journey, like a lighthouse that helps sailors avoid crashing into rocks. The key is learning when to step back and enable them to find their own way.”可知，灯塔式父母会在引导孩子的同时，让孩子自己行动。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

How to Help Teens with Time Management

Time management is a skill that any teen will need to learn to help him/her succeed. No matter how intelligent or skilled your teen is, he/she needs to be able to effectively manage his/her time to help him/her make the most of his/her potential. He/She will need to have the discipline to learn to prioritise (优先处理) effectively. **16**

Help your teen learn to prioritise. Not everything is of equal importance, though it may seem that way to your teen. **17** Family time is also important, more so than time spent with friends on chatting online. Schoolwork should come first, over watching TV or surfing online. Enforce (实施) the rule in your home, so your teen knows that he/she can't turn on the electronics until his/her work is done.

18 Don't overload your teen with activities. Extra-curricular activities are fun and help make your teen a better rounded individual. After all schoolwork and volunteer programmes look great on a college application form. However, if it cuts in on your teen's schoolwork or he/she seems stressed or overworked, you may need to step in and help him/her cut back.

Have a system. **19** For example, provide a quiet and private workstation for your teen. Teach your teen to make sure that it is organised, so he/she doesn't waste his/her time looking for things, which is a big time-waster.

Give him/her a planner. Place a calendar in your teen's room or in the family room, so your teen can write in his/her activities. **20** If having a planner is too old-school for your teen, a digital organiser can help him/her get organised.

A. Limit activities.

B. Set an example.

C. Help your teen be organised.

D. As a parent, here's what you can do.

E. This will help your teen make sure he/she doesn't forget anything.

F. Children learn by what they live, so you have to practise what you advocate.

G. Remind your teen that his/her priority is to learn at school and complete his/her schoolwork.

答案：16～20 DGACE

Ⅲ. 完形填空

As French author Andre Maurois once said, "Without a family, man, alone in the world, shakes with the cold." Indeed, families who give us love and __21__ are an important part of our lives. But even in a loving family, __22__ can't be avoided.

One day, I was doing my homework and my sister __23__. Busy with homework, I didn't talk to her and just kept working. But when I took a __24__, I turned my head to the place where my sister was sitting. __25__, I found my notebook had a lot of messy drawings on it.

At that time, I was full of __26__ and walked out of my room, shouting at my sister, "You are really a __27__ and I hate you." Hearing the words, my sister __28__ out crying and tried to explain her behaviour. But I __29__ since I didn't want to hear a word from her. The __30__ afterward lasted for a long time __31__ us. To solve the problem, my father brought me to the living room and asked, "Have you noticed what the drawing is on your notebook?"

I shook my head. Then, under the __32__ of my father, I looked at it carefully. It __33__, "Happy birthday!" At that moment, I knew how __34__ I was. Though drawing on my notebook wasn't right, my sister's love and __35__ were sincere. Feeling guilty, I said sorry to my sister. Instead of staying angry, she smiled back at me.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章通过作者和妹妹之间发生的小插曲，说明家庭给人带来的温暖。

21. A. wisdom　　B. truth
C. soul　　D. warmth
D　根据前文的"Without a family, man, alone in the world, shakes with the cold."及本句中的"Indeed"可知，本句同意前文的观点，家庭给我们爱和温暖。

22. A. misunderstandings　　B. expectations
C. competitions　　D. dislikes
A　根据后文可知，作者与妹妹产生了误会，所以此处指即使在有爱的家庭里，误会也是难免的。

23. A. left　　B. entered
C. led　　D. met
B　根据后文的"Busy with homework, I didn't talk to her and just kept working."可知，作者在写作业时妹妹进来了。

24. A. test　　B. task
C. text　　D. rest
D　前文提到作者忙于写作业，结合后文的"... I turned my head to the place where my sister was sitting."可知，作者忙于写作业没有理妹妹，只有在休息的时候才看向妹妹刚才待的地方。

25. A. Fortunately　　B. Disappointingly
C. Shockingly　　D. Thankfully
C　根据后文的"... I found my notebook had a lot of messy drawings on it."可知，作者的笔记本被妹妹乱涂乱画，这件事令作者吃惊。

26. A. anger　　B. hunger
C. anxiety　　D. sadness
A　根据后文的"shouting at my sister"可知，此时的作者应该是充满了愤怒。

27. A. storyteller　　B. house-cleaner
C. troublemaker　　D. performer
C　根据前文妹妹在作者的笔记本上乱涂乱画及后文的"... I hate you."可知，作者责骂妹妹是"惹麻烦的人"。

28. A. burst　　B. burnt
C. bore　　D. beat
A　结合语境及前文的"Hearing the words..."可知，妹妹听到作者的话突然大哭起来，burst out crying 意为"突然大哭起来"。

29. A. amused　　B. refused
C. allowed　　D. turned
B　根据后文的"... since I didn't want to hear a word from her."可知，作者拒绝听妹妹解释。

30. A. quarrel　　B. fight
C. lecture　　D. silence
D　根据前文的"But I __29__ since I didn't want to hear a word from her."可知，作者不想听妹妹的解释，于是两人之间有了长时间的沉默。

31. A. among　　B. within
C. against　　D. between
D　此处指作者和妹妹之间，两人之间用介词 between。

32. A. requirement　　B. campaign
C. concern　　D. strategy
A　根据后文的"... I looked at it carefully."可知，此处指在爸爸的要求下，作者认真地看了妹妹的画。

33. A. spoke　　B. told
C. said　　D. talked
C　空后"Happy birthday."是画的内容，画上"说道，写道"都用 say，其他选项没有此意。

34. A. indifferent　　B. inconsiderate
C. inactive　　D. independent
B　根据文章内容及后文的"Though drawing on my notebook wasn't right, my sister's love and 35 were sincere."可知，此时作者才意识到自己多么不善解人意。

35. A. absence　　B. intentions
C. attitude　　D. permission
B　根据前文的"Though drawing on my notebook wasn't right..."以及"Happy birthday."可知，虽然妹妹的做法不对，但其用意是真诚的。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Chinese shadow puppetry（皮影戏）is probably one of the most ancient arts using light and shadow.

Generally, shadow puppetry is a **36.** combination（combine）of various art forms involving painting, carving, music, opera performance and story-telling. Dating back to the Han Dynasty, shadow puppetry reached its golden age in the Qing Dynasty. At that time, it **37.** was performed（perform）in almost every province, and at various occasions, ranging **38.** from weddings to festival celebrations.

It is not an easy job to make the puppets（木偶）**39.** used（use）in performances. Most of them are made of leather, **40.** which must be carefully selected and repeatedly polished and processed before they are ready for carving the puppets. When the leather becomes transparent, fine and smooth enough, the artists paint the characters on them, and then carve them out with tools.

The body parts of the puppets are separately cut out and joined together, so that they can have as much as 24 movable joints（关节）. Performers hold them with sticks connected to **41.** their（they）most important joints during the performances, so that the puppets could be shown as "**42.** moving（move）images" on the screens.

With **43.** the rise of various forms of entertainment, shadow puppetry has been losing its shine. However, local artists across China **44.** have been exploring（explore）ways to help it survive. In 2011, Chinese shadow puppetry was added to UNESCO's Intangible Cultural Heritage list, thus **45.** breathing（breathe）new life into the ancient art form.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华。你的好朋友汤姆（Tom）即将迎来期中考试，他的父母要求他暂停社团活动，因此他与父母发生了争吵，写信向你寻求建议。请你用英语给他写一封电子邮件，内容包括：

1. 给予安慰；
2. 给出建议。

注意：词数 80 左右。

Dear Tom,

_____

_____

_____

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

I am sorry to know that you are having trouble in dealing with your parents. Honestly speaking, it is not rare during our daily life, but we should make efforts to get along well with them. My advice is as follows.

To start with, you should follow your parents' instructions so that you can make good preparations for the coming exam. Equally importantly, you may as well have a talk with your parents, telling them what you are planning and what levels you can reach. Only when they know your real ability can they feel at ease. If possible, you can help your parents do the housework, which is of great benefit to improve your relationship.

If you follow my advice, you will be in harmony with your parents.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Meredith family lived in a small community. As the economy was in decline, some people in the town had lost their jobs. Many of their families were struggling to make ends meet. People were trying to help each other meet the challenges.

Mrs Meredith was a most kind and thoughtful woman. She spent a great deal of time visiting the poor. She knew they had problems, and they needed all kinds of help. When she had time, she would bring food and medicine to them.

One morning she told her children about a family she had visited the day before. There was a man sick in bed, his wife, who took care of him and could not go out to work, and their little boy. The little boy—his name was Bernard—had interested her very much.

"I wish you could see him," she said to her own children, John, Harry, and Clara. "He is such a help to his mother. He wants very much to earn some money, but I don't see what he can do."

After their mother left the room, the children sat thinking about Bernard. "I wish we could help him to earn money," said Clara. "His family is suffering so much."

"So do I," said Harry. "We really should do something to assist them."

For some moments, John said nothing, but, suddenly, he sprang to his feet and cried, "I have a great idea! I have a solution that we can all help accomplish (完成)."

The other children also jumped up all attention. When John had an idea, it was sure to be a good one. "I tell you what we can do," said John. "You know that big box of corn Uncle John sent us? Well, we can make popcorn (爆米花), and put it into paper bags, and Bernard can take it around to the houses and sell it."

注意：续写词数应为150左右。

When Mrs Meredith heard of John's idea, she thought it was a good one, too. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

With everything ready, Bernard started out on his new business. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

When Mrs Meredith heard of John's idea, she thought it was a good one, too. So she said, "It definitely is a great idea, but you have to do what you said that you will make popcorn, put it into paper bags and bring it to Bernard every morning. If you mean it, we will help you." "Of course, I mean it. I do want to help Bernard to earn money," replied John, and he kept his word. These children divided them into two groups; one group were busy popping the corn, and the other took charge of buying paper bags and putting popcorn into them. When they finished all the work, they went to Bernard's house.

With everything ready, Bernard started out on his new business. At first, he was a little nervous for he didn't know how to sell it. But all things will be hard in the beginning. Bernard got up the courage and started out on his new business. What out of his expectation was that neighbours were all friendly to him and his basket was empty in a short time. Never had he earned so much money before in his life. He was too excited to speak, and then he ran to home happily. People began to watch for the "little popcorn boy", and every week he had at least fifty cents to take home, and often more. Bernard thanked John from the bottom of his heart.

阶段质量评估

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Your Students' Union exists to support your passions and help you have the best university experience possible.

What Do We Do to Support You?

Your Union does lots of different things to help you. They include:

• Supporting your clubs and societies

• Providing an advice service, Leeds Advice and Well-being, to help guide you through any challenges

• Offering mental health support

• Providing job opportunities

• Keeping you safe through programmes like the Nightbus

But we recognise that there's always more we can do, and that's why we need your help! The LUU (Leeds University Union) Plan Survey is your chance to tell us how we can do even more to support your personal and academic (学业的) development. Giving us your feedback (反馈) will help us to shape your Union for you!

What Is the Survey All About?

LUU is getting ready to write a new plan that will guide our work until 2030, and we need your help. By spending five minutes filling in the survey, you can let us know how we can best use our resources.

• What's going well?

• What could be going better?

• What new things should we be doing?

Our mission is to help you to be happy, healthy and satisfied. We're here on the bad days, as well as the good, and we'll help you to feel good and celebrate your individuality—take the survey now and help to support this important work.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了利兹大学学生会为学生提供的各类支持服务,发起相关调查并呼吁学生反馈意见,以制订新计划,更好地助力学生发展。

1. What is directly provided by the Union?

A. Free transport.

B. Well-paid jobs.

C. Medical treatment.

D. Guidance service.

D 细节理解题。根据 **What Do We Do to Support You?** 中的"Providing an advice service, Leeds Advice and Well-being, to help guide you through any challenges"可知,学生会直接为学生提供咨询指导类的服务。故选 D。

2. How can the students support the Union?

A. By donating money.

B. By giving their feedback.

C. By becoming its leader.

D. By designing a survey.

B 细节理解题。根据 **What Do We Do to Support You?** 中的"Giving us your feedback (反馈) will help us to shape your Union for you!"可知,学生可以通过提供反馈意见的方式支持学生会的工作。故选 B。

3. What is the Union's aim for students?

A. Promoting their job growth.

B. Looking after their whole well-being.

C. Developing their leadership skills.

D. Helping them do well in their studies.

B 细节理解题。根据 **What Is the Survey All About?** 中的"Our mission is to help you to be happy, healthy and satisfied."可知,学生会为学生设定的目标是关照他们的整体幸福感,兼顾身心各方面的良好状态。故选 B。

B

I'm a seventeen-year-old boy preparing for my A Level exams at the end of the year. In the society where my peers and I live, we tend to accept the rat race values. As students, we want to get good grades so that we can get good jobs. I enjoy studying and have always received A's in my classes. There was a year when I finished the first in my class in the final exams. It was a great achievement.

Another one I am pleased with is that I managed to improve the relationship between Mum and Dad. Dad was a successful businessman who was rarely at home. Mum was a housewife who always felt bored and nagged (唠叨) him to let her go to work. Their frequent arguing bothered me, so I

advised Dad that Mum would be better off with a part-time job. He agreed, and their relationship has improved since then.

My most proud achievement, however, is my successful work in the local old folks' home. My grandparents had raised me since I was a child. I wept (哭泣) bitterly when they died. Unlike many of my classmates, I do not take part in my school's community service to earn points. I enjoy my voluntary work and believe I'm contributing to a worthwhile cause. This is where I can help. I talk to the elderly, help them with their daily life, and listen to their problems, happy days and the hardships they experienced.

Last year, I hosted a successful New Year party for the elderly and they enjoyed a great time. Many expressed a desire to attend another party the following year. When I reflect on my accomplishments, I'm especially proud of my service at the old folks' home, so I hope to study social work at university and work as a social worker in the future. I wish to be more skilled in attending to the less fortunate as well as gain great satisfaction from it, after all.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在学业上、在家庭关系的处理上和在养老院做义工方面的成就。

4. What can be inferred about the author from the first paragraph?

A. His good grades got him a good job.

B. He refuses to compete with his peers fiercely.

C. His views on social values are well-known.

D. He is satisfied with his achievements in study.

D　推理判断题。根据第一段中的"I enjoy studying and have always received A's in my classes. There was a year when I finished the first in my class in the final exams. It was a great achievement."可知，作者对自己的学习成绩很满意。故选D。

5. Which role does the author play in his parents' relationship?

A. A judge.

B. A helper.

C. A monitor.

D. A supporter.

B　推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Another one I am pleased with is that I managed to improve the relationship between Mum and Dad."可知，作者在父母的关系中扮演了一个帮手的角色。故选B。

6. What is the greatest accomplishment for the author?

A. The contribution to volunteering.

B. The success in exams.

C. The recovery of confidence in life.

D. The work in community service.

A　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"My most proud achievement, however, is my successful work in the local old folks' home."可知，对志愿工作的贡献是作者最大的成就。故选A。

7. Why does the author want to study social work at university?

A. To gain a well-paid job.

B. To give his life a purpose.

C. To better help the disadvantaged.

D. To meet his grandparents' expectations.

C　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"When I reflect on my accomplishments, I'm especially proud of my service at the old folks' home, so I hope to study social work at university and work as a social worker in the future. I wish to be more skilled in attending to the less fortunate as well as gain great satisfaction from it, after all."可知，作者想在大学学习社会服务专业是为了更好地帮助弱势群体。故选C。

C

Sure, it's good to get along well with your teacher because it makes the time you spend in the classroom more pleasant.

And yes, it's good to get along well with your teacher because, in general, it's smart to learn how to get along well with the different types of people you'll meet throughout your life.

In fact, kids who get along well with their teachers not only learn more, but they're more comfortable with asking questions and getting extra help. This makes it easier for them to understand new materials and makes them do their best on tests. When you have this kind of relationship with a teacher, he or she can be someone to turn to with problems, such as problems with learning or school issues.

Here is a question: What if you don't get along with your teachers? In fact, teachers want to get along well with you and enjoy seeing you learn. But teachers and students sometimes have personality clashes (个性冲突), which can happen between any

two people. If you show your teacher that you want to make the situation better, he or she will probably do everything possible to make that happen. By dealing with a problem like this, you learn something about how to get along with people who are different from you.

However, if a certain teacher isn't your favourite, you can still have a successful relationship with him or as long as you take your basic responsibilities as a student. Here are some of those responsibilities:

Attend class ready to learn.

Be prepared for class with the right stationery, books, and completed homework.

Listen when your teacher is talking.

Do your best, whether it's a classroom assignment, homework, or a test.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了学生学会和老师和谐相处的好处,以及应该如何去做。

8. What will happen to you when getting along well with your teachers according to the passage?

A. We will have no problems with study.

B. We will get a better seat in the classroom.

C. We will get the best scores in the exams.

D. We will have more pleasant time in the classroom.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,如果学生和老师相处得好,学生在教室里度过的时光会是愉快的。故选D。

9. If you don't like a certain teacher, what should you do according to the author?

A. We should ignore the differences between the teacher and us.

B. We should choose a new school.

C. We should study harder on weekends.

D. We should take our basic responsibilities as a student.

D 细节理解题。根据第五段中的"However, if a certain teacher isn't your favourite, you can still have a successful relationship with him or as long as you take your basic responsibilities as a student."可知,如果学生不喜欢某位老师,那么学生只要做好学生应该做的事情就好了,担起做学生的基本责任。故选D。

10. Whom is the passage mostly written for?

A. Teachers.

B. Students.

C. Parents.

D. Graduates.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"your teacher""the time you spend in the classroom"并纵观全文可知,文章中的you指的是学生,也是目标读者。由此可知,这篇文章是写给学生的,教学生如何和老师相处。故选B。

11. What does the passage mainly talk about?

A. Studying skills for students.

B. The importance of a good relationship with your teachers.

C. The importance of friendship in school.

D. Useful skills to get along well with your parents.

B 主旨大意题。根据第一、二段的内容及第三段中的"In fact, kids who get along well with their teachers not only learn more, but they're more comfortable with asking questions and getting extra help."可知,本文主要介绍了学生和老师和谐相处的重要性,并就如何和老师相处给了建议。故选B。

D

There are over 6,000 languages spoken in the world. But did you know that some of them are in danger of dying out? From Dusner (three speakers) to Kelabit (five thousand), these languages are spread all over the world, but they all have one thing in common: unless we act soon, they could become extinct (灭绝的).

Researchers at Oxford University are studying these languages. And Dr Johanneke Sytsema, who has organised a popular seminar (研讨会) on endangered languages, thinks there could be a magic bullet for keeping minority languages alive: social media. "Social media could help save a language," Dr Sytsema says. "Because young people text each other in the same way they speak, even if they don't know how to spell it."

Minority languages are often at risk of being drowned out (压过) by the louder voices of the bigger languages, which are spoken at school and in the media. But, with social media giving control to the users, the popularity of social media might just have the opposite effect.

Dr Sytsema has first-hand experience: she speaks Frisian. Frisian, spoken in a province in the Netherlands called Friesland, has 350,000 speakers. Using her own language has given Dr Sytsema food for thought about how languages could be saved in the future. "In Friesland, young people who don't learn much Frisian writing at school send each other

messages on social media in Frisian," she says. In this way, a new generation of Frisian speakers keeps the language alive.

According to Dr Sytsema, our languages, like our wildlife, are natural creations. "Natural beauty needs to be protected. Once languages die, you don't get them back, because they've grown over thousands and thousands of years," Dr Sytsema explains. "Every language has its own beauty. And that's why it's so important."

【语篇解读】文章主要说明了世界上有许多语言正在逐渐消失，并介绍了牛津大学的研究者如何通过社交媒体保护和挽救这些濒危语言。

12. Why does the author mention Dusner and Kelabit?

A. To describe the richness of human language.

B. To discuss the influence of language on culture.

C. To explain the importance of cultural exchange.

D. To show the serious situation of endangered languages.

D　推理判断题。根据第一段中的"From Dusner (three speakers) to Kelabit (five thousand), these languages are spread all over the world, but they all have one thing in common: unless we act soon, they could become extinct (灭绝的)."可知，作者提到 Dusner 和 Kelabit 是为了展示濒危语言的严重状况。故选 D。

13. What do the underlined words "a magic bullet" mean in Paragraph 2?

A. A challenging task.

B. An effective solution.

C. An open standard.

D. A common goal.

B　词义猜测题。根据画线词下文"'Social media could help save a language,' Dr Sytsema says. 'Because young people text each other in the same way they speak, even if they don't know how to spell it.'"可知，Sytsema 博士认为社交媒体可以帮助拯救一门语言。由此推知 a magic bullet 应是"一种有效的方法"之意，和 B 项意思相近。故选 B。

14. What gave Dr Sytsema the idea of language protection?

A. Teaching at a language school.

B. The popularity of Frisian on social media.

C. Her personal experience with Frisian.

D. Working with young people in Friesland.

C　细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"Dr Sytsema has first-hand experience: she speaks Frisian. Frisian, spoken in a province in the Netherlands called Friesland, has 350, 000 speakers." "In this way, a new generation of Frisian speakers keeps the language alive."可知，Sytsema 在弗里斯兰的个人经历使她有了通过社交媒体保护语言的想法。故选 C。

15. What message does Dr Sytsema want to give us in the last paragraph?

A. A language is well worth saving.

B. Society is shaping human language.

C. The extinction of languages can be avoided.

D. The young hold the key to language protection.

A　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"According to Dr Sytsema, our languages, like our wildlife, are natural creations. 'Natural beauty needs to be protected.'"可知，在最后一段 Sytsema 博士想表达的是一门语言非常值得保护。故选 A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Nowadays, more and more people like going on trips during the holidays. And the flights and hotels are often too expensive. Do you still want to get away this summer? **16** If you're interested in getting a bit closer to nature, and don't mind dirty shoes and wet tents (帐篷), it might be the holiday for you. However, you'll need to be prepared. **17**

Do some planning first. If it's your first time, you don't need to buy every piece of camping equipment—you may never go again! But do get the important things. Most experts say it's worthwhile spending money on a good tent. **18** It suggests getting one that's "a size or two bigger than the number of people using it". For example, if there are two of you going camping, get a three-person or four-person tent to have space for your bags.

19 You can put the tent up in your garden, or even put it inside your room, to see what it's like and how it works. There are lots of websites that give you lists of the other things you'll need. But don't forget a first-aid packet and some "just-in-case" things—including extra clothes, food and coats in case things go wrong.

Think about the place you're going to. Check the facilities (设施) it has, and perhaps choose one close to home in case you forget something or find out that you hate the whole experience! **20**

A. If so, here's an idea: Camping.

B. Buying the proper tent is a key step.

C. It keeps many people from enjoying the fun.
D. It's also a good idea to check your tent before you travel.
E. Mountain Warehouse is an outdoor equipment company.
F. Luckily, there's lots of advice online for first-time campers.
G. But finally, the most important thing that you should care about is to be safe!

答案:16～20 AFEDG

Ⅲ. 完形填空

I never planned on learning Chinese. Even when I found out I was going to Hong Kong, I thought that I would be able to __21__ with English. It didn't take long for me to realise how naive (天真的) I was. Chinese characters are totally __22__ and hard to understand. I quickly got sick of a state of being at a loss and decided to __23__ for the Chinese class offered by my university.

I had Chinese every weekday, after which I spent at least an hour __24__ the lesson. In the evening my friends and I quizzed each other on the __25__ we had to memorise. More importantly, I made a conscious __26__ to speak in Chinese in stores and restaurants. I was __27__ when I was able to maintain a simple conversation with the locals.

When I __28__ achieved A's on my Chinese exams, I thought it was time to take a break from studying Chinese every day and focus on my other classes. Unluckily, this turned out to be a(n) __29__. Due to the break my whole study habits were __30__ and the other lessons themselves were getting harder. I had to __31__ new study methods and started over.

With finals drawing near, I have set my golden rule: there isn't a(n) __32__ way to learn a new language. Once you realise and accept that you are a __33__, it becomes an ongoing process of exploration, failure, rethinking, and trying again. Can I speak out it smoothly now? Not even __34__. And I may never be. But I learned how to be honest with myself and push through __35__.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者原本没打算学习中文,但在去香港后发现需要学习中文,于是报名参加了大学的中文课程,并通过不断努力和练习,提升了中文水平。作者认为学习新语言没有捷径,需要不断探索、失败、反思和重试,这也让作者学会了诚实面对自己,不断地克服困难。

21. A. get by　　B. carry on
C. get along　　D. keep up
A　根据前文的"I never planned on learning Chinese."可知,作者之所以没有计划学汉语,是因为作者认为在香港用英语能应付过去。故选A。

22. A. professional　　B. foreign
C. flexible　　D. attractive
B　根据后文的"... hard to understand."可知,作者认为汉语是陌生的,很难理解。故选B。

23. A. sign up　　B. go in
C. stick up　　D. come in
A　根据后文的"... for the Chinese class offered by my university."可知,作者很快就厌倦了这种无所适从的状态,于是决定报读大学开设的中文课。故选A。

24. A. adapting　　B. reminding
C. reviewing　　D. presenting
C　根据前文的"after which I spent at least an hour"可知,作者上中文课后会花至少一个小时复习。故选C。

25. A. structures　　B. articles
C. characters　　D. idioms
C　根据前文的"In the evening my friends and I quizzed each other..."可知,作者和朋友们互相测试必须记住的汉字。故选C。

26. A. effort　　B. statement
C. opportunity　　D. proposal
A　根据后文的"... to speak in Chinese in stores and restaurants."可知,作者有意识地努力在商店和餐馆里说中文。故选A。

27. A. relaxed　　B. delighted
C. shocked　　D. stressed
B　根据后文的"... when I was able to maintain a simple conversation with the locals."可知,当作者能与当地人进行简单的对话时,作者很高兴。故选B。

28. A. actively　　B. awkwardly
C. unexpectedly　　D. regularly
D　根据后文的"I thought it was time to take a break from studying Chinese every day and focus on my other classes."可知,作者中文考试的成绩经常是A,所以才决定专注于其他课程。故选D。

29. A. challenge　　B. mistake
C. stage　　D. escape
B　根据后文的"I had to __31__ new study methods and started over."可知,作者不得不想出新的学习方法,而且需要重新开始,由此证明作者的学习方法是错误的。故选B。

30. A. changing　　B. appearing
C. suffering　　D. developing
C　根据前文的“Due to the break...”可知，因为中断了中文学习，作者的整个学习习惯都受到了影响。故选C。

31. A. keep away from　　B. get away from
C. break up with　　D. come up with
D　根据后文的“... new study methods and started over.”可知，作者不得不想出新的学习方法，重新开始。故选D。

32. A. creative　　B. useful
C. optional　　D. easy
D　根据后文的“Once you realise and accept that you are a 33 , it becomes an ongoing process of exploration, failure, rethinking, and trying again.”可知，作者认为，学习语言时，一旦你意识到并接受自己是一个初学者，这就变成了一个不断探索、失败、反思和再尝试的过程，因此学习一门语言没有简单的方法。故选D。

33. A. follower　　B. beginner
C. supporter　　D. winner
B　根据前文的“... to learn a new language.”可知，对于学习一门新语言，作者是初学者。故选B。

34. A. close　　B. ready
C. sure　　D. right
A　根据后文的“And I may never be.”可知，作者问自己是否可以流利地说汉语，并自答可能永远都不会，因此表明现在还差得远。故选A。

35. A. shortcomings　　B. possibilities
C. difficulties　　D. disasters
C　根据前文的“With finals drawing near, I have set my golden rule: there isn't a(n) 32 way to learn a new language. Once you realise and accept that you are a 33 , it becomes an ongoing process of exploration, failure, rethinking, and trying again.”以及“But I learned how to be honest with myself and push through...”可知，虽然作者可能永远都不能流利地说汉语，但是在学习汉语的过程中，他学会了如何对自己诚实，如何克服困难。故选C。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

China is known for its ancient civilisation that has continued into modern times. Among the key reasons **36.** for this continuity（延续性）, the Chinese writing system has been playing an important part.

In its early days, written Chinese was a picture-based language, **37.** dating (date) back thousands of years to *longgu*—animal bones and shells on which **38.** symbols (symbol) were carved by ancient Chinese people. By the Shang Dynasty, they had become a highly-developed writing system. Later, Emperor Qinshihuang united seven major states, **39.** which led to him unifying the writing system. This **40.** unified (unify) system was of great importance for the Chinese people and their culture.

Today, written Chinese connects China's present with its past: modern people can read ancient classics to learn about their ancestors' **41.** wisdom (wise). It has also grown into an art form called Chinese calligraphy, loved by people at home and abroad.

As Chinese is considered as one of the most important languages in the world, **42.** the number of international students learning Chinese is increasing rapidly. **43.** To understand (understand) China fully, one must grasp its writing system—a heritage that **44.** has influenced (influence) the nation greatly for many centuries. Indeed, it serves as a communication tool **45.** and a living record, carrying the stories of the Chinese people.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

你校英语报社正在举办征文比赛，要求以参赛者“My Happy Family”为主题写一篇故事，描述自己的家庭生活。请按要求写稿，内容如下：
1. 描述一件你和家人的美好往事；
2. 阐述令你印象深刻的原因。
注意：词数80左右。

【参考范文】

There are five people in my family. We live happily together. There are many things occurring around us, creating many wonderful and loving moments in my memory.

Last weekend, my parents and I celebrated my grandpa's birthday happily. On the early morning of the big day, my grandpa and I set out for the park. Considering his age, I accompanied him to the top of the mountain by cable car. Enjoying the beautiful

scenery, we couldn't help taking lots of photos. When we came back home at noon, my parents had already prepared a big lunch for us.

Seeing the smile on my grandpa's face, I was glad and proud to have done something to show my love to him.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

In a picturesque town surrounded by majestic mountains, there lived a nature enthusiast named Jack and his grandfather, a retired park worker. The mountains were their sanctuary, a place of peace and exploration.

Jack grew up hiking and exploring the mountains with his grandfather. They shared a deep love for nature and its inhabitants. One weekend, they planned a hike to the summit of Eagle Peak, a challenging but rewarding climb.

As they ascended the rugged trails, Jack and his grandfather enjoyed the beautiful views and the serenity (宁静) of the mountains. They were experienced hikers, prepared for the journey with supplies and knowledge of nature.

As they neared the summit, Jack heard a faint meowing. Following the sound, he found a small, poor cat hiding under a bush, looking weak and scared. It was surprising to find a domestic cat so far up the mountain, and it was clear the cat was lost and starving.

Jack was immediately concerned for the cat. He knew they couldn't leave it there to fend for itself in the wild. However, they were hours away from the nearest town and bringing the cat along was risky. It could slow them down or even get scared and run off.

After a brief discussion, Jack and his grandfather decided to rescue the cat. They used a spare jacket to create a makeshift carrier. The cat, though hesitant at first, seemed to understand they were trying to help and settled down in the jacket.

The descent was more challenging than they anticipated. They had to move slowly to ensure the cat's safety, and the added responsibility required extra caution. As they navigated the rocky paths, Jack felt a bond forming with the little cat, who peeked out from the jacket, seemingly curious about its surroundings.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

They reached the town at dusk, tired but fulfilled and Jack named the cat "Summit" as a reminder of their unique encounter. _____

_____

_____

_____

Summit thrived in Jack's care, growing into a healthy and affectionate cat. _____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

They reached the town at dusk, tired but fulfilled and Jack named the cat "Summit" as a reminder of their unique encounter. He took Summit home, where the cat quickly became a part of the family. Jack learned to care for Summit, providing food, love, and a warm home. The experience on the mountain taught Jack a valuable lesson about compassion and responsibility. He had saved a life, and in return, Summit brought joy and companionship into his own. The story of their mountain rescue spread through the town, inspiring others to be kind and caring towards animals in need.

Summit thrived in Jack's care, growing into a healthy and affectionate cat. Jack and his grandfather continued their mountain adventures, but now with a new story to tell—about the day they made a furry friend on Eagle Peak. Their adventure became a proof of the unexpected surprises of nature and the bonds that can form in the most unlikely of circumstances. It was a reminder that sometimes, the greatest rewards aren't found at the summit but in the journey and the lives we touch along the way.

Unit 4 Friends forever

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Self", with the unit topic being "Friends Forever". Starting with developing an understanding of friendship, the poem and related key words explore what a true friend is. You will then read a text about the advantages and disadvantages of making friends online, as well as the story "After Twenty Years". Through these texts, you will form correct views on making friends, and help you understand the value of friendship and write an appropriate ending for the story. Through this unit, you will reflect on yourselves, develop positive life values, and learn to build meaningful friendships by deepening your understanding of the true meaning of friendship.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"Friends forever"主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	能恰当地运用定语从句，了解定语从句的功能及意义。
		语篇	1. 能理解诗歌、论说文、网络论坛帖子、小说等的语篇结构特征及语言特点； 2. 能初步了解小说类文体的基本特征和常见的阅读方法，了解欧·亨利小说的主题和"欧·亨利式"结尾的特点，能运用所学知识为小说续写结尾。
		语用	能正确使用表示友谊的词汇和句式表达与友谊相关的观点。
	语言技能	听	听两个好友关于"Helping our friends"的对话，感悟真正的友谊就是在朋友身处困难中时，能及时给予他们帮助，让他们深切地感受到友谊的伟大。
		说	能用自己的语言恰当地表达友谊的内涵和价值意义，且能根据语境的需要正确使用相关词汇，使口头表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读论说文——"Click for a Friend"，了解网络交友的利与弊，初步形成自己的交友观； 2. 阅读小说——"After Twenty Years"，理解故事内容，明确故事中的人物形象和特点，评价人物的行为。
		写	能运用所学知识为小说续写结尾。
学习能力	1. 能通过阅读从文章中提取事实和细节，并基于这些信息推导合理的结论； 2. 能明确故事中的人物形象和特点，评价人物的行为； 3. 能区分一些近义词的差异，并根据语境正确使用这些词汇。		
文化意识	进一步深入理解友谊的内涵和价值。		
思维品质	辨证地思考情与法的关系，树立正确的交友观。		

必备知识

必背单词	familiar, adventure, prefer, click, deliver, advance, significantly, maintain, wi-fi, digital, enable, unusual, site, tend, update, saying, acquire, goods, prove, illustrate, diagram, inspiring, teenager, pour, comfort, patience, passion, quality, anxious, postpone, distance, ordinary, drag, correspond, appointed, strike, plain, scene, bitterly, ashamed, unfold, location, surroundings, personality
重点词块	lose track of, thanks to, be up to, stay in touch with, keep in mind, throw the baby out with the bathwater, make one's fortune, ought to do, turn up, work out, hear from, be worth it
重点句型	1. “疑问词＋-ever”引导让步状语从句 2. “have sth. done”结构
单元语法	关系代词引导的定语从句
单元写作	如何写故事结尾

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Find the author's attitudes towards making friends online.
2. Identify supporting evidence for the author's arguments.
3. Get a basic understanding of the characteristics of argumentative essays.
4. Express your own opinions on making friends online.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. forever *adv*. 永远
2. familiar *adj*. 熟悉的
3. adventure *n*. 历险(经历),奇遇
4. prefer *v*. 更喜欢
5. deliver *v*. 递送,传送
6. advance *n*. 进步,进展
7. significantly *adv*. 重大地,显著地
8. maintain *v*. 保持,维持
9. acquire *v*. 获得,得到
10. digital *adj*. 数字的,数码的
11. enable *v*. 使可能,使发生
12. unusual *adj*. 异常的,不平常的
13. tend *v*. 易于做某事,往往会发生某事
14. goods *n*. 商品
15. prove *v*. 证明,证实
16. lose track of 不了解……的情况,不了解……的动态
17. thanks to 归功于,多亏……
18. stay in touch with 与……保持联系
19. be up to 忙于;由……决定;是……的责任;胜任
20. connect... with... 使……与……连接;把……与……联系起来
21. keep in mind 记住,牢记

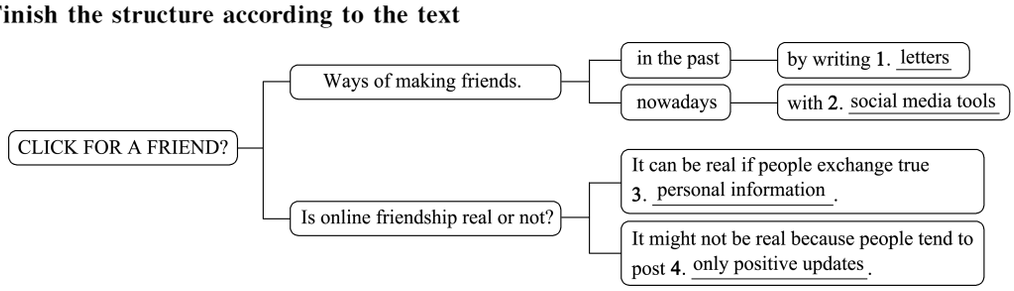
(二)阅读词汇

1. click *v*. 点击(鼠标)
2. wi-fi *n*. 无线网络,无线上网
3. site *n*. 网站
4. update *n*. 最新消息
5. saying *n*. 格言,谚语,警句
6. criminal *n*. 罪犯
7. illustrate *v*. (举例)说明,阐明
8. diagram *n*. 图解,示意图
9. throw the baby out with the bathwater 不分良莠一起抛弃
10. social media 社交媒体

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1:Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What does the title "CLICK FOR A FRIEND?" mean?
   A. Is it necessary to find a friend online?
   B. Is it possible to find a real friend online?
   C. Is it easy to find a real friend online?
   D. Is it more popular to find a friend online now than before?
2. Which of the following plays a more important part in maintaining our friendship in modern society?
   A. Writing letters.
   B. Social media tools.
   C. Collecting model cars.
   D. Playing an unusual instrument.
3. What does "they" in the last sentence of Paragraph 3 refer to?
   A. People moving to a new town.
   B. People living on the other side of the world.
   C. People sharing the same hobbies with us.
   D. People moving around the world.
4. What is the main idea of the text?
   A. It is dangerous to make friends online.
   B. Making friends online is the best way to make friends.
   C. Making friends online is much easier than in traditional ways.
   D. There are advantages and disadvantages of making friends online.

答案：1～4 BBCD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others who also enjoy doing them, even if they live on the other side of the world.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。whatever 引导让步状语从句，相当于 no matter what，这是一个省略句，完整句子为 Whatever our hobbies are；主句中 who 引导定语从句；even if 引导让步状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]不管我们的爱好是什么，互联网都能把我们和其他喜欢做这些事情的人联系起来，即使他们生活在世界的另一端。
2. As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。as 引导非限制性定语从句，意为"正如"；even if 引导让步状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]正如亚里士多德所说的：没有人会选择没有朋友的生活，即使他拥有其他所有财富。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What advantages and problems are there when you are making friends online?
   Advantages: It can help remain friends and maintain friendships and it enables us to find people with the same interests and hobbies.
   Problems: What we see is often not the whole truth about a person. We'll be cheated if we don't watch out.
2. How do we keep safe when chatting online? (Answers may vary.)
   Keep our personal information such as our names, addresses, telephone numbers and pictures secret.

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十三）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

There's a small brick house I visit from time to time. It's not the house that is special, but rather the person who lives inside.

I met Jenny about 45 years ago when she was my sister's kindergarten teacher. I remember looking into her classroom, wishing I was her student. Jenny created a safe place where we could be whatever we wanted to be during the time. My parents told me I could start school when I was 4. However, when I turned 4 in the spring, I couldn't understand why I had to wait until September. For as long as I can remember, I always wanted to be a teacher. When I graduated, I couldn't wait to invite Jenny to my classroom. She arrived one day, and I saw joy on my students' faces when they sang the same songs I sang with her as a child. As a new teacher, I was amazed at how she connected with children. For years, Jenny volunteered in my classroom.

Over the years we have shared in each other's ups and downs. She asks me for updates about my family and friends, and she tells me about hers.

I am here for her now as the time to sell her house is near. I bring up boxes from her basement. We go through every painting a student has given to her, every thank-you note a parent has written and her teaching aids. I find papers featuring the letters of the alphabet. I find my own name printed in a green card. Suddenly, my mind goes back to Room 3. More than 40 years ago, Jenny sat on a chair while my classmates and I sat on the carpet at her feet. We learned about the letters and their sounds.

Now, Jenny sits on her rocking chair, and I find myself sitting at her feet. Over tea, we talk for hours. I listen carefully because I know I still have more to learn from her.

Our friendship is one that neither of us expected. Educators know teaching is a profession devoted to the development of young individuals. The lucky ones get to see what their students have done with their lives. The exceptional ones never leave their students' hearts.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者和Jenny之间的特殊友谊。

1. How can we best describe Jenny?

A. Skilled in her teaching but impatient with her students sometimes.

B. Considerate and often paying a visit to the parents of her students.

C. Easy-going and good at communicating with her students.

D. Generous and ready to help poor students.

C　推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Jenny created a safe place where we could be whatever we wanted to be during the time."及"She arrived one day, and I saw joy on my students' faces when they sang the same songs I sang with her as a child. As a new teacher, I was amazed at how she connected with children."可知，Jenny营造了一个让孩子们感到安全的环境，并且擅长与学生建立联系。这说明她性格随和，善于沟通。故选C。

2. What can we infer from the text?

A. The author and her teacher are unwilling to visit each other.

B. The author and her teacher usually have nothing new to share.

C. The author and her teacher are always concerned with each other.

D. The author and her teacher have lost contact with each other by now.

C　推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知，多年来作者和Jenny一直分享彼此的喜怒哀乐，互相关心彼此的生活。故选C。

3. Why does the author take boxes from Jenny's basement?

A. Jenny's house is to be sold.

B. Jenny wants to find her teaching aids.

C. Jenny expects to show her achievements in education.

D. Jenny intends to offer the papers with the letters to the author.

A　细节理解题。根据第四段中的"I am here for her now as the time to sell her house is near. I bring up boxes from her basement."可知，Jenny的房子即将出售，作者在帮助她整理地下室的箱子。故选A。

4. What kinds of educators can be called fortunate ones?

A. Those who can be devoted to the development of young individuals.

B. Those who can see how their students experience their lives.

C. Those who can be appreciated for their hard work.

D. Those w ho can get in touch with their students.

B　细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"The lucky ones get to see what their students have done with their lives."可知，幸运的教师能看到学生们生活中的成就和经历。故选B。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Ever notice how life feels lighter when you're staying with people who understand you? They are the ones who share your values and encourage your growth. **1** But how can you find a circle of people who match your energy and help you rise? The following ways can help you.

Stick to your values. Finding your perfect friend starts with knowing yourself. **2** And it ensures

that your everyday actions fit these values. This can help you find direction, so you can show up to the world truly. Like-minded people will naturally be drawn to the energy you put out into the world.

Join like-minded people. Whether you enjoy reading great books or spending as much time outdoors as possible, you can find plenty of events, clubs, or meet-up groups with people that enjoy the same things as you. You'll probably find other things in common with them and build lifelong friendships. So, sign up for that next yoga class, book club, or group retreat. **3**

Open your heart. If you want to find friendship, you have to meet new people. Real closeness comes from vulnerability (脆弱). Sure, it can be scary at first to share your personal side. If you open up in a healthy way, with time, you create strong, long-lasting friendships built on trust and deep connection. As you get to know each other, ask more meaningful questions. **4** It also gives them a chance to open up a dialogue for more meaningful conversations.

5 Friendship is a two-way street. It requires shared support. You have to work hard to build strong relationships. Take the time to listen to others rather than just talk about yourself. Care about their well-being by checking in from time to time. By doing so, you'll notice your friends showing up.

A. Try your best.

B. Practice makes perfect.

C. You never know who you'll meet!

D. It means understanding your main values.

E. This will show the other person that you care.

F. And they also tell you that you're not alone on your path.

G. You should accept the fact that people hold different views.

答案:1～5 FDCEA

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Master the usage of the key words and phrases in the text by reciting and practising.
2. Analyse the structure of complex sentences in the text and understand their meaning.
3. Reflect on the meaning of friendship and learn to cherish meaningful relationships.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. He is a figure **familiar** to people all over the world. 熟悉的
2. It is important to **maintain** a constant (恒定的) temperature inside the greenhouse. 保持,维持
3. When you have selected the file you want, you can **click** here to download (下载) it. 点击(鼠标)
4. I'll need regular **updates** on the progress of the project. 最新消息
5. The teacher drew a **diagram** showing how the blood flows (流) through the heart. 图解,示意图
6. The shop which is next to my apartment sells a wide range of **goods**. 商品

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
advance *n*. 进步,进展	advanced *adj*. 先进的;高级的;高等的
significantly *adv*. 重大地,显著地	significant *adj*. 有意义的;重要的
	significance *n*. 意义;含义;重要性
enable *v*. 使可能,使发生	able *adj*. 有能力的
	ability *n*. 能力;才能
unusual *adj*. 异常的,不平常的	usual *adj*. 通常的
	usually *adv*. 通常地;正常地;经常地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
tend *v*. 易于做某事，往往会发生某事	tendency *n*. 倾向；趋势
criminal *n*. 罪犯	crime *n*. 犯罪活动；罪行
prove *v*. 证明，证实	proof *n*. 证据；证明 *adj*. 防……的，抗……的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. lose track of 不了解……的情况，不了解……的动态

2. thanks to 归功于，多亏……

3. connect... with... 使……与……连接；把……与……联系起来

4. stay in touch with 与……保持联系

5. keep in mind 记住，牢记

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式："疑问词＋-ever"引导让步状语从句

Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others who also enjoy doing them, even if they live on the other side of the world.

不管我们的爱好是什么，互联网都能把我们和其他喜欢做这些事情的人联系起来，即使他们生活在世界的另一端。

2. 句型公式：what 引导名词性从句

But we need to keep in mind that what we see on social media is often not the whole truth about a person.

但我们需要谨记，我们在社交媒体上看到的往往不是一个人全部的真面目。

3. 句型公式：even if 引导让步状语从句

As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.

正如亚里士多德所说的：没有人会选择没有朋友的生活，即使他拥有其他所有财富。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. prefer *v*. 更喜欢

[**教材原文**]How do you **prefer** to make friends?

你更喜欢怎样交朋友？

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)prefer to do/doing sth. 更愿意做某事

prefer sb. to do sth. 宁愿某人做某事

prefer (doing) sth. to (doing) sth.

＝prefer to do sth. rather than do sth.

宁愿(做)某事……也不愿(做)某事

(2)preference *n*. 偏爱；爱好

have a preference for 喜好，偏爱

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

① And half of the students surveyed prefer to learn/learning (learn) English by watching English movies.

②I said gently to David, "I prefer you to take (take) part in the cross-country run. Please have confidence in yourself."

③ We have a preference for going out for travelling since it can increase our knowledge and broaden our horizons.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿)当我在课堂之外学习英语时，我**更喜欢读英语书而不是听英语歌曲**。

When I study English beyond the classroom, I prefer reading English books to listening to English songs.(prefer doing... to doing...)

→When I study English beyond the classroom, I prefer to read English books rather than listen to English songs.(prefer to do... rather than do...)

2. advance *n*. 进步，进展

[**教材原文**]Thanks to **advances** in technology, how we make friends and communicate with them has changed significantly.

得益于科技的进步，我们结交朋友、与朋友沟通的方式发生了很大的变化。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)advance *v*. 前进；进展

(2)in advance(＝ahead of time) 提前

(3)advanced *adj*. 先进的；高级的；高等的

(4)advancement *n*. 前进；发展；提升

名师点拨

advance 还可用作动词，意为"前进；促进"；也可用作形容词，意为"预先的，事先的"。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷) Groups of five or more require special arrangements and must be confirmed in advance.

②Very small drones with advanced (advance) sensors and AI and travelling ahead of the train could guide it like a co-pilot.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之动作链)随着夜幕降临,他们迅速聚集,背上背包,**朝着目的地前进**。

With night approaching, they gathered quickly, took backpacks, and advanced on/towards their destination.

②(2024·北京卷应用文写作之投稿)第二,**讨论中国在技术方面的进步**将展示中国的创新精神。

Secondly, discussing China's advancements in technology would show the nation's spirit of innovation.

3. tend *v*. 易于做某事,往往会发生某事

[**教材原文**]On social media sites, people **tend** to post only positive updates that make them appear happy and friendly.

在社交网站上,人们倾向于只发布正面的信息,塑造自己快乐且友善的形象。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)tend to do sth. 易于做某事,往往会做某事

tend (to) sb./sth. 照顾/照料某人/某物

(2)tendency *n*. 倾向;趋势

have a tendency to do sth. 倾向于做某事

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) People with more consistent stories tend to have (have) a stronger sense of identity, and they feel their life has more meaning, direction and sense of purpose.

②(2025·全国二卷) Tending to plants is an exercise in patience and learning.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿)最近的一项调查显示,接受采访的大多数学生,约65%,**倾向于通过听英文歌曲学习英语**。

A recent survey suggests that the majority of students being interviewed, about 65%, tend to learn English by listening to English songs. (tend)

→A recent survey suggests that the majority of students being interviewed, about 65%, have a tendency to learn English by listening to English songs. (tendency)

多义词汇 专练

1. deliver

A. *v*. 递送　　B. *v*. 分娩

C. *v*. 发表(演说等)

① The princess has been **delivered** of a healthy baby boy. B

② As a student representative, I am greatly honoured to **deliver** a speech here. C

③ His parents always have him weeding the garden and **delivering** newspapers. A

2. As we all know, a new **site** has been chosen for the new school. B

A. *n*. 网站　　B. *n*. (建筑物的)地点

C. *n*. 现场;发生地

Unit 4 课后素养评价(十四)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. Only teamwork will enable us to get (get) the job done on time.
2. Men tend to put (put) on weight in middle age.
3. In order to get familiar with the new neighbour, I decided to call at his house.
4. On Sundays my brother prefers staying (stay) at home doing his homework to going out to play with other children.
5. Margaret proved herself to be (be) a good mother.
6. We won't charge you for delivery (deliver), for it's free of charge.
7. He was an ordinary boy, but he inspired me significantly (significant).
8. Thanks to the advanced (advance) technology, we live in an age of bettered communication.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

lose track of; communicate with; keep in mind; stay in touch with; long for; make friends; thanks to; connect... with...

1. Thanks to your help, we finished the task in time.
2. I don't know how to communicate with strangers.
3. Keep in mind that the bank will be closed tomorrow.
4. A pedestrian bridge now connects the parking garage with the mall.
5. Helen is a very shy girl and it is not easy for her to make friends with others.
6. Freedom is perhaps what we all long for.
7. Stay in touch with those who matter to you.
8. We used to be friends, but lost track of each other afterwards.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. Whatever happens, you shouldn't lose heart.
   无论发生什么事，你都不要丧失信心。
2. It's up to you to decide whether we buy this set of furniture or not.
   由你决定我们是否买这套家具。
3. What if it rains tomorrow?
   倘若明天下雨将会怎样呢？
4. Even if you read English easily, you'll find it is another cup of tea to make conversations in English.
   即便你读起英语来很容易，你也会发现用英语进行对话是另一回事。
5. The way (that/in which) he teaches us in class is very interesting.
   他给我们上课的方式非常有趣。

Ⅳ. 完形填空

Little Barrett always wished he could fly like a bird. He often __1__ tried to find out why he couldn't—even the big birds heavier than him could enjoy freedom in the sky. His __2__ kept growing: "Is there anything wrong with me that stops me from flying?"

Another boy, Jacques, was crippled (跛脚的). He found it __3__ to take even a few steps, often feeling __4__ when he saw other kids run and laugh. He didn't __5__ sitting alone and hoped to improve his situation, but he didn't know how to.

One afternoon, Barrett met Jacques in the park. He ran over and asked if Jacques had ever dreamed of flying. "No," Jacques shook his head softly, "but I've always __6__ what it's like to run __7__." "Maybe one day you'll know that," said Barrett. Together, they played happily, building small sand houses for nearly an hour __8__ Jacques' dad, Mr Wilson, came with a wheelchair. Barrett, __9__ of his new friend's wish, whispered a plan to Mr Wilson, who __10__. Barrett knelt down, let Jacques climb on his back, and held Jacques' legs to keep a __11__. Then he started running fast across the grass.

Jacques waved his arms, yelling, "I'm flying, Daddy!" Mr Wilson's eyes turned wet. Well, true friendship is __12__ on what we can give __13__ what we can't do. We don't need to __14__ perfect things—small kindnesses are most __15__ to light up someone's day.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了渴望飞翔的 Barrett 帮助跛脚的 Jacques 实现奔跑的心愿的暖心故事，诠释了真正的友谊在于付出。

1. A. quietly　　B. anxiously
   C. carelessly　　D. bravely
   B　根据前文的"Little Barrett always wished he could fly like a bird."可知，Barrett 一心渴望飞翔，因此会急切地探寻自己不能飞的原因。故选 B。
2. A. concern　　B. joy
   C. anger　　D. surprise
   A　根据后文的"Is there anything wrong with me that stops me from flying?"可知，Barrett 因找不到自己不能飞的原因而心生疑虑和担忧。故选 A。
3. A. fun　　B. easy
   C. tough　　D. strange
   C　根据前文的"Another boy, Jacques, was crippled (跛脚的)."可知，Jacques 跛脚，所以走路对他来说是件艰难的事。故选 C。
4. A. tired　　B. excited
   C. satisfied　　D. trapped
   D　根据上文的"Another boy, Jacques, was crippled (跛脚的)."可知，Jacques 因跛脚无法像其他孩子一样奔跑，看着别人那么快乐，会觉得自己被身体状况束缚了。故选 D。
5. A. start　　B. prefer
   C. mind　　D. avoid
   B　根据后文的"hoped to improve his situation"可知，Jacques 不想一直处于独自坐着的状态。故选 B。

6. A. doubted　　B. decided
C. wondered　　D. feared
C　Jacques 因身体原因无法奔跑，所以内心一直对自由奔跑的感觉充满好奇，想一探究竟。故选 C。

7. A. highly　　B. curiously
C. sincerely　　D. freely
D　根据上文的“run and laugh”的状态，以及 Jacques 跛脚的遗憾，可知他渴望的是无拘无束、自由地奔跑。故选 D。

8. A. since　　B. until
C. while　　D. unless
B　根据语境，二人一起玩耍的动作持续到 Jacques 的爸爸到来才停止，until 引导时间状语从句。故选 B。

9. A. sure　　B. tired
C. proud　　D. aware
D　根据上文的“He ran over and asked if Jacques had ever dreamed of flying.”以及“but I've always 6 what it's like to run 7 ”可知，Jacques 向 Barrett 诉说想自由奔跑的心愿，可知 Barrett 清楚地知道对方的愿望。故选 D。

10. A. agreed　　B. refused
C. promised　　D. acted
A　根据后文的“Barrett knelt down, let Jacques climb on his back, and held Jacques' legs to keep a 11 .”可知，Barrett 背着 Jacques 奔跑起来，所以 Wilson 先生是认可并同意了这个计划的。故选 A。

11. A. weight　　B. secret
C. promise　　D. balance
D　根据前文的“held Jacques' legs”可知，Barrett 在背着 Jacques 奔跑时，扶住对方的腿是为了防止其摔落，保持身体的平衡。故选 D。

12. A. attracted　　B. spent
C. based　　D. put
C　真正的友谊的根基在于我们能给予的东西，而非我们力所不能及的事。be based on 为固定搭配，意为“以……为基础”，此处表示友谊的根基所在，符合语境。故选 C。

13. A. rather than　　B. because of
C. as well as　　D. in case of
A　前文的“what we can give”和后文的“what we can't do”形成对比，指友谊的根基是前者而非后者。故选 A。

14. A. look after　　B. search for
C. give up　　D. take away
B　根据前文 Barrett 用简单的方式满足 Jacques 的心愿可知，文章想表达的是，温暖的人不必追求完美的形式，不必刻意寻找完美的事物。故选 B。

15. A. likely　　B. ready
C. difficult　　D. impossible
A　通读全文可知，Barrett 的一个小小举动，就让 Jacques 感受到了奔跑的快乐。故事告诉我们，小小的善意往往能带来温暖，最有可能点亮他人的生活。故选 A。

Section Ⅲ　Using language

学习任务目标

1. Understand the structure and function of attributive clauses.
2. Learn to use relative pronouns such as *that*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *as* properly.
3. Be able to use attributive clauses to introduce your friends and describe your experiences in activities.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Since his parents died early, he had to earn his own living when he was a **teenager**.
青少年，十几岁的孩子(13 到 19 岁之间的孩子)

2. **Pour** the honey into the bowl and mix it thoroughly with water.　倒

3. You should put some water into the **pot** before adding the rice.　锅

4. A person should have at least 200 **grams** of fruit and vegetables every day.　克

5. We are still looking for someone who combines all the necessary **qualities**.　素质，品德

6. Let's **postpone** making a decision until we have more information.　使(事件、行动等)延期，推迟

7. The man went into the shop and bought a **pack** of gum which cost him 4 dollars. 小盒，小包
8. To keep slim, she only had a **slice** of bread for her breakfast. 片，薄片

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
inspiring *adj*. 鼓舞人心的，启发灵感的	inspire *v*. 鼓舞；激励
	inspiration *n*. 鼓舞；启示；灵感
comfort *n*. 安慰，慰藉	comfortable *adj*. 使人舒服的；舒适的；安逸的；自在的
patience *n*. 耐心	patient *adj*. 有耐心的 *n*. 病人
	patiently *adv*. 耐心地
passion *n*. 强烈的情感，激情	passionate *adj*. 热诚的；狂热的
generosity *n*. 慷慨，大方	generous *adj*. 慷慨的，大方的；宽宏大量的，仁慈的
humour *n*. 幽默感	humorous *adj*. 幽默的
anxious *adj*. 焦虑的，不安的	anxiously *adv*. 焦虑地
	anxiety *n*. 焦虑，忧虑；渴望
distance *v*. 使与……保持距离，撇清和……的关系	distant *adj*. 遥远的；冷漠的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. ask sb. for help 向某人寻求帮助
2. be open to 对……开放
3. feel down 感到沮丧，情绪消沉
4. come up 即将发生（或出现）；被提及；升起
5. mix... with... 把……和……混合
6. up to 高达
7. agree on sth. 对某事（物）有同样的看法，商定（同意）某事
8. at first 最初；首先
9. according to 根据

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：it 作形式主语
   At first it was difficult to communicate with her.
   起初和她交流很困难。
2. 句型公式：it 作形式宾语
   This makes it clear to the other person that you are giving them a choice.
   这能向其他人清楚地表明，你正在给他们一个选择。
3. 句型公式：How about...?
   How about sending him funny postcards from every place we visit?
   从我们参观的每一个地方寄给他有趣的明信片怎么样？

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. anxious *adj*. 焦虑的，不安的

[教材原文]the ability to wait without becoming **anxious** or angry
等待时不会变得焦虑或生气的能力
[归纳拓展]
(1) be anxious for sb./about sth. 为某人/某事担忧
be anxious to do sth. 渴望/急于做某事
be anxious for 渴望得到……
(2)anxiously *adv*. 焦急地，忧虑地
(3)anxiety *n*. 焦虑，忧虑；渴望
with anxiety 焦急地，忧虑地
[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①As is known to all, everyone is anxious for success.
②These students were anxious to know (know) the results of the exam.
③(2025 · 全国二卷) Getting to Shrewsbury Town Center from London is challenging but worth the anxiety (anxious).
(2)写作微练
(读后续写之心理描写)她**担心儿子的安全**，如坐针毡。
She was anxious about/for her son's safety, like being on pins and needles.

2. distance *v*. 使与……保持距离，撇清和……的关系 *n*. 距离

[教材原文]... use a past tense to **distance** yourself from the suggestion...
……用一个过去时态撇清你与这个建议的关系……
[归纳拓展]
(1)distance sb. from sth. 使某人远离某事，使某人撇清和某事的关系
(2)in the distance 在远方，在远处
from a distance 从远处；离一段距离
at a distance of 相距，在……远的地方

within walking distance 在步行距离之内

(3)distant *adj*. 遥远的;冷漠的

be distant from 离……遥远

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·浙江1月卷) To Eva, "a mile" was used to describe long distances (distant).

②I could enjoy the view of snowy mountains in the distance.

③The little girl was warned to keep her distance from the bad boy if she didn't want to get hurt.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之建议信)你也可以参观城市博物馆,**它在**你住的酒店**的步行距离之内**。

You can also visit the city museum, which is within walking distance of the hotel where you stay.

②(读后续写之场景描写)当她小心翼翼地沿着小溪走时,**一个熟悉的身影从远处朝她走了过来**。

As she picked her way carefully along the stream, a familiar figure came up to her from a distance.

语法研习课

关系代词引导的定语从句

◦语法感知

①The digital age also enables us to find people **who** share our interests, such as collecting model cars or playing an unusual instrument.

②On social media sites, people tend to post only positive updates **that** make them appear happy and friendly.

③Born in 476 BC, he came from a family **which** was very poor.

④Do you know the girl **whose** English is excellent?

⑤The woman (**whom**) you saw just now is our teacher.

⑥Nowadays, we can move around the world and still stay in touch with the people (**that**) we want to remain friends with.

1. 句①②③中,定语从句的关系词 who, that, which 是关系代词,均在定语从句中充当主语,不可省略。
2. 句④中,定语从句的关系词 whose 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当定语,不可省略。
3. 句⑤⑥中,定语从句的关系词 whom, that 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当宾语,可以省略。

名师点拨

定语从句、先行词、关系词的概念:

(1)在复合句中,修饰某一名词、代词或整个主句的从句叫作定语从句。

(2)被定语从句修饰的名词或代词叫作先行词。

(3)连接先行词和定语从句的词叫作关系词。关系词的主要作用是连接主句和从句,同时指代先行词,并在从句中充当一定的句子成分。关系词分为关系代词和关系副词两种。

◦语法精讲

一、关系代词的指代及功能

关系代词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
who	指人,在定语从句中作主语、宾语和表语	指人的名词
whom	指人,在定语从句中作宾语,可以省略也可用 who/that 代替	指人的名词
whose	指人或物,在定语从句中作定语,相当于"the+名词+of which/whom"和"of which/whom+the+名词"的形式	指人或物的名词
that	指人或物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语或表语,作宾语时可以省略	指人或物的名词
which	指物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语,作宾语时可以省略	指物的名词

There is a girl **who** wants to see you.

有个女孩想见你。

The old man **who/whom/that** you saw yesterday is a thinker.

你昨天见到的那位老人是一个思想家。

This is the scientist **whose** name is known all over the country.

→This is the scientist **the name of whom** is known all over the country.

这就是那位全国知名的科学家。

Please pass me the book **whose** cover is green.

→Please pass me the book **the cover of which** is green.

请递给我那本绿色封面的书。

Please find a room **which/that** is big enough for all of us to live in.

请找一间足够住下我们所有人的房间。

This is the house（**which/that**） we bought last month.

这是我们上个月买的那幢房子。

二、限制性定语从句中，关系代词用 that 不用 which 的情况

1. 当先行词为 all，everything，nothing，anything，little，much 等不定代词或先行词被这些词修饰时；

Can you give me anything **that** has no sugar inside?

能不能给我一些里面没有糖的东西？

2. 当先行词是序数词、形容词最高级或先行词被序数词、形容词最高级修饰时；

This is the first two-storey bus **that** runs in our city.

这是运行于我市的第一辆双层公交车。

Guilin is the most beautiful city **that** I have ever visited.

桂林是我游览过的最美丽的城市。

3. 当先行词被 the only，the very，the same，the right 等修饰时；

This is the very scarf **that** Mother has been looking for.

这就是妈妈一直在找的那条围巾。

4. 当先行词既有人又有物时；

Can you tell me the people and events **that** you saw in Britain?

你能告诉我你在英国见到的人和事吗？

5. 当先行词在定语从句中作表语时；

Shanghai is no longer the city **that** it used to be.

上海已不是过去那个样子了。

6. 当主语是以 which 开头的特殊疑问句时。

Which are the books **that** you bought for me?

哪些是你为我买的书？

三、关系代词用 which 不用 that 的情况

1. 在定语从句中作介词的宾语，且介词位于关系代词前时；

This is the room in **which** he lives.

这是他住的房间。

2. 引导非限制性定语从句时；

Tom came back，**which** made us very happy.

汤姆回来了，这使我们很高兴。

3. 在限制性定语从句中，如果有两个定语从句，其中前一句的关系代词是 that，那么后一句的关系代词就要用 which。

Let me show you the novel **that** I borrowed from the library **which** was newly opened.

让我给你看看那本我从新开业的图书馆借来的小说。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. The first thing that he did after arriving home was doing his homework.

2. My father bought a new bike for me whose price added up to more than 1,000 *yuan*.

3. Anyone who has helped to save the drowning girl is worth praising.

4. Do you still remember the chicken farm that/which we visited three months ago?

5. All that we need is enough rest after long hours' work.

6. On the train I saw a girl who/that I thought was your sister.

7. I wish to thank Professor Brown，without whose help I would never have got this.

8. I missed the teachers and the kindergarten that my parents thought highly of.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. I do have a few suggestions which/that you should pay attention to.

我的确有几条建议需要你注意。

2. The old man whom/who/that they are waiting for is Professor Li.

他们正在等的那位老人是李教授。

3. In senior high school you will study more courses which/that are different from your junior high school courses.

在高中，你将学习更多不同于初中的课程。

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十五）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

in comfort; at a distance of; anxious; patient; passion; teenager; inspiring; quality

1. The sound of the waterfall can be heard at a distance of two miles.
2. They are collected from the airport upon arrival and brought to their accommodation in comfort.
3. Sue was anxious about her son because it was the first time that he had lived abroad alone.
4. What inspiring news this is!
5. We would like to thank them for their patience and understanding.
6. The few hours I spent in the library had brought back my passion for reading.
7. Nowadays most teenagers find it interesting to read books.
8. I'm not sure whether the shirt is of good quality, but I'll buy one online anyhow.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. No matter how beautiful the product looks, if it's of poor quality, it won't sell well.
2. The rain poured down, so he abandoned the idea of jogging outside.
3. The parents suggested sleeping in the hotel room but their children were anxious to camp (camp) out during the trip.
4. It's suitable that you should have a sense of humour.
5. It is generous of you to lend (lend) your portable computer to me.
6. I'm very familiar with the history of my home city, and have a passion for history.
7. It is a great comfort to patients to be close to their beloved ones.
8. Whenever I made mistakes, the teacher pointed them out with patience.
9. They had purposely postponed going (go) to London till the autumn.
10. She prefers to distance herself from the people who are working for her.

Ⅲ. 用适当的关系词填空

1. When the girl studied in England, she lived with a host family whose members always helped her.
2. The man is talking about the teachers and things that encouraged him greatly in school.
3. The man who/that is talking with my father is a policeman.
4. The professor who/that/whom you wish to see has gone abroad.
5. Do you have anything that is important to tell me?
6. A shop should keep a stock (储备物) of those goods which/that sell best.
7. Please send us all the information that you have about the interviewees for the position.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Growing up with some movies about youth, which presented the ideal (理想的) high school friendships, we sometimes expect a perfect relationship. Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.

"I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped contacting them after high school," said Elisha, Class of 2020.

Most teens have not realised the big question when dealing with high school problems. In five years, will this still matter? It is hard looking at the big picture when the problems are in front of you, which is understandable. However, most teens need

a moment to reflect（反思）and question if the problem matters in a long time.

Briana, a high school teacher, said, "Now, I am in contact with two high school friends. I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be open-minded and befriend all kinds of people. I learned to see people for who they are, not what they wear or who they play with. I learned most of all how to be a good friend."

High school is a small part of your life, but it has a huge influence on who you will become and where you will go. Friendships and relationships help shape who you are, whether they are good or bad. Lessons are brought, and lessons are learned.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了高中时期的友谊会塑造青少年。

1. Why did the author mention some movies about youth in the first paragraph?

A. To introduce the topic of the passage.

B. To explain what a high school friendship is.

C. To recommend the two movies to readers.

D. To attract readers' attention to the two movies.

A　推理判断题。根据第一段中的"Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school."以及下文对高中友谊的论述可推知，第一段提到关于青春的电影是为了引出本文的主题——高中的友谊塑造了青少年。故选A。

2. What did Elisha think of her "friends"?

A. They made her unhappy.

B. They cared about her behaviour.

C. They got along well with her.

D. They were always worried about her.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段Elisha所说的话"I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped contacting them after high school..."可知，Elisha认为她的"朋友"让她不开心。故选A。

3. Why did Briana think her friendship experiences shape her?

A. She learned to play with her friends.

B. She learned to make different friends.

C. She learned to shape her friends' minds.

D. She learned to wear just like her friends.

B　细节理解题。根据倒数第二段Briana所说的话"I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be open-minded and befriend all kinds of people."可知，Briana认为她的友谊塑造了她，是因为她学会了与各种各样的人交朋友。故选B。

4. What's the passage mainly about?

A. Failed friendships make teens worried.

B. Good friendships greatly influence teens.

C. High school friendships help to shape teens.

D. Friendships are difficult for teens to deal with.

C　主旨大意题。根据文章的主要内容，尤其是第一段中的"Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school."和最后一段的内容可知，本文主要论述了高中的友谊能够塑造青少年，无论好坏。故选C。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea and specific information of the story.
2. Learn about the elements of a story and analyse the personalities of the characters.
3. Predict a possible ending and find evidence to support your ideas.
4. Establish a correct view of friendship.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She managed to **drag** the single bed to her bedroom. 拖,拉
2. Find a **partner** and practise these new dance steps. 伙伴,搭档
3. The man **struck** a match and made a fire in the cave. 划(火柴)
4. **Plain** and simple clothes are appropriate for school wear. 朴素的
5. I like that restaurant because it has a relaxing **atmosphere**. 气氛,氛围,环境
6. Strange things sometimes happen to **ordinary** people. 普通的
7. He complained **bitterly** that he had been unfairly treated. 痛苦地,愤恨地

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
fortune *n*. 大笔的钱,巨款	fortunate *adj*. 幸运的
	fortunately *adv*. 幸运地
correspond *v*. 通信	correspondence *n*. 通信联系;往来书信
	corresponding *adj*. 符合的,相应的,相关的
appointed *adj*. 约定的,指定的	appoint *v*. 安排,确定(时间、地点);任命,委派
	appointment *n*. 预约,约定;任命,委派
location *n*. 地点,位置	locate *v*. 找出……的准确位置;确定……的准确地点;把……安置在(或建造于)
	located *adj*. 位于……的,坐落在
scene *n*. 场景	scenery *n*. 风景,景色
	scenic *adj*. 景色优美的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. be set in 以……为背景
2. start for 出发去
3. make one's fortune 发财
4. ought to 应该,应当
5. hear from 收到……的来信
6. turn up (意外地或终于)出现
7. be ashamed of 为……感到羞耻
8. long for 渴望
9. work out 计算出;解决;锻炼身体;成功地发展
10. come up with 提出,想出(计划、想法等);追赶上

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语
   The next morning I was to start for the West to make my fortune.
   第二天一早我就要出发去西部赚大钱了。
2. 句型公式:"have sth. done"结构
   We figured that in twenty years each of us ought to have our destiny worked out and our fortunes made, whatever they were going to be.
   我们当时觉得,不管要做什么,二十年的时间足够自己找到出路、赚到钱。
3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语
   Stepping out of jail into the cold wind, Bob, now 58, felt lost and helpless.
   从监狱出来走进寒风中,现年58岁的鲍勃感到茫然无助。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text

AFTER TWENTY YEARS

- Setting ⇨
  - Place: the story is set in 1. New York outside a shop.
  - Time: on a cold, dark 2. night.
- Characters ⇨
  - A policeman.
  - A man who has a scar on his face and 3. Jimmy Wells, the man's friend.
- Plot ⇨
  - The policeman had a 4. chat with the man. The man told that he promised to meet his 5. chum there again exactly twenty years later.

○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the writer's purpose in writing this text?
   A. To change people's usual impression of friendship.
   B. To tell us how difficult it is to meet a person.
   C. To warn us not to be late for meeting friends.
   D. To show the friendship between the two former friends.
2. What was the policeman doing when seeing a man?
   A. Searching for a criminal.
   B. Going on a patrol (巡逻).
   C. Dealing with an urgent thing.
   D. Helping the man in need.
3. What promise did Jimmy and the man make before they parted?
   A. Making a large fortune.
   B. Working out their destiny.
   C. Meeting again at the same place.
   D. Not giving up the hope of living.
4. What do we know about Jimmy?
   A. He had a special feeling for New York.
   B. He didn't know other places in the world.
   C. He wanted to live a meaningful life alone.
   D. He had no idea of what his future would be like.

答案：1～4 DBCA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But I know Jimmy will meet me here if he's alive, for he always was the truest, staunchest old chap in the world.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。for 是并列连词，意为"因为"。第一个分句是主从复合句，I know Jimmy will meet me here 是主句，其中包含一个省略了 that 的宾语从句；if 引导条件状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]但是我知道，只要吉米还活着，他就会来这里和我见面，因为他一直是这世界上最真诚、最可靠的老伙计。
2. I came a thousand miles to stand in this door tonight, and it's worth it if my old partner turns up.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。在 and 前的分句中，to stand in this door tonight 为不定式短语作目的状语；在 and 后的分句中，if 引导条件状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]今晚，我从千里之外赶来站在这扇门前，只要我的老朋友出现，这一切就都是值得的。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What did the man experience in the past twenty years?
   He kept hustling around over the West pretty lively.
2. Do you know the end of the story?
   Yes. The policeman was Jimmy. He came for the appointment, but arrested his friend eventually.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. ashamed *adj*. 感到不好意思的，难为情的；羞耻的，惭愧的

[教材原文] Was he **ashamed** of having a friend like me?
他为有我这样的朋友感到耻辱吗？

[归纳拓展]
(1)be/feel ashamed of (doing) sth. 对(做)某事感到不好意思/难为情/惭愧/羞耻
(2)shame *n*. 惭愧，羞耻，羞愧 *v*. 使蒙羞，使惭愧
It's a shame.../What a shame... 真遗憾/多可惜……
(3)shameful *adj*. (行为)可耻的；不道德的

名师点拨
ashamed 指人感到羞耻、惭愧、不好意思；shameful 指事情或行为本身可耻、不道德。

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①It's shameful (shame) how some people take advantage of others' kindness and generosity.
②We are often ashamed of our shortcomings, our mistakes and our failures.
(2)写作微练
①(应用文写作之道歉信)**令人遗憾的是**，由于一位不速之客的到来，我本周六不能和你一起欣赏早春的美景了。
It's a shame/What a shame that I can't enjoy the beautiful scenery of early spring with you this Saturday because of an unexpected visitor.
②(读后续写之心理描写)我**是如此羞愧，以致**我感觉心如刀绞，泪水模糊了我的双眼。
I was so ashamed that I felt as if a knife were being twisted in my heart, tears clouding my eyes.

2. surroundings *n*. 周围的事物，环境

[教材原文] Settings: time, location and descriptions of the environment or **surroundings** help your readers picture the scene.
背景：时间、地点以及对环境或周围事物的描述有助于你的读者设想场景。

[归纳拓展]
(1)surround *v*. 环绕，围绕；包围
surround... with... 用……包围/围绕……
be surrounded by/with... 被……包围/围绕
(2)surrounding *adj*. 附近的；四周的

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷) In addition, there's no need for pesticides and other chemicals that pollute traditional farms and the surrounding (surround) environment.
②To create cleaner surroundings (surround), everyone is banned from littering everywhere.
③(2025·全国二卷) If you're among the groups of people who are enjoying the mental and physical health benefits of surrounding yourself with plants, don't beat yourself up if one (or a few!) doesn't make it.
(2)写作微练
(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动分享)我选择画一幅风景画，画的亮点是一片宁静的湖泊，湖泊**周围是五彩缤纷的花和绿树**。
I chose to paint a landscape featuring a calm lake which was surrounded by colourful flowers and green trees.
→I chose to paint a landscape featuring a calm lake surrounded by colourful flowers and green trees.

3. "have sth. done"结构

[教材原文] We figured that in twenty years each of us ought to **have our destiny worked out and our fortunes made**, whatever they were going to be.
我们当时觉得，不管要做什么，二十年的时间足够自己找到出路、赚到钱。

[句式分析] "have sth. done"结构是"have＋宾语＋宾语补足语"结构的形式之一，意为"使某事被做"，还可以表示"遭受/经历某种不幸的事"(此事违背主语的意愿)。

[归纳拓展]
"have＋宾语＋宾语补足语"结构的其他形式：
(1)have sb. do sth. 让某人做某事
(2)have sb. doing sth. 让某人一直做某事(强调动作一直在持续)

名师点拨
have sth. to do 意为"有某事要做"，to do 作定语，修饰前面的名词，不定式的动作由主语发出，表示被动意义。
I **have a lot of things to do** today.
今天我有很多事要做。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) I sometimes call him back, worried that he might have someone scared (scare).

②The manager had her assistant buy (buy) some hot dogs for the meeting.

③How could you have her standing (stand) in the cold all night?

④I have a composition to write (write), so I can't go out with you.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之道歉信)如果我早知道的话，我就会**让别人检查我的报告**以避免错误。

If I had known earlier, I would have had my report checked by someone else to avoid mistakes.

多义词汇 专练

1. strike

A. *vt*. 击，打

B. *vt*. 使突然想起

C. *vi*. 罢工

D. *vt*. (灾难、疾病等)袭击

E. *vt*. 划(火柴)

F. *vi*. (钟)敲

①When I entered the room, the clock had just **struck**. F

②As an old saying goes, "**Strike** the iron while it's hot." You'd better go over what you have learned as soon as possible. A

③The girl **struck** a match and the warm light filled the room immediately. E

④They have been **striking** for several days to get a higher pay. C

⑤A big earthquake **struck** the area last week, which then caused a terrible tsunami. D

⑥It **strikes** me that there is no one in the office. B

2. The burning of fossil fuels results in the pollution of the **atmosphere**. C

A. *n*. 气氛，氛围　　B. *n*. 魅力

C. *n*. 大气(层)

3. plain

A. *adj*. 清楚的　B. *adj*. 坦率的　C. *adj*. 朴素的　D. *adj*. 普通的

①You don't need any special skills for this job, just **plain** common sense. D

②He made it **plain** that we should leave. A

③He is a politician with a reputation for **plain** speaking. B

④**Plain** and simple clothes are appropriate for school wear. C

Unit 4 课后素养评价（十六）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. I differ with my partner (伙伴) sometimes but we usually agree.

2. I wonder whether he is corresponding (通信) with his pen friend.

3. Unfortunately, the illness can lead to changes in personality (性格).

4. A new chapter in a novel is something like a new scene (场景) in a play.

5. The atmosphere (气氛) at lunch was relaxed.

6. Now cars have entered into ordinary (普通的) families.

7. It suddenly struck (突然想起) me that we ought to make a new plan.

8. I'm ashamed (难为情的) to tell my parents that I failed the test.

9. These houses which are in a really good location (位置) cost a lot of money.

10. Appreciate your surroundings (环境) and live a life as wonderful as you can.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. The old man watched the volunteers helping the people surrounded (surround) by the flood, feeling excited.

2. A disabled woman is attended throughout her schooldays by a nurse appointed (appoint) to look after her.

3. In the ordinary way, she's not a nervous person.

4. Located (locate) in Paris, it is one of the world's largest art galleries.
5. You'll never know unless you ask the organiser on the scene.
6. Last month, part of Southeast Asia was struck (strike) by floods, whose effects people are still suffering from.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

work out; turn up; make a fortune; hear from; ought to; on earth

1. Do you think that he didn't turn up by accident or by design?
2. Have you heard from Jane since she moved to Beijing?
3. He determined to making a fortune on Wall Street.
4. After they discussed for several days, they finally worked out a new plan.
5. What on earth did you tell her? The expression on her face suggested that she was more than angry.
6. We ought to work hard to turn our dream into a reality when we are young.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. But for the encouraging cheers from the audience, our team couldn't have won such an important match.
   要不是观众们鼓励的欢呼,我们队不可能赢得这么重要的比赛。
2. To get more information, you can visit our website.
   想获取更多信息,你可以访问我们的网站。
3. Whatever/No matter what happens, I will always carry this joy with me.
   不管发生什么,我都会让这份快乐一直伴随着自己。
4. Unfortunately, he had his right leg injured during the training.
   不幸的是,他在训练中把右腿弄伤了。
5. His new book based on a true story is to be published next week.
   他的新书以真实的故事为蓝本,将于下周出版。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

1. Making (make) friends is a key part of our life. Everyone needs friends. Friends can make us happy and help us get through difficult times. How can we make good friends?

First, we should be honest. We must tell the truth to our friends, and never cheat them. Second, we should listen to them carefully when they talk to us. Sometimes friends just need someone **2.** to listen (listen) to them. Third, we should share our joy and **3.** sadness (sad) with them. If our friends are in trouble, we should try our best to help them.

A true friend is someone **4.** who is always there for you, no matter what happens. **5.** In addition, we should respect our friends' choices and opinions. Even if we don't agree with them, we shouldn't argue with them **6.** angrily (angry).

What's more, trust is **7.** an important part of friendship. If we trust each other, we **8.** will communicate (communicate) with each other comfortably. Last but not least, we should be grateful to our friends for **9.** supporting (support) us all the time.

In short, if we follow these rules, we will have many good friends and our life will be **10.** more colourful (colourful) than before.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华。最近,你的好友鲍勃(Bob)来信说他升入高中以后感到不太适应,不知道如何结交新朋友。请你用英语给他回一封信,提出一些建议:

1. 与人交往时要面带微笑,对他人态度友好;
2. 关心同学,乐于助人;
3. 积极参加班级活动并展示自己的才能。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:才能 talent

Dear Bob,

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Bob,

I'm glad to receive your letter. From your letter, I know you have problems making new

friends in high school. The following are my suggestions.

First, you should smile and try to be friendly when you meet people. That way, when people are with you, they will feel comfortable and happy. Second, you should also care about your schoolmates. If you are always ready to help them, they will understand you better. Finally, it is better for you to take an active part in class activities where you can show your talent.

I hope my advice will be helpful to you. May you be happy in your new school.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

During my school years, I had only one close friend. We spent years together, and we were inseparable, in or out of school. But then Greg moved away, and I never thought it would take more than 40 years to bring us together again.

As children, Greg and I dove into everything with passion. At that time, we were pure（纯真的）and kind, full of curiosity and expectation for life. We raced our bikes and illustrated（给书加插图）our own comic books. We have a lot of fun and beautiful memories.

The last time I saw Greg was sometime in 1966. It was so short a meeting that I couldn't recall saying goodbye before he moved. Since then, we lost touch.

But then, a few summers ago, I saw a familiar woman. "Excuse me. Would your name happen to be Joanne?"

"Uh, yes..." She didn't recognise me until I explained who I was. We hadn't exchanged more than a few dozen words in our entire lifetime. "Have you stayed in touch with Greg?" she asked. I was surprised she even knew of our friendship.

"No, I haven't," I admitted. "I wish I had."

Back at the office I checked my messages. I glanced at one email, and then read it from start to finish. The email was from Greg.

Greg had tracked me down through social media. He was married, had two children and had become a musician and entrepreneur（企业家）. We exchanged several emails before connecting by phone. A month later, my wife and I drove to meet Greg and his family in person.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Standing in front of his house, I began to get nervous. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Seeing the photo, Greg handed me a small, old card. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

Standing in front of his house, I began to get nervous. I didn't know what to say or do. So much time had passed and a lot of memories seemed to have been blurred. But after hugs and introductions, the years dissolved as we exchanged stories about our lives. I had brought along the only picture I could find containing the two of us from my sixth birthday. The picture is a witness to our friendship in the past.

Seeing the photo, Greg handed me a small, old card. It was written "Greg's invitation to my sixth birthday party", signed "From Donnie" in faded blue crayon. Although the card had turned yellow, it could be seen that he kept it carefully for many years. There were a few other things shared that evening, but none as meaningful as the invitation and the picture. They were stored apart but saved for the reunion of two old friends. True friendship does not fade with time.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 如何写故事结尾

○写作指导

本单元的写作任务是写一则故事的结尾，属于读后续写的范畴。文章多为情节丰富的小故事，趣味性和逻辑性较强。

1. 在读懂原文的基础上，紧扣原文中心，以原文的结局为起点，写出故事情节的发展和变化。
2. 对原文故事没有写出的情节展开合理的推理，打开思路。多角度地想象出几种情况或结局，并从中进行最优选择。
3. 要注意前后照应，符合逻辑，防止自相矛盾。结局与上文紧密联系，使上下文融为一体。
4. 原文的主要角色在续文中都要出现，但不要加入影响事件结局的新角色。

   注意确保四个一致：

   (1)要与原文的主题或作者的本来意图保持一致；

   (2)要与原文的体裁、结构、写作手法保持一致；

   (3)要与原文的语言特点和叙事风格保持一致；

   (4)主要人物的思想行为、性格特点要与原文保持一致。

○典题示例

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jenny was the only child in her family. She had a quarrel with her mother that afternoon and she ran out of the house angrily. She couldn't help weeping sorrowfully when she thought of the scolding from her mother. Having wandered aimlessly in the street for hours, she felt a little hungry and wished for something to eat. She stood beside a stand for a while, watching the middle-aged seller busy doing his business. However, with no money in hand, she gave a sigh and had to leave.

The seller behind the stand noticed the young girl and asked, "Hey, girl, would you like some noodles?"

"Oh, yes, but I don't have money," she replied.

"That's OK. I'll treat you today," said the man. "Come in."

The seller brought her a bowl of noodles, the smell so attractive. While she was eating, Jenny cried silently.

"What is it?" asked the man kindly.

"Actually I was just touched by your kindness!" said Jenny as she wiped her tears. "I just had a quarrel with my mum. And I have nowhere to go."

Hearing the words, the seller smiled, "Girl, I only gave you a bowl of noodles and you thanked me a lot. But it is your mother who has raised you since you were a baby. And she is the one who loves you most in the world."

Jenny sat there, speechless and numb with shock; she remembered her mother's familiar face and weathered hands. "Why didn't I think of that? A bowl of noodles from a stranger made me feel indebted. Why haven't I thanked my mum for what she has done for me?"

On the way home, Jenny made up her mind to make an apology to her mother for her rudeness as soon as she arrived home.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Approaching the doorway, _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back.

_____

_____

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 珍妮到家门口后的情景 2. 珍妮向妈妈道歉，母女俩相互原谅的过程

Step 2：要点补全

①When she knocked at the door, she found the door locked（她发现门锁着）and her mother out.

②Tired and sad（又累又难过）, she sat down in front of the house.

③Is she really so angry with me that（很生我的气以至于）she doesn't want to take care of me?

④Again, the scene of the quarrel（争吵的情景）appeared in her mind.

⑤The tears rolled down（滚落了下来）.

⑥Jenny couldn't help hugging（禁不住抱住）her mother tightly.

Step 3：句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句①升级为含有现在分词短语作状语的句子

When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out.

②将 Step 2 中句⑤升级为完全倒装句

Down rolled the tears.

Step 4：连句成篇

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep breath. When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out. Tired and sad, she sat down in front of the house. "Where might my mother be?" she wondered. "Is she really so angry with me that she doesn't want to take care of me?" Again, the scene of the quarrel appeared in her mind. She remembered her rudeness to her mother, and she just realised that all the scolding from her mother was because her mother really cared a lot about her. Down rolled the tears.

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. She raised her head to see the familiar face and the worried eyes. "Here you come! I've been looking for you," came the tired voice. Jenny couldn't help hugging her mother tightly. "I'm sorry and thank you for all you have done for me." She expressed her sincere apology and gratitude to her mother. Then she felt the hug tightened.

○学以致用

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

There was a rich couple who was throwing a big new year party at their house. So they went shopping at the market where everything was of high cost and fixed price. After purchasing everything they needed, they called a porter to carry everything and drop it off at their home. The porter who came was of an old age, not very healthy-looking. His clothes were torn and he looked as if he wasn't even able to meet his daily needs.

They asked the porter about the charges for delivering their goods at their home. The old porter quoted just 20 dollars, a price well below the market rate for delivering goods at the couple's home in his cart. Yet the couple argued and bargained with the porter and finally settled for 15 dollars. The porter was struggling to make money for every single meal so he needed anything he could earn.

The couple was very happy thinking how well they bargained with the poor porter and paid him 15 dollars in advance and left after giving the porter their address for delivery. They reached their home and one hour passed, two hours passed, but the porter still hadn't delivered their stuff.

The wife started to get angry at her husband, "I always tell you not to trust such a person but you never listen to me. Such a person is not even able to earn to feed himself for one time in a day, and you handed him everything we purchased for our big party. I am sure instead of delivering at our home, he must have disappeared with everything. We must immediately go back to the market to inquire and then to the police station to file the complaint against him."

They both left towards the market. On their way, near the market, they saw another porter. They stopped him to inquire about the old porter and noticed that he was carrying their stuff in his cart!

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

The angry wife asked him, "Where is that old thief? This is our stuff." _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Upon hearing this, the husband had tears in his eyes and turned to his wife. _____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

The angry wife asked him, "Where is that old thief? This is our stuff." The porter replied, "Madam, please calm down. That poor old man was sick since last month. He wasn't able to earn enough to even have a single meal of the day. He was on the way to deliver your stuff, but he, who was hungry and sick, couldn't gather the strength to go any further in this heat of the noon. He fell down and he handed me 15 dollars. His last words were, 'I had taken an advance for this delivery, you take this and please deliver it to this address.'"

Upon hearing this, the husband had tears in his eyes and turned to his wife. "He was hungry, he was poor, but he was an honest man," the husband said. The wife felt quite ashamed that she was angry with her husband's decision. She had no courage to look her husband in the eye. Suddenly it dawned on her that honesty has no class. Respect everyone regardless of their financial and social status. It's always a good deed to give the one who deserves.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

Missy was absolutely my best friend in the whole world. We had known each other since first grade, and we literally did everything together. We frequently visited each other's homes, and we knew each other's families like they were our own. The interesting thing about our relationship, however, was that the older we got, the more our values seemed to differ. We still enjoyed a lot of the same things, but I was a bit more settled while she loved being associated with popular people and things. Although she was basically a good person, she had no problem with forcing things to go her way.

Perhaps this is why it seemed that her family actually trusted me more than they trusted her. So, on the day when Missy showed up at my house with a huge dent (凹痕) in her father's car, I knew that we were in for a troublesome time.

She had banged the car into a tree while out that day, and she knew her father was going to have an explanation. So she stopped by my house in order to make up a story that would lessen her father's rage. Missy decided to tell him that while in a parking lot, someone must have backed into the car and dented it. Looking at the dent with some crushed leaves and bark still sticking there, I attempted to perish (打消) her thought. "I don't think your father will buy it." "Don't worry," she insisted. "Even if my dad doesn't trust me, he'll trust you." My role was to confirm for her. Now keep in mind that I had strong objections to lying and I wanted absolutely nothing to do with the situation. I loved her parents just like my own, and I did not want to be a party to this lie that Missy was creating. Nevertheless, after much request and a general questioning of my loyalty to our friendship, I decided that the least I could do was to act as a silent witness. That way, I wasn't actually lying; I just wasn't telling the full truth.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

An hour or so later, we presented Missy's father with the car and the inquiry began. _____

_____

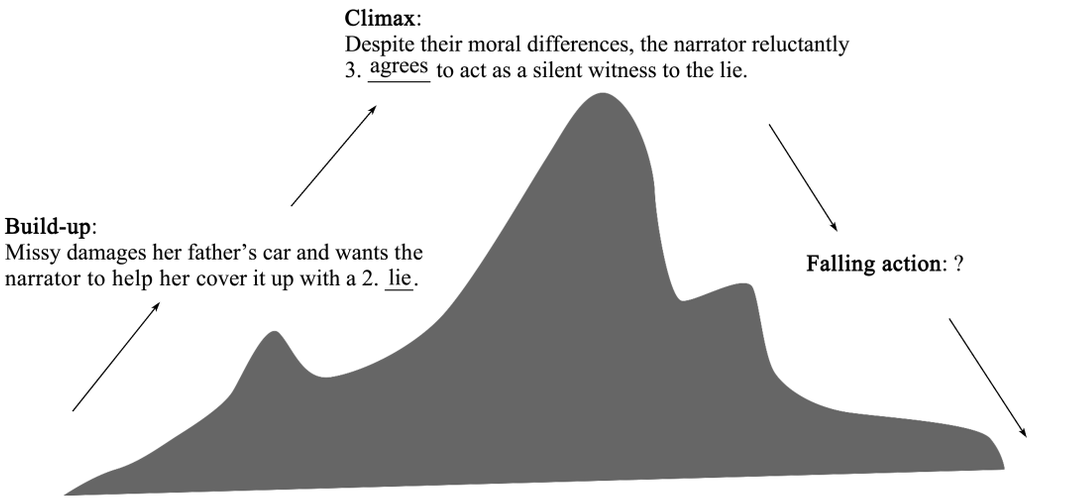
_____

_____

_____

Her father looked at me with great disbelief. _____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： An hour or so later, we presented Missy's father with the car and the inquiry began. _____	**1.** What did Missy's father ask? Missy's father asked the reason why the car was damaged. **2.** What did Missy do? Missy lied to her father and made up a story to cover the truth. **3.** What could happen to fit the following prompt? Missy's father would find that pieces of bark from the tree that Missy had hit fell out.
Paragraph 2： Her father looked at me with great disbelief. _____	**1.** Why did Missy's father show great disbelief? Because he found the evidence that the car hit the tree and was damaged. **2.** How did Missy's father feel? Missy's father was disappointed in Missy and the narrator. **3.** What is the main theme? Never tell lies and cover the truth, even for the sake of friendship.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. Under a barrage of inquiries Missy recapped her concocted story unhurriedly, while I stood there in silent agreement（沉默地附和着）.

2. After Missy finished her seemingly perfect statement, her father raised his eyebrows（挑了挑眉）and turned to me（转向我）, waiting for my proof.

3. However, once again（再次）, I chose silence under his scrutinizing eyes with my heart pounding violently（心狂跳不止）.

4. Suddenly, he walked over to the dented area for a closer inspection（凑近仔细查看）.

5. It was at that point（就是在那一刻）that pieces of bark from the tree that Missy had hit fell out.

6. An enormous sense of guilt（一股强烈的愧疚感）rose up in me as his cold eyes seemed to proclaim me the "guilty" bystander.

7. I was so flustered that I wanted to explain but was interrupted by（被打断）his harsh words, "You guys really failed me! Especially..."

8. Instead of continuing his reproach, he took a deep breath（深呼吸）and turned his back on me.

9. It dawned on me that the precious but fragile trust（珍贵又脆弱的信任）had been smashed by my silence.

10. In fact, the process of（……的过程）how we apologised to make amends was just a blur, but the bitter lesson of being a silent accomplice was branded on my memory.

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

【参考范文】

An hour or so later, we presented Missy's father with the car and the inquiry began. Under a barrage of inquiries Missy recapped her concocted story unhurriedly, while I stood there in silent agreement. After Missy finished her seemingly perfect statement, her father raised his eyebrows and turned to me, waiting for my proof. However, once again, I chose silence under his scrutinizing eyes with my heart pounding violently. Suddenly, he walked over to the dented area for a closer inspection. It was at that point that pieces of bark from the tree that Missy had hit fell out.

Her father looked at me with great disbelief. An enormous sense of guilt rose up in me as his cold eyes seemed to proclaim me the "guilty" bystander. I was so flustered that I wanted to explain but was interrupted by his harsh words, "You guys really failed me! Especially..." Instead of continuing his reproach, he took a deep breath and turned his back on me. It dawned on me that the precious but fragile trust had been smashed by my silence. In fact, the process of how we apologised to make amends was just a blur, but the bitter lesson of being a silent accomplice was branded on my memory.

单元质量评估(四)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Four Popular Children's Books

Qué Cosas Dice Mi Abuela!

Spanish-speaking parents will love this fun book—which is translated into "The things my grandmother says"—in which a grandmother teaches manners（规矩）to her grandchildren and their friends using traditional Spanish-language sayings. Written in the voice of a little boy talking about his regular day, this book will draw the interest of both adults and kids.

I Like Myself!

Parents won't mind reading the story over and over to their kids because they pass along the message that their kids are perfect just the way they are—no matter their untidy hair, or whether they are fast or slow, their kids will learn about confidence.

Dragons Love Tacos

While books with a deep message are great, sometimes you and your child just want to read something silly to get the laughs rolling. *Dragons Love Tacos* is a great read for kids and parents as it talks about how much dragons really love tacos, but when they eat something spicy（辛辣的）you had better watch out! The book has more words than some of the other picks on our list, so this might be fit for preschoolers and up.

Ten Little Fingers and Ten Little Toes

As everyone knows, nothing is sweeter than small baby fingers and cute baby toes. And here, from two of the most gifted picture books' creators, readers could enjoy a different joyful world and also bring the happy feelings to everyone, everywhere, all over the world!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四本受欢迎的儿童读物的相关信息。

1. Who will choose the first book?

A. Parents who want to make their children laugh.

B. Parents who want their children to become polite.

C. Parents who want their children to become more confident.

D. Parents who want their children to read special stories.

B　细节理解题。根据 *Qué Cosas Dice Mi Abuela!* 部分中的"Spanish-speaking parents will love this fun book—which is translated into 'The things my grandmother says'—in which a grandmother teaches manners（规矩）to her grandchildren and their friends using traditional Spanish-language sayings."可知，希望孩子变得有礼貌的父母会选择第一本书。故选 B。

2. Why will parents like to read *I Like Myself!* to kids many times?

A. It has more words than other books.

B. It encourages kids to be confident.

C. There are some beautiful pictures in it.

D. It contains many funny games for kids.

B　推理判断题。根据 *I Like Myself!* 部分中的"because they pass along the message that their kids are perfect just the way they are—no matter their untidy hair, or whether they are fast or slow, their kids will learn about confidence."可知，父母喜欢多次给孩子读 *I Like Myself!* 是因为它鼓励孩子们变得自信。故选 B。

3. Which of the books will Tom choose if he's interested in animals?

A. *Qué Cosas Dice Mi Abuela!*

B. *I Like Myself!*

C. *Dragons Love Tacos*

D. *Ten Little Fingers and Ten Little Toes*

C　推理判断题。根据 *Dragons Love Tacos* 部分中的"*Dragons Love Tacos* is a great read for kids and parents as it talks about how much dragons really love tacos, but when they eat something spicy（辛辣的）you had better watch out!"可知，*Dragons Love Tacos* 这本书讲了关于龙的事情，因此如果 Tom 对动物感兴趣，他会选这本书。故选 C。

B

Alya Mono entered my life many years ago while living in Delhi. Our fathers were close friends, and by some quiet magic, we became friends too. We spent much time together, exchanging thoughts on culture, politics, education, and everything in between. Before she left for Kyrgyzstan, we—Gen Z kids—didn't know when we'd meet next.

Two years passed without contact. Then, by pure chance and surprise, I visited her in the summer of 2025. Bishkek greeted me with fresh air and familiar warmth, but the day I spent with Alya transformed the place from just another destination to something more. Our families had first reunited in the mountains, where Alya and I shared an exciting horse-riding experience—one that brought us even closer. Later, she invited me to spend the day with her and two of her friends over lunch and a visit to the national museum.

One of the girls was from Belarus, the other from Kyrgyzstan. We talked about everything—from the weather and food to shared fears and the common feeling of post-soviet identity. We ended up bonding over cheesecakes, exchanging stories about our cultures, and were surprised at how easily we connected. It felt like the world had turned into one café table: four women, four lives, one day of open-hearted exchange. The landscape outside mirrored what I felt inside: unfamiliar, but grounding.

That day reminded me how rare it is to pick up right where you left off. No awkwardness, no catching up required, just presence. Alya and I didn't just reunite; we rediscovered a bond made of shared silences, life curiosity, and that rare ease you don't find twice.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者偶然与失联两年的好友 Alya 在比什凯克重逢。她们与朋友共度了充满文化交流与欢笑的一天，重拾了无需寒暄的默契。这段意外且珍贵的友谊让作者倍感珍惜。

4. Why is Bishkek more than a destination to the author?

A. Because it deepens the ties between girls.

B. Because it provides horse-riding experiences.

C. Because it has fresh air and familiar warmth.

D. Because it offers a visit to the national museum.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Bishkek greeted me with fresh air and familiar warmth, but the day I spent with Alya transformed the place from just another destination to something more."可知，比什凯克对作者而言不仅仅是一个旅行目的地，因为它加深了女孩们之间的友谊。故选 A。

5. What does the writer think of the reunion with Alya?

A. Formal and relaxing.

B. Unavoidable and serious.

C. Silent and surprising.

D. Unexpected and precious.

D　推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Then, by pure chance and surprise, I visited her in the summer of 2025."以及最后一段中的"Alya and I didn't just reunite; we rediscovered a bond made of shared silences, life curiosity, and that rare ease you don't find twice."可知，作者认为与 Alya 的重逢意外且珍贵。故选 D。

6. What made the author feel "it is rare to pick up right where you left off"?

A. Shared curiosity.

B. Detailed arrangements.

C. Natural interaction.

D. Common backgrounds.

C　推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"No awkwardness, no catching up required, just presence."可知，自然的交流互动让作者觉得"能够重拾旧好（毫无隔阂地继续）是很罕见的"。故选 C。

7. What can be the best title for the text?

A. A Day of Connection

B. Two Friends in Need

C. An Encounter in Delhi

D. Two Years of Separation

A　标题归纳题。文章讲述了作者偶然与失联两年的好友 Alya 在比什凯克重逢。她们与朋友共度了充满文化交流与欢笑的一天，重拾了无需寒暄的默契。这段意外且珍贵的友谊让作者倍感珍惜。可知，A 项"连接的一天"最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

C

When you are a kid, gaining a best friend can happen in a single play date. But when you grow up to be an adult, forming and maintaining friendships gets harder. So how much quality time do you need before a stranger becomes your friend? A new study recently found that, on average, it takes about 50 hours with someone before you consider them a casual（感情不深的）friend, about 90 hours before you become real friends, and about 200 hours to become close friends.

The study's author Jeffrey Hall invited adults who were eager to make friends to take part in two experiments—people who had just moved to a new city in the past six months and college freshmen. He asked them to rate and track the degree of closeness and time spent together with a new person. "Results suggest that the chance of changing from casual

friends to real friends is greater than 50% after around 80—100 hours together," said Hall.

The study found that the amount of time spent talking together, or the fact that you spend time at school or work with someone, is unrelated to friendship closeness. "It is really easy to spend a lot of time with people as they are routinely in the same place at the same time as you," Hall said. "However, my study shows you can have workmates you spend hundreds and hundreds of hours with and still not develop a friendship."

You do not need to become best friends with your workmates to develop meaningful relationships with them. But for those hoping to change "a girl who I eat lunch with at work" to "a friend I can depend on", Hall suggests that you need to take the relationship out of the workplace for it to become a friendship. The participants who did activities outside of work with someone, such as being invited to have lunch in their home, were more likely to develop deeper relationships with them.

【语篇解读】一项研究告诉我们一个成年人需要多长时间才能交到一个新朋友，并且指出在工作场所之外与同事一起参加活动有助于加深关系。

8. What is the new study mainly about?

A. Ways of making friends in a new environment.
B. Different levels of friendship between adults.
C. Why people need to make different friends.
D. How long it takes to develop a friendship.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"So how much quality time... A new study recently found that, on average, it takes about 50 hours... about 90 hours... about 200 hours to become close friends."可推知，该研究主要是研究发展一段友谊需要多长时间。故选D。

9. What do we know about the participants in the study?

A. They had known each other before.
B. They were in great need of friends.
C. They had difficulty in making new friends.
D. They started their new life in the same city.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"The study's author Jeffrey Hall invited adults who were eager to make friends to take part in two experiments... college freshmen."可知，该研究的作者邀请渴望交朋友的成年人参加了两个实验，一些是过去六个月内刚搬到一个新城市的人，另一些是大学新生。由此可知，这项研究的参与者都是需要朋友、希望交朋友的人。故选B。

10. What does the underlined word "routinely" in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

A. Regularly. B. Impressively.
C. Likely. D. Suddenly.

A 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的"It is really easy to spend a lot of time with people as they are routinely in the same place at the same time as you..."可知，第一个as引导原因状语从句。结合常识可知，花很多时间和别人在一起很容易是因为他们通常和你同时出现在同一个场所。由此可知，画线词与regularly意义相近。故选A。

11. Which can help people form closer friendships with workmates according to Hall?

A. Joining the same work team.
B. Having lunch at work with them.
C. Going hiking together on most weekends.
D. Updating each other on working practices.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"Hall suggests... who did activities outside of work with someone... were more likely to develop deeper relationships with them."可知，在工作之外与他人一起参加活动的参与者更有可能与同事建立深厚的关系。由此可知，经常在周末与同事一起去远足有助于建立更亲密的友谊。故选C。

D

Who needs friends? According to most psychologists（心理学家）, we all do, especially nowadays when so many other aspects of modern life are changing. It seems that having friends keeps us both healthy and happy.

The number of TV series about groups of friends shows just how important friendship is to us. Psychologist Dorothy Rowe says that many of us now turn to our friends, instead of our families, for advice, comfort and security（安全）. One woman named Rebecca she interviewed even told her that if she had got to choose between her husband and her friend, she would choose her friend.

Since our friends mean so much to us, it is not surprising that the happiest marriages are also friendships. "Once the romantic stage of a relationship has passed, it is friendship that holds people together," says Rowe. If the couple do not make some changes, they will either get tired of each other and break up or stay together and seek friendship with others.

But is friendship equally important to women and men? According to author Rhonda Pritchard,

women are more likely than men to have close friends. "You tell a friend things that you'd never tell a partner," says one woman she interviewed. For men, friendship is usually based on doing things together rather than the private conversations that are typical of women friends. Men share time and activities like building a fence or a business, running, riding a bike, fishing or watching football matches, but they don't often share their feelings.

Although many women find their relationship with a husband or boyfriend is not enough, many men say that their partner is their best friend. Even women who are very happily married are likely to become very unhappy without a close friend and can even find the breakup of a close friend as painful as the end of a marriage.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了朋友在我们生活中的重要性,以及男性和女性对待友谊的不同态度。

12. What did Rebecca think about friendship?

A. Families are reliable forever.

B. Her friend means more to her than her husband.

C. One needn't have too many friends.

D. Friends are as important as families.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"One woman named Rebecca she interviewed even told her that if she had got to choose between her husband and her friend, she would choose her friend."可知,Rebecca认为朋友对于她来说比丈夫重要。故选B。

13. Why do some couples look for friends outside their relationships?

A. Because they are encouraged by their partners.

B. Because they are not fairly treated by their partners.

C. Because they don't get what they need from their partners.

D. Because they think their friends are more romantic.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"If the couple do not make some changes, they will either get tired of each other and break up or stay together and seek friendship with others."可推知,一些夫妻在他们的关系之外寻找朋友,是因为他们没有从伴侣那里得到他们需要的东西。故选C。

14. What is the main difference between men's and women's friendships?

A. Women often do things together.

B. Women often talk about business with friends.

C. Men seldom talk about their feelings.

D. Men often talk to their friends about work and family.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"For men, friendship is usually based on doing things together rather than the private conversations that are typical of women friends. Men share time and activities like building a fence or a business, running, riding a bike, fishing or watching football matches, but they don't often share their feelings."可知,男性与女性友情的区别在于男性不会像女性那样和朋友分享他们的情感。故选C。

15. What may some women do when a friendship ends?

A. They may feel as upset as when a marriage ends.

B. They may share feelings with their partners.

C. They may treat their partners as friends.

D. They may turn to their husband for comfort.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"Even women who are very happily married are likely to become very unhappy without a close friend and can even find the breakup of a close friend as painful as the end of a marriage."可知,当一段亲密的友谊结束时,有些女性会感觉就像婚姻结束一样难过。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

How to Make Friends in High School

Entering high school means meeting new people and making new friends. But for many students, this can be a little difficult. **16** Here are some useful tips to help you.

17 Smile and say hello when you meet someone new. A friendly attitude can make others feel comfortable and willing to talk to you. Don't be afraid to start a conversation. You can ask others about their hobbies, favourite subjects or weekend plans.

Join clubs or activities. High school has many clubs and activities, such as sports clubs, music clubs and art clubs. **18** You can meet people who share the same interests as you. It's easier to make friends with someone who likes the same things as you do.

Be a good listener. When your new friends talk to you, listen carefully and show that you are interested. **19** Ask follow-up questions to keep the conversation going. This will make your friends feel valued.

20 If you make a mistake, apologise sincerely. Don't be too proud to admit your mistakes. Being honest and reliable will help you keep your friends.

Remember, making friends takes time and effort. Be patient and you will have many good friends in high school.

A. Be friendly to others.
B. Don't worry, you are not alone.
C. Join as many clubs as possible.
D. Avoid talking about your own problems all the time.
E. Being in a club helps you meet new people easily.
F. Be honest and trustworthy.
G. Try to remember their names and hobbies.

答案：16～20 BAEDF

Ⅲ. 完形填空

It is a blue, cotton shirt. The shirt belonged to my 21 David. It was given by his mother. 22 I gave him free use of my bike, he let me wear the shirt, occasionally.

We shared the shirt, and as days 23, we shared more of our 24. David was in school by scholarships and grants (助学金). He 25 to keep his scholarships, because without even one of them, he would have to 26 and back on the farm. And in David's home, there was always only enough money to cover the expense. His father died when he was twelve.

At times David also talked about his father. Usually it was late at night, in the dormitory just before bed, and the 27 always ended with tears that flowed from a river of memories and longings: memories of a father suffering from 28 when his son was just a teenager; however, disease does not understand about the 29 between father and son. Nor does it care.

Time passed and we had to say goodbye to each other. After lots of hugging, and words of thanks, we eventually departed (分开). It was on my 30 trip upstairs to our dorm that I saw a package on my bed. I 31 the wrapping paper. It was the blue cotton shirt in a box with a 32 on it, reading "Thomas, I can't thank you enough for your 33. This has been tough years and you have been 34 a friend. Thank you for listening. Thanks for everything.—David."

I put aside the note, with 35 tears dropping on the shirt. I still have the shirt today, though it has faded and wrinkled with age.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和大学室友David的友谊，他们俩经常一起分享东西，毕业分别前，David送给作者一件衬衫并写了一些感激的话，作者很感动。

21. A. colleague　　B. brother
C. roommate　　D. professor
C　根据下文的"At times David also talked about his father. Usually it was late at night, in the dormitory just before bed..."可知，David是作者的室友(roommate)。

22. A. Because　　B. Unless
C. As though　　D. Even if
A　因为(Because)"我"让他免费使用"我"的自行车，所以他偶尔让"我"穿这件衬衫。

23. A. came across　　B. went by
C. ran out　　D. came up
B　根据上文的"We shared the shirt..."及下文的"... we shared more of our 24."可知，"我"和David分享了这件衬衫，随着时间的推移(went by)，"我们"分享了更多的东西。

24. A. victories　　B. belongings
C. scholarships　　D. stories
D　根据下文内容可知，"我"了解了更多关于David的事情，因此"我们"分享了更多的故事(stories)。

25. A. happened　　B. refused
C. struggled　　D. failed
C　根据下文的"... because without even one of them, he would have to 26 and back on the farm."可知，没有奖学金，David就要退学，回到农场。因此David要努力保住奖学金。struggle to do sth.意为"努力做某事"。

26. A. turn out　　B. stand out
C. figure out　　D. drop out
D　根据下文的"back on the farm"可知，没有奖学金，David就要辍学(drop out)，回到农场。

27. A. interview　　B. discussion
C. conversation　　D. debate
C　根据上文的"At times David also talked about his father."可知，在寝室里，David有时和作者谈到他的父亲，对话(conversation)通常在深夜。

28. A. failure　　B. depression
C. poverty　　D. illness
D　根据下文的“disease does not understand about”可知，David的父亲生病了(illness)。

29. A. connection　　B. distance
C. difference　　D. conflict
A　但是疾病不理解父子之间的亲情关系(connection)，也不关心这种关系。

30. A. first　　B. last
C. next　　D. second
B　根据上文的“Time passed and we had to say goodbye to each other.”和“... we eventually departed(分开).”可知，作者和David毕业要分别了，因此这是作者最后一次(last)去宿舍。

31. A. touched　　B. pulled
C. removed　　D. folded
C　根据下文语境可知，作者看到了包裹里的东西(蓝色棉布衬衫和纸条)，这说明作者去除了(removed)包装纸。

32. A. note　　B. book
C. gift　　D. notebook
A　根据下文的“I put aside the note...”可知，上面有一张纸条(note)。

33. A. guidance　　B. description
C. friendship　　D. impression
C　根据上文内容和下文的“a friend”可知，David对“我们”之间的友谊(friendship)感激不尽。

34. A. less than　　B. other than
C. more than　　D. rather than
C　根据下文的“Thank you for listening. Thanks for everything.”可知，对David而言，作者不仅仅是(more than)朋友。

35. A. nervous　　B. grateful
C. sad　　D. excited
B　根据下文的“... tears dropping on the shirt.”可知，看到David的留言，“我”感到很激动，所以流下了感激的(grateful)泪水。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

In different cultures, people have **36.** various (variety) ideas about friendship, and these ideas can sometimes lead to misunderstandings.

In the United States, friendship is often activity-based. Shared experiences, from playing sports to watching movies, are a fundamental (基本的) reason why people become friends. We have noticed that they seem to have many friends who belong to different social circles. Making friends is rather quick and easy for Americans, and the word “friend” is used quite **37.** widely (wide).

However, in many Eastern cultures, such as China, building a true friendship **38.** takes (take) more time and effort. Friendship is based on deep emotional bonds (纽带) and **39.** a strong sense of duty. Once you become close friends, you are almost like family. Friends **40.** are expected (expect) to help each other in times of need, **41.** which is very important in Eastern cultures.

Another key distinction (区别) lies in communication. In “direct” cultures, honesty is highly valued and considered a characteristic of true friendship, even if the truth is **42.** uncomfortable (comfortable). In “indirect” cultures, friends often try to avoid direct disagreement to keep good friendship. They believe that a true friend should understand their feelings **43.** without saying everything.

So, if you ever have a chance **44.** to make (make) friends with someone from another culture, remember that there is no single “right” way. Being aware of these **45.** differences (different) is the first step towards building a strong cross-cultural friendship.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

请以“Friends and Friendship”为题，写一篇80词左右的英语短文，内容须包含下列要点：
1. 友谊在学习和生活中的作用；
2. 朋友之间应该怎么做。
注意：可适当发挥，以使文章通顺流畅。

【参考范文】

Friends and Friendship

As we all know, everybody needs friends. Friendship plays an important part in our studies, work and everyday life.

As friends we should trust each other and share joys and sorrows together. Once our friends are in trouble, we should try our best to help them out. Just as the famous saying goes, “A friend in need is a friend indeed.”

Friendship also needs to be taken good care of. Once we become friends, we should care about and help each other. Only in this way can our friendship last long.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

"Look, Tomiko!" Dandelion Pinkley said to her best friend. She held up a beautifully carved Viking (海盗) ship in the coolest toy store in town. "It's the perfect gift for Doodlebug!" But it wasn't just a ship. It was actually a cleverly designed display case (盒子) for an action figure. "He'd love that," Tomiko agreed.

"He could totally show off his Sweyn Forkbeard Viking figures in this," Dandelion said.

"Yeah," Tomiko said.

"We're doing our family gift exchange tonight," she said. "Too bad I've only got one dollar and eighty-seven cents left." She sighed (叹息).

Dandelion looked out of the window. Suddenly she turned, her face brightening.

"Tomiko!" she said excitedly. "I know how I can get the money!"

When she explained her idea, Tomiko's eyes widened. "You'd really do that, Dandelion?" she asked. "Sure," she replied. "But I have to hurry. See you tomorrow."

"Good luck!" Tomiko waved as they said goodbye to each other.

Dandelion hesitated outside the shop. The sign above the window said "Mademoiselle" in fancy lettering. Underneath, it read, "Everything for the hair." A long wig (假发) in the shop window was adorned (装饰) with beautiful feather hair clips (发夹) labelled "Mademoiselle's Finest". Dandelion sighed. She'd wanted one of those clips for ages. Shrugging (耸肩), she pulled the door open and went inside.

The shopkeeper almost laughed when Dandelion took off her hat and made her request. But she finally said, "I'll take your hair. But I won't pay a cent more than nine dollars for it."

"Done!" Dandelion replied, shaking Mademoiselle's hand.

Minutes later Mademoiselle lowered her scissors. "Now even Doodlebug had more hair than me," Dandelion thought to herself.

With no time to spare, Dandelion rushed to the toy store and bought the Viking ship for ten dollars. Then, Dandelion skipped home happily. She couldn't wait to see the look on Doodlebug's face when he opened her gift.

That night, Doodlebug cried when Dandelion appeared. "Whoa! What did you do to your hair?!" Dandelion smiled sweetly but said nothing.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Doodlebug handed her the present he'd gotten her, and she eagerly opened it. _____

_____

_____

_____

"Thanks, Dandelion," Doodlebug said. "But I think we should use it to show off your hair clips instead—at least for now." _____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

Doodlebug handed her the present he'd gotten her, and she eagerly opened it. A little cry of joy burst from her lips, followed immediately by a huge sigh. Inside the gift box was "Mademoiselle's Finest", the most awesome set of feather hair clips she'd ever seen. But now her hair was too short to wear any of them. "Oh well, it'll grow back," she said, trying to be light-hearted. "Now you open mine, Doodlebug!" Doodlebug unwrapped the display case excitedly. Then he shook his head and laughed crazily. "It's for Forkbeard!" Dandelion explained.

"Thanks, Dandelion," Doodlebug said. "But I think we should use it to show off your hair clips instead—at least for now." "That's crazy!" Dandelion replied. "What about Forkbeard?" "I sold him," he said. "So I could buy you those feathery hair things." "What?!" Dandelion cried. Then she started laughing, too. The next morning the Viking ship display case sat in full, feathered glory in the living room window. And there it would stay, deeply puzzling every passer-by, until Forkbeard the Viking returned to the Pinkley house and Dandelion's hair grew back.

Unit 5 Into the wild

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Nature", and the topic is wild animals. In this unit, you will read "The Monarch's Journey" to figure out how the monarch butterfly moves from one place to another. You will also read about a panda visit to the Netherlands, English idioms related to animals, debates about keeping animals in zoos, a thrilling wildlife filming experience, and information about red-crowned cranes. Through the learning and exploration activities in this unit, you are expected to have a better understanding of animal behaviour and related knowledge, and finally develop correct, sustainable attitudes towards caring for animals and living in harmony with them.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与"保护动物"主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	能理解定语从句中关系副词的功能及意义。
		语篇	1. 能读懂科普文，分析其写作目的、语篇结构特征及语言特点； 2. 能读懂游记，分析其组成要素、各要素之间的关系及各要素与主题之间的关系。
		语用	能理解人与自然的关系，提升环保意识，学会运用所学语言知识描述自然、表达环保理念。
	语言技能	听	听电视辩论"应不应该把野生动物关在动物园里"的对话，整理辩论双方的观点，理解辩论的结构。
		说	能介绍一部关于野生动物的电影或故事，且能根据语境的需要提出建议，口头表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读科普说明文，了解黑脉金斑蝶的习性和特征，分析黑脉金斑蝶迁徙的原因及路线，提高爱护野生动物的意识； 2. 阅读游记，了解游记的特点，理解故事的写作内容和目的。
		写	1. 能正确运用由关系副词引导的定语从句描述自然界的动物； 2. 能写一篇介绍野生动物外形、栖息地、迁徙行为和觅食习惯的文章。
学习能力	1. 能通过阅读从文章中提取事实和细节，并基于这些信息推导出合理的结论； 2. 能根据时间顺序或事件发展的先后次序叙事； 3. 能区分一些近义词的差异，并根据语境正确使用这些词汇。		
文化意识	1. 了解日常生活中人与动物的不同关系，感知人与动物的和谐相处，形成关爱动物、保护生态的正确价值观，明确保护野生动物的价值和意义； 2. 了解动物在文化交流方面的作用，坚定文化自信，深化对单元主题意义的理解。		
思维品质	1. 能基于单元提供的科普类说明文、电子邮件、英语习语、漫画、电视辩论、人物经历记述等多模态语篇，综合运用各种语言技能； 2. 能正确地辨别人与动物的相处模式，真正做到爱护动物、保护生态，并将正确的观念和方法分享给他人，和身边的人一起关爱动物。		

必备知识

必背单词	charity，whale，annual，seek，measure，position，determine，eventually，solution，amazing，crash，per cent，destroy，creature，survive，effect，authority，source，found，button，recover，shock，element，encounter，variety，path，concentrate，freeze，stare，image，reaction，file
重点词块	manage to do，the solution to，human activity，be famous for，cut down，brave the elements，at a speed of，concentrate on，recover from，show respect to，after all
重点句型	1. the＋比较级... the＋比较级... 2. 强调句型
单元语法	关系副词引导的定语从句
单元写作	描写一种动物

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the structure of the text "The Monarch's Journey".
2. Learn the mystery of the monarch's migration.
3. Learn about the threats to monarch butterflies during migration and their causes.
4. Express your views on how to protect endangered species (like the monarch butterfly).

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. charity *n*. 慈善机构,慈善团体
2. annual *adj*. 一年一度的,每年的
3. seek *v*. 寻找,寻求
4. professor *n*. 教授
5. measure *v*. 量,测量
6. position *n*. 位置
7. determine *v*. 测定,确定
8. eventually *adv*. 终于,最终
9. solution *n*. 解决,解决方法
10. amazing *adj*. 惊人的,了不起的
11. per cent *n*. 百分比
12. destroy *v*. 破坏,毁掉
13. creature *n*. 生物,动物
14. survive *v*. 活下来,幸存
15. effect *n*. 影响,结果
16. manage to do 设法做成
17. the solution to ……的解决方法
18. cut down 砍倒(树木);削减,减少使用

(二)阅读词汇

1. monarch *n*. 君主,国王
2. Atlantic *adj*. 大西洋的
3. whale *n*. 鲸
4. migration *n*. 迁徙
5. migrate *v*. 移栖,迁徙
6. mystery *n*. 难以理解的事物,谜
7. crash *v*. 暴跌
8. chemical *n*. 化学品
9. caterpillar *n*. 毛虫(蝴蝶等昆虫的幼虫)
10. monarch butterfly 黑脉金斑蝶
11. flow chart 流程图,作业图
12. human activity 人类活动

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text

The Monarch's Journey

- The monarch's journey
  - ⇩ Many animals 1. migrate to find food, seek a partner, or search for warmer weather.
- One of the most wonderful migrations
  - ⇩ The North American monarch butterfly 2. manages to travel around 4,000 kilometres south to spend the winter.
- How the monarch butterfly can do it
  - ⇩ It uses its eyes to 3. measure the position of the sun to determine the way and direction.
- The serious trouble for the monarch butterfly
  - ⇩ 4. Human activity seriously affects the natural environment for it.
- What we can do
  - Work together to 5. make sure that they have a better environment.

○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does the monarch butterfly migrate every autumn?
   A. To find a partner.
   B. To spend the winter.
   C. To tell the time of day.
   D. To measure the position of the sun.
2. Which section is this article likely to appear in the newspaper?
   A. Sports.　　B. Health.
   C. Hobby.　　D. Wildlife.

答案：1～2 BD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. If this works, there may come a time when the number of monarch butterflies increases once again.
   [句子分析]句中 If this works 是条件状语从句，主句中含有 when 引导的定语从句。
   [尝试翻译]如果这些努力产生效果，黑脉金斑蝶的数量在未来有可能再次回升。
2. The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.
   [句子分析]此句是“the＋比较级... the＋比较级...”结构。其中 chance 后是一个省略了 that 的同位语从句，用来解释说明 chance 的内容。
   [尝试翻译]我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多，它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. What animals do you know are on the edge of extinction? And why?
   Pandas, South China Tigers and so on. Because of both natural factors and human activity, but the latter is the most important.
2. What can we do in our daily life in protecting endangered animals?
   We should organise or attend more activities to attract people's attention to them. Only when all the people raise the awareness can animals be protected.

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十七）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

It is well known that birds start their day very early. However, a new scientific study shows that light pollution is making them wake up even earlier and go to sleep later. On average, bright nights are taking away about 50 minutes of sleep from birds every day.

To investigate how light pollution affects birds' sleep patterns, Dr Brent Pease, in his research at Southern Illinois University Carbondale, engaged his students with the sounds of wildlife. To achieve this, he used a BirdWeather device called a PUC, which captures bird songs and uses artificial intelligence to recognise the species. This device also collects data on weather and location, which is shared online. As a result, BirdWeather now has nearly 1.4 billion bird songs recorded, a valuable resource for studying wildlife behaviour.

The researchers examined how light pollution, which affects about 23% of the planet, influences bird activity. They analysed over millions of calls from 583 bird species typically active during daylight. By comparing these calls with satellite data on light pollution, they found that brighter urban areas lead to earlier morning songs and lengthened singing at night.

Particularly, birds with larger eyes, like American robins and European goldfinches, were most affected. Dr Neil Gilbert from Oklahoma State University noted that some birds sang up to two hours before sunrise in polluted regions. Researchers are concerned about the harm to birds' biological clocks. Though it remains uncertain if this harms their long-term health—they may adapt to brighter nights—the study confirms city lights have subtle but real effects on nature. This research helps us understand how human activities quietly change wildlife behaviour.

To address the issue of light pollution, communities can take several steps. Actions such as replacing present streetlights with motion-sensor ones, using lower-intensity lighting, and carrying out "dark sky" projects can significantly reduce unnecessary artificial light. These measures could help protect birds' natural sleep cycles, ensuring that birds can live and reproduce despite urbanisation (城市化). Both individuals and local governments can work together to create environments that are safer for wildlife and more harmonious with nature.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了光污染对鸟类睡眠模式和行为的影响,以及应对这一问题的措施。

1. Where is the text most probably taken from?
A. A scientific research report.
B. A student's lab journal.
C. A bird-watching handbook.
D. A biology learning textbook.
A　文章出处题。根据第一段中的"However, a new scientific study shows that light pollution is making them wake up even earlier and go to sleep later. On average, bright nights are taking away about 50 minutes of sleep from birds every day."可推知,本文最有可能来自一份科学研究报告。故选A。

2. How does the BirdWeather device assist the research?
A. By predicting birds' behaviours.
B. By building a bird song database.
C. By monitoring weather conditions.
D. By measuring light pollution levels.
B　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"To achieve this, he used a BirdWeather device called a PUC, which captures bird songs and uses artificial intelligence to recognise the species."和"As a result, BirdWeather now has nearly 1.4 billion bird songs recorded, a valuable resource for studying wildlife behaviour."可知,BirdWeather设备通过建立鸟鸣曲数据库协助研究。故选B。

3. What can be concluded about the study?
A. Humans change birds' habitats.
B. Light pollution harms birds' health.
C. Large-eyed birds can't adapt to light.
D. Human activities impact wildlife behaviour.
D　推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的"This research helps us understand how human activities quietly change wildlife behaviour."可推知,人类活动影响着野生动物的行为。故选D。

4. What is the last paragraph mainly talking about?
A. Harm of artificial light to urban birds.
B. Benefits of dark sky projects for wildlife.
C. Measures to reduce light pollution's effect on birds.
D. Environmental protection required by urbanisation.
C　段落大意题。根据最后一段中的"To address the issue of light pollution, communities can take several steps. Actions such as replacing present streetlights with motion-sensor ones, using lower-intensity lighting, and carrying out 'dark sky' projects can significantly reduce unnecessary artificial light."可知,最后一段主要讲的是减少光污染对鸟类影响的措施。故选C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Should We Build More National Parks to Save Endangered Animals?

Don't you find it worrying that more and more species of animals are in real danger of becoming extinct? __1__ And I think the best way to do this for governments is to create more national parks.

__2__ If this environment is destroyed—for example, when farmers clear a forest for new fields, or trees are cut down to make profits—many animals are unable to survive, and more species are likely to become extinct.

In addition, national parks protect animals from the danger of being hunted. A major reason why many species are endangered is that these animals are killed by hunters. They hunt animals to make money. __3__

On the other hand, some people fight against the foundation of national parks because they consider it is wrong to interfere with nature. They believe that wild animals are happier living in their natural environment. __4__ They also point out that a few species are more likely to produce young animals in the wild than in national parks.

All in all, these disadvantages are far less important than the benefits of national parks. __5__

As a matter of fact, they protect animals from their greatest enemies, that is, human beings.

A. To begin with, animals are important to humans.

B. Some hunters even hunt animals simply for sports.

C. I personally believe that we must save these animals.

D. These parks allow animals to live in a safe environment.

E. Firstly, national parks protect these animals' natural environment.

F. They say though the animals may face danger, they enjoy a free life.

G. There is a heated discussion about whether to build more national parks.

答案：1～5 CEBFD

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Master the usage of important words and phrases in context.

2. Learn to use some important sentence structures.

3. Express your own opinions on saving the monarch butterfly.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **charity** aims to provide assistance to people in need. 慈善机构，慈善团体

2. They **sought** for a place to shelter from the rain, but in vain. 寻找，寻求

3. I've found our **position** on the map if you want to see where we are. 位置

4. The first living **creature** sent into space was a dog named Laika. 生物，动物

5. **Whales** are one of the biggest animals in the world. 鲸

6. Most college **professors** agree the kind of exam they choose largely depends on the subject. 教授

7. Many companies suffered great loss, because the stock market **crashed**. 暴跌

8. According to the study, fifty **per cent** of road accidents result in head injuries. 百分比

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
migrate *v*. 移栖，迁徙	migration *n*. 迁徙
	migrant *n*. 移民

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
determine *v*. 测定，确定	determined *adj*. 坚决的，下定决心的
	determination *n*. 决心；（正式）决定，确定
solution *n*. 解决，解决方法	solve *v*. 解决，处理
mystery *n*. 难以理解的事物，谜	mysterious *adj*. 神秘的，不易解释的
amazing *adj*. 惊人的，了不起的	amaze *v*. 使吃惊
	amazed *adj*. 吃惊的，惊讶的
	amazement *n*. 惊奇，惊诧
survive *v*. 活下来，幸存	survival *n*. 幸存
	survivor *n*. 幸存者
effect *n*. 影响，结果	effective *adj*. 有效的；实际的
measure *v*. 量，测量	measurement *n*. 测量，计量，衡量
chemical *n*. 化学品	chemistry *n*. 化学；化学组成
	chemist *n*. 化学家；药剂师；药房

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. manage to do sth. 设法做成某事
2. the solution to ……的解决方法
3. be in trouble 处于困境，惹了麻烦
4. the number of ……的数量
5. cut down 砍倒(树木)；削减，减少使用

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：不定式作目的状语
They migrate to find food, seek a partner, or in search of warmer weather.
它们为了觅食、寻找伴侣或更温暖的环境而迁徙。

2. 句型公式：过去分词短语作定语
A team of scientists led by Professor Eli Shlizerman at the University of Washington has now found the answer.
一支由伊莱·史利泽曼教授领导的来自华盛顿大学的科学家团队现已找到了答案。

3. 句型公式：the＋比较级… the＋比较级…
The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.
我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多，它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. amazing *adj*. 惊人的，了不起的

[教材原文]The solution to the mystery of the monarch's **amazing** ability comes at a time when it is in serious trouble.
黑脉金斑蝶这一惊人能力的奥秘被揭开时，这一生物正处于水深火热的生存状态中。

[归纳拓展]
(1)amaze *v*. 使吃惊
(2)amazed *adj*. 感到惊奇的；吃惊的
be amazed at/by 对……感到惊奇
be amazed to do sth. 对做某事感到惊奇
(3)amazement *n*. 惊讶
(much) to one's amazement 令某人(非常)惊讶的是
in amazement 惊讶地；惊愕地

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①I am totally amazed at/by the variety of the lanterns during the festival.
②(2025·全国二卷) But it's amazing (amaze) how you can adapt and learn in a new environment.
③If you also feel interested to improve your oral English, through this short video clip, you will feel amazed to join (join) us.
(2)写作微练
(读后续写之心理描写)**使妈妈惊奇的是**，他们在爸爸的指导下成功地做好了早餐。
To Mom's amazement, under the guidance of their father, they successfully made the breakfast.(amazement)
→It amazed Mom that under the guidance of their father, they successfully made the breakfast.(it作形式主语)
→ What amazed Mom was that under the guidance of their father, they successfully made the breakfast.(what引导主语从句)
→Mom was amazed that under the guidance of their father, they successfully made the breakfast.(amazed)

2. survive *v*. 活下来，幸存；幸免于……，从……中艰难度过

[教材原文]The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will **survive** and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.
我们对这种迷人的生物了解得越多，它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

[归纳拓展]
(1)survive on 依靠……生活
survive sb. (by… years) 比……活得长(……年)
(2)survivor *n*. 幸存者
(3)survival *n*. 幸存

名师点拨

survive作动词时，还有“幸免于；从……中逃生；比……活(或存在)的时间长”之意。survive表示“幸存”时，为及物动词，可直接跟“疾病、灾难、事故、危机”等名词；表示“比某人长命”时，常用人作宾语。

[即学即练]
(1)单句语法填空
①Dogs have a good sense of smell and are often used to search for survivors (survive) in an earthquake.

②They will hold an informal party to celebrate his survival (survive) from the air crash.

③After losing his job, he survived on part-time work and savings until he found a new full-time position.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之主旨升华)生活不在于**如何从暴风雨中幸存**,而在于学会在雨中翩翩起舞。

Life isn't about how to survive the storm; it's about learning to dance in the rain.

3. effect *n*. 影响,结果

[**教材原文**]Then use the sentences to complete the "cause-**effect**" flow charts.

然后用句子完成"因果"流程图。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)have an effect on/upon... 对……有影响

bring/put... into effect 使生效;实行,实施

come into effect 生效,开始实施

in effect 有效;在实施中;实际上

side effects 副作用

(2)effective *adj*. 有效的

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) Contrary to popular doubt, resolutions made on 1 January are more effective (effect) for this reason.

②It is reported that the new law has been put into effect, and the number of wild animals here is on the increase now.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)介绍制茶的历史对帮助交换生更好地理解我国的饮茶文化**有很大的作用**。

Introducing the history of tea-making will have a great effect on/upon exchange students' better understanding of our tea-drinking culture.

②(读后续写之心理描写)**实际上**,观众们被这个感人的故事深深打动了,他们热泪盈眶。

In effect, the audience were deeply affected by the moving story, with tears welling up in their eyes.

③(应用文写作之倡议书)我真诚地希望这些保护黑脉金斑蝶的措施**可以尽快实施**。

I sincerely hope that the measures to protect monarch butterfly can take effect/come into effect as soon as possible.

4. the+比较级... the+比较级...

[**教材原文**]**The more** we know about this lovely creature, **the greater** the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

[**句式分析**]本句中 The more... the greater...为"the+比较级... the+比较级..."句型。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)"the+比较级... the+比较级..."句型,意为"越……越……",表示后者随着前者的变化而变化;

(2)前一个"the+比较级..."通常相当于比较状语从句或条件状语从句(在表示将来意义时,常用一般现在时),后一个"the+比较级..."通常相当于主句;

(3)在通常情况下,如果主句和从句中的谓语动词是系动词 be,而且主语不是代词,则 be 动词可以省略。

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①As an old saying goes, "The higher (high) you stand, the farther you will see."

②If everyone contributes a bit, our earth will be better and better.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之投稿)参与保护海洋的**人越多**,海洋环境就越好。

The more people are involved in protecting the ocean, the better the ocean environment is.

②(读后续写之心理描写)我越往森林里走,**就越感到害怕**,我的心提到了嗓子眼。

The further I walked into the forest, the more frightened I felt and I had my heart in my mouth.

多义词汇 专练

crash

A. *vi*. 碰撞,撞击　B. *vi*. 暴跌　C. *vi*. 崩溃

①Share prices **crashed** to an all-time low yesterday. B

②The system **crashed** and I lost three hours' worth of work. C

③His car went out of control and **crashed** into the road fence. A

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十八）

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. The government will take measures to help (help) college graduates to find jobs.
2. He was determined to give (give) his family a secure and solid base.
3. To his amazement, we were not amazed at his great progress in English.(amaze)
4. Pollution could have a great effect on people's health.
5. Eventually (eventual), these birds succeeded in migrating to the fixed area.
6. It took an hour to find the solution to the difficult problem.
7. A lot of small companies are having to fight for survival (survive).
8. He was in a position where he had to force a decision.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

cut down; lead to; feed on; in trouble; make sure; in search of; survive on; take effect

1. Cut down the article so as to make it fit the space available on the paper.
2. When you are in trouble, they will help you.
3. That door leads to the garden.
4. Cows feed on grass.
5. They went out in search of the lost boy.
6. It's going to rain. Make sure you close the window.
7. Once the new measure takes effect, the present terrible situation will improve significantly.
8. What do you think these creatures survive on in winter?

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. They didn't finish their work until five o'clock in the afternoon.
   他们直到下午五点才完成工作。
2. We meet here at a time when China is developing rapidly.
   正值中国快速发展之际，我们相遇在这里。
3. There are no simple solutions to solve the problem air pollution caused by some human activities.
   没有简单的办法可以解决某些人类活动造成的空气污染问题。
4. There are enough books for students to read in the library.
   图书馆里有足够的书供学生阅读。
5. The more the people, the more the ideas.
   人多主意多。

Ⅳ. 完形填空

Callie Clemens was about to fall asleep on July 26 when an alert on her social media page, Lost & Found Pets of Spring Branch, caught her attention. A small black __1__ had been seen near a storm drain (下水道) in her Houston neighbourhood, and whimpering (呜咽声) suggested more were __2__ inside.

Clemens, a well-known local animal __3__, immediately drove to the scene. Hearing __4__ cries from underground, she removed a metal grate (隔栅) and climbed down into the drain. Despite being poorly equipped, she felt she had to __5__. She crawled through a dark, cockroach-infested tunnel __6__ she saw two sets of eyes reflecting her flashlight, but the puppies __7__.

Staff from the local SPCA soon arrived and __8__ the search until 3 am. They __9__ to rescue one puppy found outside under a dumpster, but at least two remained underground.

__10__ to give up, Clemens returned a few hours later with volunteers. After a very long search, they found a tiny black puppy, whom they named Timmy. He was taken to an animal shelter and __11__ was later adopted. Believing one dog __12__, Clemens returned several more times, leaving food. Seeing the food eaten and no longer hearing whimpers, she became __13__ that the final puppy had escaped, likely one that was later found and adopted through her programme.

Her __14__ comes as no surprise to fellow

rescuer Tena Lundquist Faust, who says, "Once she becomes focused on a rescue situation, she is __15__. She is really a rock star."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Callie Clemens 看到求助信息后，多次深入下水道，联合志愿者和相关机构，坚持不懈地救助被困的几只小狗，最终小狗大多被成功救出并领养的暖心故事。

1. A. puppy　　B. cat
C. bird　　D. rabbit
A　根据下文的"to rescue one puppy"可知，有人看到了一只小狗。故选 A。

2. A. waiting　　B. contained
C. playing　　D. trapped
D　根据前文的"had been seen near a storm drain（下水道）in her Houston neighbourhood, and whimpering（呜咽声）suggested more were"可知，呜咽声从下水道传出，说明小狗被困在里面。故选 D。

3. A. keeper　　B. rescuer
C. trainer　　D. feeder
B　根据下文的"to rescue one puppy"以及 Clemens 多次深入下水道救助小狗可知，她是动物救助者。故选 B。

4. A. familiar　　B. powerful
C. desperate　　D. happy
C　根据后文的"cries from underground"可知，被困的小狗发出的是绝望的求救声。故选 C。

5. A. act　　B. rest
C. leave　　D. observe
A　根据下文的"She crawled through a dark, cockroach-infested tunnel"可知，她觉得必须采取行动。故选 A。

6. A. unless　　B. until
C. though　　D. since
B　根据后文的"she saw two sets of eyes reflecting her flashlight"可知，她在黑暗的隧道中爬行，直到看到手电筒（的光）照到两双眼睛，until 引导时间状语从句。故选 B。

7. A. woke up　　B. turned up
C. ran away　　D. passed away
C　根据前文的"she saw two sets of eyes reflecting her flashlight, but the puppies"中的 but 表示转折可知，她发现了小狗，但小狗受到惊吓跑开了。故选 C。

8. A. affected　　B. joined
C. agreed　　D. delayed
B　根据前文的"Staff from the local SPCA soon arrived and"可知，当地动物保护协会的工作人员赶到，加入搜救行动。故选 B。

9. A. promised　　B. failed
C. pretended　　D. managed
D　根据后文的"to rescue one puppy found outside under a dumpster, but at least two remained underground"可知，他们设法救出了一只小狗。故选 D。

10. A. Refusing　　B. Starting
C. Planning　　D. Forgetting
A　根据后文的"to give up, Clemens returned a few hours later with volunteers"可知，Clemens 拒绝放弃，几小时后带着志愿者们再次返回。故选 A。

11. A. secretly　　B. suddenly
C. fortunately　　D. carefully
C　根据后文的"was later adopted"可知，获救的小狗被送往收容所，幸运地被人领养。故选 C。

12. A. wandered　　B. disappeared
C. died　　D. remained
D　根据下文的"Clemens returned several more times, leaving food."可知，她认为还有一只小狗仍留在下水道里，remained 表示"留存，逗留"，符合语境。故选 D。

13. A. eager　　B. confident
C. doubtful　　D. ashamed
B　根据上文的"Seeing the food eaten and no longer hearing whimpers"可知，看到食物被吃掉、没有呜咽声，她确信最后一只小狗成功逃出。故选 B。

14. A. determination　　B. intelligence
C. kindness　　D. curiosity
A　根据上文的"Clemens returned a few hours later with volunteers"以及"Clemens returned several more times, leaving food."可知，她多次折返、不放弃救援的决心，让同伴觉得毫不意外。故选 A。

15. A. unpredictable　　B. unreasonable
C. unstoppable　　D. uncomfortable
C　根据前文的"Once she becomes focused on a rescue situation, she is"以及后文的"She is really a rock star."可知，一旦专注于救援，她就势不可挡。故选 C。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. Summarise the usages of *when*, *where*, and *why* (as relative adverbs) in attributive clauses by finding, comparing and analysing examples.
2. Use attributive clauses introduced by *when*, *where*, and *why* in the given situations.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It is said that the factory was **founded** in 1995. 创立,创建
2. "Let the cat out of the bag" is an **idiom** meaning to tell a secret by mistake. 习语
3. Only the manager has the **authority** to sign cheques. 权力
4. The sun is the major **source** of energy for our planet. 来源

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
accommodation *n*. 住处,工作场所	accommodate *v*. 为(某人)提供住宿(或膳宿、座位等);容纳

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. for the first time 第一次
2. as busy as a bee 忙得团团转
3. hold your horses 慢点,别急
4. instead of 而不是;代替
5. be busy (in) doing sth. 忙于做某事
6. take... for example 以……为例
7. live on one's own 独自生活
8. rain cats and dogs 下倾盆大雨

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:it is possible to do sth.
   People were excited—the zoo is the only place in the country where it is possible to see pandas.
   人们很兴奋——这个动物园是这个国家唯一有可能看到熊猫的地方。
2. 句型公式:the reason why... is that...
   And of course, the main reason why they were so excited is that pandas are just so cute!
   当然,他们如此兴奋的主要原因是熊猫太可爱了!
3. 句型公式:watch sb. doing sth.
   It is in a location where we can watch animals wandering past on their way to the waterhole.
   它是一个我们可以看到动物经过这条路漫步到水池的地方。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

accommodation *n*. 住处,工作场所

[教材原文]Our **accommodation** is perfect.
我们的住处很完美。

[归纳拓展]

(1)provide accommodations for 为……提供食宿

(2)accommodate *v*. 为(某人)提供住宿(膳宿、座位等);使适应,顺应;容纳(乘客)

accommodate... to...
使……适应/迎合……(其中 to 为介词)

accommodate oneself to 使自己适应……

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Activities there range from whale watching to hiking (远足) and accommodations (accommodate) aim to have a low impact on the natural environment.

② You must accommodate yourself to the new environment as soon as possible.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)我们很高兴**为您提供**宁静舒适的**住宿**环境,您可以在一天的活动后放松身心。

We are pleased to provide accommodation for you with a serene and welcoming environment where you can relax after the day's activities.

语法研习课

关系副词引导的定语从句

◦语法感知

①Eventually, it manages to reach the places **where** it will spend the winter.

② The solution to the mystery of the monarch's amazing ability comes at a time **when** it is in serious trouble.

③Sadly, human activity is the main reason **why** the number of monarch butterflies is falling.

句①②③中，定语从句的关系词 where，when，why 都是关系副词，在定语从句中分别作地点状语、时间状语和原因状语，先行词分别为表示地点、时间和原因的名词。

◦语法精讲

一、关系副词的指代及功能

关系副词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
when	指时间，在定语从句中作时间状语	表示时间的名词：time，moment，day，month，year，period 等
where	指地点，在定语从句中作地点状语	表示地点的名词：place，house，city，country，world，street 等及一些表示抽象地点的名词，如 point，case，position，condition，situation 等
why	指原因或理由，在定语从句中作原因状语	表示原因的名词：reason，excuse 等

I cannot forget the day **when** I first saw you.
我永远不会忘记第一次见到你的日子。
This is the house **where** they lived a week ago.
这是一个星期前他们住过的房子。
The reason **why** I don't trust him is that he often tells lies.
我不信任他的原因是他常常撒谎。

二、关系副词引导的定语从句的注意事项

表示时间、地点及原因的名词作先行词时，定语从句可用关系副词引导，也可用关系代词引导。若关系词在定语从句中作状语，则应用关系副词；若关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语，则应用关系代词。

Do you remember the days **when** we chatted with each other all night?
你还记得我们整夜聊天的那些日子吗？
Do you remember the days **that/which** we spent together on the farm?
你还记得我们在农场一起度过的那些日子吗？
I don't know the reason **why** he didn't turn to his good friend for help yesterday.
我不知道昨天他为什么没向他的好朋友求助。
I won't listen to the reason **that/which** you have given us.
我坚决不听你提供给我们的那个理由。
Can you recognise the house **where** you used to live with your parents?
你能认出你曾经和父母一起住过的房子吗？
Can you recognise the house **that/which** Tom sold three years ago?
你能认出汤姆三年前卖的那座房子吗？

三、"介词＋关系代词"替代关系副词

关系副词 when，where，why 相当于"介词＋which"结构：

when＝on（in，at，during...）＋which
where＝in（at，on...）＋which
why＝for which

This is the town **where/in which** I was born.
这就是我出生的城镇。
She won't forget the day **when/on which** she went to senior high school for the first time.
她永远不会忘记她第一次去高中就读的那一天。
The main reason **why/for which** he lost his job was that he often drank.
他失去工作的主要原因是他经常酗酒。

◦语法冲关

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. We will put off the picnic in the park until next week when the weather may be better.
2. The boss of the company is trying to create an easy atmosphere where his employees enjoy their work.

3. The reason that/which he explained at the meeting was not sound.
4. Keep the book in a place where you can find it easily.

Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. This is the hospital where I was born.
这是我出生的那家医院。
2. I will never forget the day when we moved into our new house.
我永远不会忘记我们搬进新居的那一天。
3. We are living in an age when many things are done on computers.
我们生活在许多事情都可以在电脑上完成的时代。
4. After graduation he returned to the small town where he grew up.
毕业以后，他回到了那个他长大的小镇。
5. The reason why he could not go there was that he was ill in bed.
他不能到那里去的原因是他卧病在床。

Unit 5 课后素养评价（十九）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

found; idiom; instead of; source; accommodation; authority; take... for example; for the first time

1. Your local library will be a useful source of information.
2. Nothing will be done because no one in authority takes the matter seriously.
3. He had a feeling for phrase and idiom.
4. It was in Beijing that we met for the first time.
5. People founded the charity in memory of this woman.
6. It was good accommodation for a hotel of this class.
7. They raised prices and cut production, instead of cutting costs.
8. You can take it for example that he always helps the old.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. The engine of the ship was out of order and the bad weather added to the helplessness of the crew at sea.
2. Rose couldn't stand being made fun of.
3. Their marriage was founded on love and respect.
4. Are senior high teachers similar to junior high teachers?
5. Teenagers should try to be independent of their parents, doing something on their own.
6. I'm busy studying (study), so I can't help do the housework.
7. Someone thinks we should walk or ride the bike more instead of driving cars.

Ⅲ. 用适当的关系词填空

1. The reason for which she changed her mind is quite clear.
2. The days when they travelled together meant a lot to him.
3. The hotel in which we stayed was built last year.
4. The house where he lived 10 years ago has been pulled down.
5. Nobody knows the reason why she didn't attend the meeting.
6. I'll never forget the time when we visited Xi'an.
7. I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't the reason why I left.
8. We visited the car factory where my uncle once worked three years ago.
9. This is the factory that/which I visited last year.
10. The train which/that has just left is for Shanghai.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

The UN Environment Programme says that rising temperatures could mean the end of some migrating animals.

Migrating animals move through several environments as they travel away from the cold area into winter to warmer ones. Birds may fly from one part of the world to another, perhaps stopping at feeding grounds on the way. Whales and turtles travel through huge areas of the ocean. A report says

that changes in any one of the places where these animals stay can cause serious problems. "Obviously these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it is impossible for these animals to change their habits fast enough," said the report writer Dr Robert Hepworth.

Turtles are hit hardest by rising temperatures. Scientists have found that at higher temperatures, turtles have far more female eggs than male ones. In parts of Malaysia, turtles are only giving birth to female babies. And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer.

With birds, the main problem is the harm to important areas at the end of their travels or at resting places along the way. About one-fifth of migratory birds are now in danger because of these changes, including rising sea levels, land loss and more strong storms.

Some other animals are now in great danger. For example, the North Atlantic Right Whale is losing its food because of the changing ocean flows; the White-Nosed Dolphin is out-competed (淘汰) by other kinds in warmer waters.

The report is not all bad news. Even with the temperature changing, protecting the environment can still help migrating animals return. "We need governments to start taking action all over the world. The clock is ticking. We should make full use of every minute," said Dr Hepworth. And now some projects are already working! Whales are changing their feeding habits, finding new feeding grounds and new food to eat.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了气候变化对迁徙动物的影响。

1. Why do rising temperatures mean the end of some migrating animals?

A. They stop moving through several environments.

B. They can't suit the changes during their travelling.

C. Their travelling habits will be changed fast enough.

D. They keep flying from one part of the world to another.

B　推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Obviously these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it is impossible for these animals to change their habits fast enough..."可推知，气温升高意味着一些迁徙动物的灭绝是因为它们不能适应迁徙途中的变化。故选B。

2. What is the result of the warming according to the passage?

A. The North Atlantic Right Whale may find new food.

B. Some turtles may develop cancer with the warm waters.

C. 1/5 of migrating birds change their feeding habits.

D. The White-Nosed Dolphin may have only female babies.

B　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer."可知，气温升高可能会导致一些海龟在温暖的海水中患上癌症。故选B。

3. What does the underlined sentence "The clock is ticking." mean?

A. It takes time to achieve the project.

B. It may be too late to save the world.

C. It's time to solve the problems at once.

D. It's important to stop animals from returning.

C　句意理解题。根据画线句上文"We need governments to start taking action all over the world."和下文"We should make full use of every minute..."可知，需要立即采取行动，时间很紧急。故画线句的意思是"是马上解决问题的时候了。"故选C。

4. What's the main topic of the passage?

A. Ways to prevent world warming.

B. Steps to save the animals in danger.

C. Animals' competition with others for food.

D. Effects of rising temperatures on migrating animals.

D　主旨大意题。通读全文，尤其是根据第一段的内容可知，本文主要介绍了气温上升对迁徙动物的影响。故选D。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the main idea and the structure of the text.
2. Learn to tell a story with a clear plot and vivid details.
3. Reflect deeply on how to respect and protect animals.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I pressed a **button** and the door closed slowly. 按钮
2. The scientists will study the **variety** of trees and observe which are fruiting. 多样化，变化
3. Fitness has now become an important **element** in our lives. 基本部分，要素
4. The story describes the **encounter** between a man and his wife. 意外的相遇，邂逅
5. She **stared** at him with wide eyes. 凝视，盯着看
6. The water flows at about 1.5 metres **per** second. 每
7. I walked nervously up the garden **path** towards the front door. 小径，小道
8. Slowly, an **image** began to appear on the screen. 图像，影像
9. **Files** can be lost if the system suddenly crashes. 档案，文件

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
photographer *n*. 摄影师	photograph *n*. 照片
	photography *n*. 摄影；摄影术
recover *v*. (从糟糕经历中)恢复	recovery *n*. 恢复；痊愈；改善；复苏
shock *n*. 吃惊，震惊	shocking *adj*. 惊人的；骇人的；令人难以置信的
	shocked *adj*. 吃惊的；震惊的
concentrate *v*. 专注，专心	concentration *n*. 集中；专心
	concentrated *adj*. 集中的；全力以赴的；浓缩的
freeze *v*. 突然停止，呆住	freezing *adj*. 极冷的
	frozen *adj*. 冷冻的；冻僵的
	freezer *n*. 冰柜
reaction *n*. (对某一情形或事件的)反应	react *v*. 作出反应，回应；起化学反应

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. show respect to 对……表示尊重
2. be famous/known for 以……闻名
3. at a speed of 以……的速度
4. concentrate on 专心于，专注于
5. recover from 从……中恢复过来
6. from time to time 不时，偶尔
7. after all 毕竟，终究
8. except for 除了……
9. look like 看起来像
10. take place 发生

Ⅳ. 补全句子

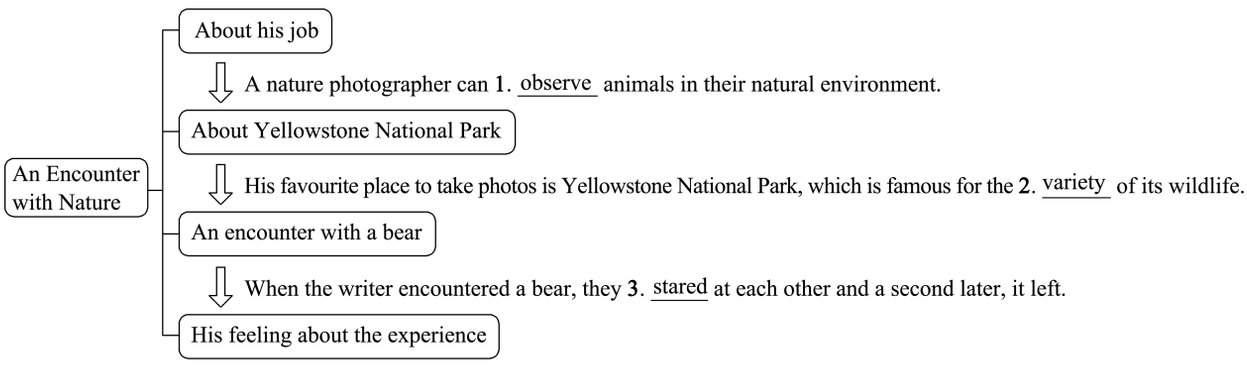
1. 句型公式：one of＋可数名词复数
   One of the best things about this job is that you can observe animals in their natural environment.
   这份工作最大的好处之一是你可以观察到自然状态下的动物。
2. 句型公式：完全倒装句
   Only metres away from me was a bear.
   离我只有几米远的是一只熊。
3. 句型公式：with 复合结构
   With water falling off its thick, brown hair, the bear stared back at me.
   那只熊也盯着我，水珠从它那厚厚的棕色皮毛上滴下来。
4. 句型公式：强调句型
   It is after all we who are the visitors to their world.
   毕竟，我们才是他们世界的访客。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What attract（s） the author most as a nature photographer?
   A. The elements.
   B. The wildness.
   C. The animals.
   D. The forests.
2. What can we know about the author?
   A. The bear is his favourite animal.
   B. He likes taking photos but can't bear the extreme weather.
   C. He likes his job because he can observe animals in their natural environment.
   D. Facing the bear, he didn't move because he was very brave.
3. Why does the author often look at the photo?
   A. It's a photo getting him recognised.
   B. It's the author's only photo taken in Yellowstone National Park.
   C. It often reminds him to respect animals.
   D. It's about an unexpected visitor.
4. What is the text mainly about?
   A. Working outside in the wild.
   B. Photos taken in Yellowstone National Park.
   C. An unforgettable experience in the wild.
   D. A photo taken with a brown bear.

答案：1～4 CCCC

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. While I was concentrating on photographing this amazing scene, I suddenly had a feeling that I was being watched.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。while 引导时间状语从句，that 引导同位语从句。
   [尝试翻译]当我正聚精会神地拍摄这惊人的景观时，我突然有一种被注视着的感觉。
2. Time stood still as the bear and I both waited to see who would move first.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。as 引导时间状语从句，从句中 who 引导宾语从句。
   [尝试翻译]时间凝固了，我和熊都等着看谁会先动。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Why did the author use "frightening but magical" to describe the experience in Paragraph 3?
   Because he risked his life to take a photo of a bear.
2. How can we get along with the wild animals?
   Try our best to protect them and not to disturb them. Ensure that they can freely live in their natural environment.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. variety *n*. 多样化,变化;种类,品种

[教材原文]As the world's first national park, Yellowstone is famous for the **variety** of its wildlife, but it is probably best known for its bears.

作为世界上第一个国家公园,黄石公园因其野生生物的多样性而闻名,不过其中最广为人知的可能还是那里的熊。

[归纳拓展]

(1)a variety of=varieties of 各种各样的

(2)vary *v*.(使)变化,不同

vary from... to... 从……到……不同

vary with... 随……而变化

(3)various *adj*. 各种各样的

名师点拨

a variety of/varieties of 后接名词时,谓语动词的单复数与名词的数保持一致;"the variety of+复数名词"意为"……的品种",作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2025·北京卷) Join us for TransForm, the interactive summer camp that helps you teens find your passion by participating in various (variety) activities and connecting with others.

②Class activities will vary from day to day, but students must be ready to complete short in-class writings or tests.

③The prices of some goods vary with the season, as is often the case.

(2)写作微练

(2024·北京卷应用文写作之投稿)至于中国的发展成就,可以涉及经济、技术和文化等**多个方面**。

As for China's development achievements, there are various/a variety of/varieties of aspects that can be involved, ranging from economy, technology and culture.

2. concentrate *v*. 专注,专心

[教材原文] While I was **concentrating** on photographing this amazing scene, I suddenly had a feeling that I was being watched.

当我正聚精会神地拍摄这惊人的景观时,我突然有一种被注视着的感觉。

[归纳拓展]

(1)concentrate... on/upon... 把……专注于/集中于……

concentrate on/upon... 专注于……

(2)concentration *n*. 专心,专注;集中

(3)concentrated *adj*. 集中的;全力以赴的;浓缩的

名师点拨

表示"专心于;致力于"的短语还有 be addicted to, be buried/lost/absorbed in, be devoted to, put one's heart into, focus on/upon 等。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷) Though overtourism is described as a problem affecting the entire world, it's actually concentrated (concentrate) to a small number of extremely popular spots.

②(2023·全国乙卷听力) Well, when I work, I often concentrate so much on what I'm doing that I may have a hard time dealing with things that come up unexpectedly.

(2)写作微练

①(2024·浙江1月卷读后续写之动作描写)然后,她**集中精力慢跑**到跑道弯曲的地方。

Then she concentrated on jogging to the spot where the track curved.

②(2024·浙江1月卷应用文写作之投稿)其次,"站起来伸展"运动可以提高你的注意力,使你更容易**把注意力集中在课堂上**。

Second, the "Stand Up and Stretch" exercise can improve your focus, making it easier to concentrate your attention on class.

3. 强调句型

[教材原文]**It is** after all we **who** are the visitors to their world.

毕竟,我们才是他们世界的访客。

[句式分析]本句中 It is... who...为强调句型,此时 who 可以改为 that。

[归纳拓展]

强调句型基本结构

(1)陈述句式:It is/was+被强调部分+that/who(强调部分为主语,指人)+句子其余部分.

(2)一般疑问句式:Is/Was it+被强调部分+that/who+句子其余部分?

(3)特殊疑问句式:特殊疑问词+is/was it+that+句子其余部分?

(4)含有 not... until...的句式:It is/was not until+强调部分+that+非强调部分.

名师点拨

强调句型的判断：将强调句结构中的 It is/was 和 that/who 去掉，如果句子所剩下的部分不缺少任何成分，仍是一个完整的句子，那么这个句子就是强调句，否则就是其他从句。

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①It was only when the car pulled up in front of our house that we saw Lily in the passenger seat.

②(2025·全国一卷) I realized it was me who was at fault.

③ It's because of your effort in class that you managed to get the first place in the English contest held recently in our school.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之活动报道)**正是通过这次难忘的经历**，我们才意识到保护动植物的重要性。

It is through the unforgettable experience that we realise the importance of protecting animals and plants.

②(读后续写之主旨升华)**正是在那一刻**我才意识到无论我们面临什么困难，我们都不能放弃我们的希望。

It was not until that moment that I realised whatever difficulty we are faced with, we mustn't give up our hope.

多义词汇 专练

1. freeze

A. *v*. 结冰　　B. *v*. 冷冻贮藏

C. *v*. (因害怕等)呆住

①We ate some of the fruit and **froze** the rest. B

②Water **freezes** when the temperature falls below 0℃. A

③The child **froze** at the sight of the snake. C

2. Birds **concentrate** in places where they can find enough food. B

A. *v*. 集中(注意力)　B. *v*. 聚集

C. *v*. 浓缩

3. Several of those who survived the accident have been taken to hospital in a state of **shock**. C

A. *n*. 震惊　B. *n*. 剧烈震动　C. *n*. 休克

Unit 5 课后素养评价（二十）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. It was a shock (震惊) to discover that he lied to his parents about it.

2. Honesty, industry and kindness are elements (要素) of a good life.

3. What if it rained and then froze (结冰) all through those months?

4. If I find the thief, my immediate reaction (反应) will be to tell the police.

5. She is a talented musician as well as being a photographer (摄影师).

6. Adam pressed a button (按钮) and waited for the lift.

7. She did not notice the man until he moved into her path (小道).

8. He stared at his own image (影像) reflected in the water.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. I was shocked (shock) when I read about his death in today's newspaper.

2. This type of flower changes direction in reaction to the light.

3. Mother has not yet recovered from the serious illness, but her health is improving gradually day by day.

4. The elderly mother sits in the armchair, staring (stare) at the family picture on the wall quietly.

5. With a lot of necessary work to do (do), I couldn't arrive there at the appointed time.

6. The animals' activity was captured on film by security cameras.

7. One day while he was working as a lorry driver, he had a close encounter with the accident.

8. He observed a stranger hanging (hang) around the shop at 12 last night.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

stare at; concentrate on; after all; a variety of; up to; at a speed of; show respect to; be known/famous for

1. I can't concentrate on my work when I'm tired.
2. He lay on the lawn, staring at the sky.
3. A variety of food is sold at a supermarket.
4. After all, 15 minutes of exercise is better than nothing.
5. This dining hall can hold up to 2,000 students.
6. It is a coastal city and it is known/famous for its beaches.
7. The public show respect to the rescuers (救助者) and send their best wishes to them.
8. The train is travelling at a speed of sixty miles an hour.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. It was this man that/who helped me out when I was in trouble.
   我身处困境时,是这个人帮助我度过了难关。
2. Suddenly one of the boys lost his balance and fell off his bike.
   突然,其中一个男孩失去了平衡,从自行车上掉了下来。
3. By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand.
   窗户边坐着一个年轻人,手里拿着一本杂志。
4. The patient is gradually recovering from the operation.
   病人正逐渐从手术中恢复过来。
5. While his mother was away, the boy cried from time to time.
   当男孩的母亲不在身边时,男孩会不时地哭泣。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

Water goes around and around the earth in a never-ending journey **1.** called (call) the water cycle. **2.** The sun heats up lakes, oceans and other wet places on the earth. When the water gets enough **3.** warmth (warm), it changes into vapour (蒸汽). Plants also give off lots of water vapour. After **4.** cooling (cool) off high in the sky and becoming clouds, some of the vapour falls back to the earth in a new place as rain or snow. This cycle **5.** happens (happen) over and over again.

The ground can absorb water. If you could see the groundwater, it wouldn't look like a lake **6.** or river. The groundwater is mixed in with the rocks and sand **7.** that/which lie in layers (层) below the earth's surface.

Groundwater moves along slowly. Can you imagine how slowly? Maybe 1.5 kilometres in one century. Some of this water has been underground for **8.** thousands (thousand) of years. And once groundwater **9.** is drawn (draw) out of the ground from a deep well by people, it may take many years for water from another place to take **10.** its (it) place.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你的美国朋友彼得(Peter)想了解大象。请你用英语给他写一封邮件,根据下面的提示向他介绍一下大象这种动物。

1. 大象是陆地上最大的动物,刚出生时约有 100 千克重,1 米高;
2. 大象的皮肤是灰色的,有长鼻子和两只大耳朵。它们通常生活在河谷中,以草和树叶为食,每天喝大量的水;
3. 通常群居,互相照顾,非洲大象每年都会迁徙。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

The elephant is the largest animal on land today. It weighs about one hundred kilogrammes and is about one metre high when born. The elephant, whose colour is grey, has a long trunk and two big ears. It usually lives in valleys where there is enough grass or leaves, for it mainly feeds on grass and leaves. It drinks a lot of water every day. The elephants in Africa migrate to find nice food every year. They usually live in groups and care for each other.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was a cold December afternoon. Lily, a 16-year-old high school student, was walking home from school alone. The wind was howling, and snowflakes were dancing in the air, covering the roads and trees with a thick white blanket. She

pulled her coat tightly around herself and quickened her steps, anxious to get back to the warmth of her home.

As she passed an old alley（小巷）near her neighbourhood, she heard a faint whimpering sound. Curious but a little frightened, Lily hesitated（犹豫）for a moment. The sound was soft and weak, like that of a small animal in trouble. "Should I check it out?" she thought to herself. Her parents had always told her not to talk to strangers or go into dark alleys, but the pitiful sound touched her heart.

She took a deep breath and walked slowly into the alley. The snow was deeper here, and the wind seemed to blow even harder. After walking a few steps, she found a small, shaking puppy huddled behind a pile of old boxes. Its fur was covered with snow and dirt, and its eyes were filled with fear and helplessness. Lily's heart melted immediately. She knelt down（跪）gently and reached out her hands. The puppy looked at her cautiously, then slowly moved closer and licked her hands.

Lily knew she couldn't leave the poor puppy alone in the cold. But she also worried: her mother showed no interest in furry animals, and her father was always busy with work. Would her family agree to keep it? With a determined look, she wrapped（包，裹）the puppy in her scarf and held it tightly in her arms. She hurried home, hoping that her parents would understand her decision.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

As soon as Lily got home, her mother's eyes fell on the small puppy. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

A week later, the once-frightened puppy had become an important part of the family. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

As soon as Lily got home, her mother's eyes fell on the small puppy. "Lily, what's this?" her mother asked, a little surprised. Lily hugged the puppy tightly, explaining how she found it shivering in the cold alley, helpless and frightened. She begged her mother to let her keep it, promising to take full responsibility for feeding and cleaning it. Her mother softened when she saw the puppy's innocent eyes and Lily's determined look. Just then, her father came home and, after hearing the story, smiled and nodded. The puppy licked their hands gently, as if expressing thanks.

A week later, the once-frightened puppy had become an important part of the family. It was no longer shy and would run to greet Lily and her parents when they got home. Lily named it Snowy for its white fur after being cleaned. She fed it every morning and played with it after school, while her mother even prepared a soft bed for it. Her father, though busy, would take Snowy for a walk on weekends. Snowy brought endless joy to the family, and Lily knew her kindness had given the little puppy a warm home and themselves a precious companion.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 应用文写作

——描写一种动物

○写作指导

关于动物的话题有三种写作文体：

1. 说明文：介绍某种动物，可从动物的外形、习性、特点等方面展开。
2. 议论文：讨论动物与人类的关系以及如何保护动物等。
3. 应用文：以保护动物为话题的建议信、演讲稿及倡议书等。写作时通常先说明现状，比如动物数量减少，再分析其原因，然后提出一些可行的建议。

○典题示例

请根据以下要点写一篇文章，介绍一下大熊猫。

1. 大熊猫是中国的稀有动物，也是地球上最珍稀的动物之一，受到人们的喜爱；
2. 大熊猫生活在山里，以竹子为食。过去，由于山林遭到破坏，竹子被砍伐，野生大熊猫很难觅食；
3. 我国现已建立多个自然保护区来保护大熊猫。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 引入话题 2. 具体介绍大熊猫的情况 3. 总结

Step 2：要点补全

①The giant panda is not only（不仅）a rare animal in China, but also（而且）one of the rarest animals on Earth.

②It is loved by people（受到人们的喜爱）all over the world.

③The mountains are home to the giant panda, and it feeds on bamboo（以竹子为食）there.

④In the past（过去），wild giant pandas had trouble finding food（很难觅食）because their mountain forests were destroyed and bamboo was cut down（被砍伐）.

⑤To save them（为了救它们），China has founded several nature reserves.

⑥It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately（立即采取措施来保护它们）.

Step 3：句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句①升级为 not only 置于句首的倒装句

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China but also one of the rarest animals on Earth.

②将 Step 2 中句③升级为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo.

Step 4：连句成篇

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China but also one of the rarest animals on Earth. It is loved by people all over the world.

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo. In the past, wild giant pandas had trouble finding food because their mountain forests were destroyed and bamboo was cut down. Now, things have improved. To save them, China has founded several nature reserves.

It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately.

○学以致用

请根据要点写一篇短文，介绍华南虎。

动物	华南虎(South China Tiger)是世界级濒危物种之一
栖息地	中国
现有的数目	野生数量为0;还有200多只华南虎生活在保护区
濒危的原因	栖息地的减少;人类为了获取虎皮和虎骨对其进行捕杀
保护措施	拒绝购买虎制品

注意:1. 词数80左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

The South China Tiger, whose habitat is in China, is one of the most endangered animals in the world.

There are only about 30 to 80 South China Tigers living in the reserve with none in the wild. The reduction of their habitats and people's hunting for their fur and bones have left them in danger. So it is high time that we should take actions to protect them.

Don't buy any tiger products or we will only see them in the museums in the near future.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

THE PET LAMB

Almost all the possessions had been sold to buy food and clothing for the family. At last, nothing was left but the pet lamb, Daisy. At the thought of parting with the little creature, Mrs Grant felt sad because the children loved it very much. Having struggled hard, she had to make up her mind to sell the lamb. But she could not ask any child to go for the butcher. Finally, she went herself with a heavy heart, dragging her leaden feet, and bargained with the butcher for the sale of Daisy.

While the children were all playing with the lamb, the butcher and his boy came to the door.

"You see I am here for the lamb," said the butcher in a loud voice. Hearing this, one child ran to her mother's side, and asked what was happening in alarm. Mrs Grant gently pushed the child aside, bent down and was about to tell the truth.

"That's my lamb now, Charlie!" said the butcher's boy in a playful tone, going up to Daisy with a rope in his hand.

"No, it is not your lamb. It is ours!" said Charlie, placing himself in front of it.

But the boy, pushing him aside, threw a rope round Daisy's neck, and began to drag the little creature away. The poor lamb bleated very sadly. The cry of grief which fell upon the mother's ears was too much for her, and her heart sank within her. In a moment, begging with tearful eyes, the children were all around their mother with voices choking with sobs for their little pet.

"Pray tell your boy to stop a moment," she said in husky (沙哑的) tones to the butcher. The boy, at a word from the butcher, stopped dragging the lamb, and the little creature stopped its bleating.

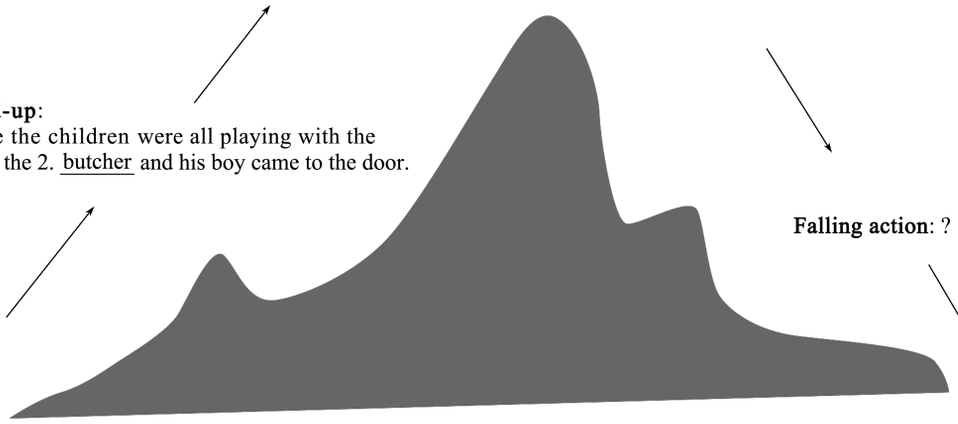
In a trembling voice, Mrs Grant explained to them how badly off they were after their father died. She also added that the kind butcher had given the money for Daisy. With this money, she could buy them bread to eat.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

But the more she explained, the stronger her children begged for Daisy. _____

The butcher, who had been watching all, was touched in his heart. _____

任务一：梳理故事情节，完成故事山（Story Mountain）。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： But the more she explained, the stronger her children begged for Daisy.	1. What did the children do and say to convince their mother not to sell the lamb? The children sincerely pleaded with their mother. 2. What was the children's feeling? How about the pet lamb? They felt very sad and were unable to hold back tears. The pet lamb was seized by fear. 3. How did Mrs Grant feel? What did she do or say? Mrs Grant was speechless, not knowing how to persuade her children to sell the lamb.
Paragraph 2： The butcher, who had been watching all, was touched in his heart.	1. What did the butcher do and say when seeing all this? The butcher abandoned purchasing the lamb. 2. What was the reaction of the children? The children cheered and jumped with joy upon hearing it. 3. How could the story be ended reasonably? The children did part-time jobs as a way to give him back the money.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. After these years' company, a strong bond（牢固的纽带）had already grown between Daisy and them.
2. The idea of getting the pet lamb slaughtered and served as food（充当食物）was simply revolting.
3. The children protested and pleaded, and Charlie even declared that he would eat grass instead of bread（将吃草而不吃面包）as long as his mother changed her mind（改变主意）.
4. Mrs Grant was lost for words（无言以对）.

5. After all, before a group of children in defence of their companion（为他们的同伴辩护）, any reason would lose its power of persuasion.

6. Speaking as gently as possible（尽量温柔）, he promised that they could keep Daisy and the money.

7. "However," he added, "you shall pay me back（回报我）by helping around at my store."

8. The dramatic turn of the event（事情的戏剧性转折）set the children leaping for joy.

9. They smiled through tearful eyes and expressed heartfelt gratitude to（对……表达了由衷的感激）the butcher.

10. Charlie, in his excitement（激动地）, kissed the butcher's boy on the cheeks, who dropped his lofty pretence and blushed.

11. In the midst of this, Daisy started her happy bleats, as if rejoicing in her narrow escape（仿佛在为自己的死里逃生而欢欣）.

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

【参考范文】

But the more she explained, the stronger her children begged for Daisy. After these years' company, a strong bond had already grown between Daisy and them. The idea of getting the pet lamb slaughtered and served as food was simply revolting. The children protested and pleaded, and Charlie even declared that he would eat grass instead of bread as long as his mother changed her mind. Mrs Grant was lost for words. After all, before a group of children in defence of their companion, any reason would lose its power of persuasion.

The butcher, who had been watching all, was touched in his heart. Speaking as gently as possible, he promised that they could keep Daisy and the money. "However," he added, "you shall pay me back by helping around at my store." The dramatic turn of the event set the children leaping for joy. They smiled through tearful eyes and expressed heartfelt gratitude to the butcher. Charlie, in his excitement, kissed the butcher's boy on the cheeks, who dropped his lofty pretence and blushed. In the midst of this, Daisy started her happy bleats, as if rejoicing in her narrow escape.

单元质量评估(五)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Frances Stevens Reese Woodland Trail Guide

The Woodland Trail was opened to the public on October 21, 1997. Boscobel's Board of Directors adopted a formal decision of naming the Woodland Trail in honour of a former Boscobel board member, Frances Stevens Reese (1917—2003), one year after his death.

The trail (小径) is approximately 10 miles in length, leading down to Constitution Forest. When the West Point Glass Factory was operating during the Civil War, trees for miles around were cleared to provide firewood. Walking out of the forest, you will find a large mass of native hard rock about three billion years old.

Throughout this country path, you will find picture boards identifying birds and plants local to this region. You will also find signs with historic and environmental information written by area specialists.

When you take a walk through this "undiscovered" forest land, please be a considerate guest.

Before walking the trail, please purchase a pass in the Carriage House. Plan ahead, so you will be back by closing time.

Follow the trail markers and remain on the trail. Besides protecting the fragile forest ecosystem, you will reduce the risk of poison plants and snakes.

Leave rocks, plants, animals and artworks where you see them so that the person behind you can have the same experience.

Carry out whatever you carry in because there are no rubbish containers on the trail. If you happen to see a piece of litter, be a good guest and pick it up.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了以Boscobel前董事会成员Frances Stevens Reese的名字命名的一条林地小径的情况和参观时的注意事项。

1. When was the trail named to honour Frances Stevens Reese?

A. In 1997.　　B. In 1917.

C. In 2003.　　D. In 2004.

D　细节理解题。根据第一段第二句"Boscobel's Board of Directors adopted a formal decision of naming the Woodland Trail in honour of a former Boscobel board member, Frances Stevens Reese (1917—2003), one year after his death."可知,这条纪念Frances Stevens Reese的小道是在2004年命名的。故选D。

2. What can you see along the trail?

A. An old battle field.

B. A glass factory.

C. Information signs.

D. Rock houses.

C　细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,你可以看到沿途的信息标志。故选C。

3. What should you do as a thoughtful visitor?

A. Leave the wildlife undisturbed.

B. Throw the rubbish into the dustbins.

C. Make reservations in the Carriage House.

D. Protect the markers of the Woodland Trail.

A　推理判断题。根据第四至八段的内容可知,要做一个体贴的游客,不要打扰野生生物。故选A。

B

Is it easy for you to get angry? Do you sometimes think others treat you badly? Maybe the story below can bring you something.

Rick was a young boy who was often angry at everything around him. To help Rick, his mum came home with a canvas (画布) and paint. "You are good at painting. Whenever you feel bad about something, paint it instead of getting angry," said his mother.

Though not that happy, Rick gave it a try. After creating many paintings, he took his artwork to his mum. "Tell me, Rick. What are these paintings about?" his mother asked. "The first is about how some kids in my class show off their new clothes. The next is about my teacher who always tells me about how I'm doing things wrong. And the

last painting is about how one of my schoolmates said I should change my attitude. They all made me so angry," Rick replied.

Rick's mum took Rick by her side and told him, "Don't you see, Rick? You're getting so angry but you never try to understand why." Then she explained carefully, "All the people you were angry with did nothing wrong. The kids were showing off their good clothes but never laughed at you for not being able to afford any. Your teacher scolded (责备) you because you made trouble in class. And your schoolmate was only trying to help you correct your mistakes."

Rick's mum smiled and said, "Next time you get angry, take a deep breath and walk away for a couple of seconds. And when you come back, talk to the person you're angry with. You might keep your cool in this way."

Rick took his mum's advice and became less angry. Now he was in a good mood.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章通过叙述 Rick 的经历和他的母亲如何帮助他控制情绪的故事，向读者传达了一个关于理解和控制愤怒情绪的道理。

4. Why did Rick's mum ask him to paint?

A. Because she wanted to know what would make him angry and help him.

B. Because she thought painting was the best way to make Rick happy.

C. Because every time Rick painted, he didn't think about any unhappy things.

D. Because only painting could keep Rick from getting angry with his friends.

A　细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知，Rick 的妈妈要他画画是因为她想知道什么会让他生气并帮助他。故选 A。

5. What was/were not in the paintings?

A. Rick's classmates.

B. Rick's teacher.

C. Rick's mother.

D. Rick's schoolmate.

C　细节理解题。根据第三段中的"'The first is about how some kids in my class show off their new clothes. The next is about my teacher who always tells me about how I'm doing things wrong. And the last painting is about how one of my schoolmates said I should change my attitude. They all made me so angry,' Rick replied."可知，Rick 的母亲不在画里。故选 C。

6. What can we infer from the passage?

A. Rick was often angry with his mother.

B. Rick is not good at painting.

C. The kids in Rick's class aren't friendly.

D. Rick isn't from a rich family.

D　推理判断题。根据倒数第三段中的"Then she explained carefully, 'All the people you were angry with did nothing wrong. The kids were showing off their good clothes but never laughed at you for not being able to afford any.'"可知，Rick 买不起衣服。由此可推知，Rick 的家庭不是一个富有的家庭。故选 D。

7. Which can be the best title for the passage?

A. An Angry Boy

B. Beautiful Paintings

C. Trouble in Class

D. A Sad Story

A　标题归纳题。纵观全文尤其是第二段的内容可知，本文主要讲述了一个经常对周围的一切都生气的男孩，所以 A 项"一个愤怒的男孩"是本文最好的标题。故选 A。

C

In the far north, well above the Arctic Circle in Alaska, ground squirrels (地松鼠) are like little balls within a deep hole in the ground. If you look at one, you might think it is dead. The squirrel is as cold as ice. Its body temperature is −2℃. Its heart beats only once every 15 seconds. Its breathing stops for minutes at a time.

It's not exanimate, of course—just hibernating (冬眠). But spring is on its way to Alaska. As the days are becoming longer and the ground becomes warm, the Arctic ground squirrels will be warm, too. At first, the increase will be almost too small to notice. "You see them begin to breathe a little more quickly—see their heart rate speed up," says Brian Barnes, a zoologist of the University of Alaska. "As they get up to 10℃ to 20℃, you see them shivering (颤抖) quite clearly," he notes. "Just as we shiver." This shivering is a type of way to create heat. "Once their body temperatures rise above 30℃, they wake up, clean themselves, and move," he says. A

squirrel that looked dead a few hours before is now very much alive.

Arctic ground squirrels are among the world's coolest hibernators. Chilling out (放松) for months at a time lets them grow in this extremely cold place, where food is short. By studying how ground squirrels hibernate, scientists hope to answer some big questions. Among them: How do these animals go from warm to cold and back again? And might people ever do the same? The ability to chill out could help humans who suffer from brain injuries and heart problems survive.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了北极地松鼠的冬眠习惯,以及研究这种动物冬眠的科学意义。

8. What's the first paragraph mainly about?

A. Where ground squirrels hibernate.

B. What ground squirrels look like.

C. Why ground squirrels hibernate.

D. How ground squirrels hibernate.

D 段落大意题。第一段介绍了地松鼠在地底下蜷缩成球状,体温只有零下2摄氏度,像冰块一样,心脏每15秒跳动一次,呼吸一次要停止好几分钟,再结合下一段可知它是在冬眠。因此,本段主要介绍了地松鼠是如何冬眠的。故选D。

9. What does the underlined word "exanimate" in the second paragraph mean?

A. Cold. B. Weak. C. Dead. D. Tired.

C 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的"If you look at one, you might think it is dead."及画线词后的"... just hibernating (冬眠)."可知,地松鼠看起来就像死了一样,但它只是在冬眠,并没有死。故画线词的意思是"死的"。故选C。

10. Why does a ground squirrel shiver before coming to life?

A. To increase its body temperature.

B. To speed up its heart rate.

C. To restore its breathing.

D. To clean its body.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"This shivering is a type of way to create heat."可知,这种颤抖是一种产生热量的方式。因此,地松鼠在苏醒前会颤抖是为了提高体温。故选A。

11. What is the purpose of the last paragraph?

A. To show the results of the study.

B. To show the purpose of the study.

C. To show how the study was carried out.

D. To show people's interest in ground squirrels.

B 推理判断题。最后一段主要介绍了科学家希望通过研究地松鼠冬眠解决一些有关人类的大问题,如:这些动物是如何从暖变寒再变暖的?人们可以这样做吗?放松的能力能帮助有脑部损伤和心脏问题的人继续存活。由此可推断出,最后一段是为了介绍这次研究的目的。故选B。

D

Scientists in Australia have used artificial intelligence (AI) to help them locate (定位) a rare bird called the Plains-wanderer. This new information will help scientists protect the birds, which are endangered.

The Plains-wanderer is a small bird that lives in Australia's grasslands, not just any grasslands. Plains-wanderers are picky. There can't be too much grass or too little. For this reason, scientists sometimes call them the "Goldilocks" of animals. The birds were once common in eastern Australia. But that's changed, as grasslands have been turned into farms and cities. The birds' number has fallen by over 85% in recent decades. Scientists believe there are now only 250 to 1,000 of the birds left in the wild.

To protect these rare birds, scientists first had to learn where they were. So Zoos Victoria, the group behind the recent effort to locate Plains-wanderers, worked with Queensland University of Technology on a plan to locate the birds. Since Plains-wanderers are hard to find, the team chose to listen carefully to the birds instead. Female Plains-wanderers make an unusual "Oom" call, and this was the key to locating them.

The researchers set up 35 special recording devices called "song metres" in nine different grassy areas where Plains-wanderers could possibly have been. Song metres record all the sounds made in an area over a long period of time. The song metres collected tens of thousands of hours of recordings—far more than humans could analyse. So the researchers put the recordings to an AI system trained to find out the calls of Plains-wanderers.

The AI system discovered Plains-wanderer calls

coming from two of the sites. It's the first time in over 30 years that the Plains-wanderer has been found west of Melbourne. Mr Hartnett, who works with Zoos Victoria, says the discovery is "huge".

The new information will help scientists protect the birds. The team plans to work with the land owners to help protect the birds, and the grasslands they depend on. And the researchers are still "listening"—using song metres and AI to locate more of these Goldilocks birds.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了澳大利亚科学家利用特殊记录设备和人工智能定位濒危领鹨，并阐述了该鸟类数量减少的原因、定位方法以及此次发现的意义。

12. What is the reason for the decrease of birds?

A. Climate change.

B. Loss of habitat.

C. Spread of diseases.

D. Increase of natural enemies.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"But that's changed, as grasslands have been turned into farms and cities. The birds' number has fallen by over 85% in recent decades."可知，鸟类数量减少的原因是栖息地的丧失。故选B。

13. What is the most important way to find birds?

A. To take photos of birds in the air.

B. To use food or water to attract them.

C. To do unusual searches on the ground.

D. To listen for the female birds' unique call.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Female Plains-wanderers make an unusual 'Oom' call, and this was the key to locating them."可知，找到这种鸟最重要的方法是聆听雌鸟独特的叫声。故选D。

14. What is the function of AI system in this project?

A. It analyses recordings of the birds' sounds.

B. It counts the total number of birds in the area.

C. It tells where the birds might move in the future.

D. It creates maps of the grasslands for protection plans.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"So the researchers put the recordings to an AI system trained to find out the calls of Plains-wanderers."可知，人工智能系统在这个项目中的功能是分析鸟类声音的录音。故选A。

15. What is Mr Hartnett's attitude towards the discovery?

A. Positive.

B. Unconcerned.

C. Doubtful.

D. Objective.

A 观点态度题。根据倒数第二段中的"Mr Hartnett, who works with Zoos Victoria, says the discovery is 'huge'."可知，Hartnett先生对这一发现持积极的态度。故选A。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Eco-Friendly Changes You Can Make to Your Home

As part of the move to save the environment and money, many people have made lots of changes to their homes over the past few years, and the trend（趋势）is set to continue in the years ahead. **16**.

Switch out your light bulbs（灯泡）.

You might not think that this could make a big difference. **17**. With LED light bulbs being up to 75% more efficient than standard light bulbs, it could save about 7.75 dollars per month to light your home if you made the switch to LED.

Turn to solar energy（太阳能）.

Rising energy costs are forcing people to look for new methods of powering their homes. **18**. It's also a clean, renewable energy source, meaning not only is it cheaper for you, but environmentally friendly to power your home.

19?

Wind power is more stable than solar, and it can be used to produce power. Like solar options, using wind means that it won't matter as you'll have a continuous power source of your own.

Seal（密封）gaps around doors and windows.

One very low-cost option to help your home be more efficient is to stop the air from leaving your home. If you have gaps around doors and windows, the air from your air conditioning system will be heading literally straight outside. **20**.

A. Is wind power an option

B. The sun is one resource that isn't going away

C. Is it a challenge to take advantage of wind power
D. So make the most of your air conditioning system
E. We've listed a few options to make your home more eco-friendly
F. This will increase your energy bill as your system will work harder
G. However, lighting accounts for around 9% of a typical home's energy use

答案:16～20 EGBAF

Ⅲ. 完形填空

On a cold winter day, my friend Dave, his son Brett and I were skiing along a wooded path. At that time, a dark shape among the trees caught our __21__. From a distance, it looked like an animal hanging from a branch—we thought it was a __22__ of the eye, never expecting we were about to step into a life-or-death fight.

Coming closer, we were __23__ by the sight: a young pine marten (松貂) was hanging in mid-air, its right front foot stuck tightly in a __24__ tied to a tree by a chain. The animal appeared __25__, its head falling loosely (松散地) on its shoulder, yet when it __26__ we were there, it gathered its last bit of strength to __27__ its head, eyes wide with fear before falling down again, worn out by __28__.

At once, Dave __29__ the shaking marten in his coat to calm it. Brett and I tried hard to break the chain nailed to the tree trunk. As we __30__ opened the trap off the injured foot of the poor pine marten, __31__ ran down our cheeks out of pity.

We laid it on the snow, and to our joy, it suddenly got up and __32__. When it reached safety 30 metres away, it stopped, turned around and __33__ straight at us. At that touching moment, we felt a silent __34__. This experience changed us, showing that caring can cure even the deepest wounds between humans and wildlife, and that every __35__ act has great meaning.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和朋友在滑雪途中救助一只被困松貂的经历,展现了人与野生动物之间的善意与联结。

21. A. imagination　　B. attention
C. clothing　　D. breath
B　根据前文的"a dark shape"及后文的"From a distance, it looked like an animal hanging from a branch"可推知,此处指这个黑影吸引了作者他们的注意。catch one's attention 是固定搭配,意为"引起某人的注意"。故选 B。

22. A. trick　　B. skill
C. secret　　D. reward
A　根据前文的"we thought it was"及后文的"never expecting we were about to step into a life-or-death fight"可知,作者他们一开始以为这只是眼睛出现的错觉,并非真的动物。故选 A。

23. A. attracted　　B. moved
C. shocked　　D. confused
C　根据前文的"we thought it was a __22__ of the eye"及后文的"a young pine marten (松貂) was hanging in mid-air"可知,眼前真实的被困场景和作者他们最初的猜测完全不同,让他们感到震惊。故选 C。

24. A. rope　　B. net
C. tree　　D. trap
D　根据下文的"opened the trap off the injured foot of the poor pine marten"可知,此处指松貂的爪子卡在了陷阱里。故选 D。

25. A. lifeless　　B. energetic
C. asleep　　D. nervous
A　根据后文的"its head falling loosely (松散地) on its shoulder"可知,松貂头耷拉着的状态表明它看起来毫无生气。故选 A。

26. A. guessed　　B. sensed
C. believed　　D. expected
B　根据后文的"it gathered its last bit of strength to __27__ its head, eyes wide with fear before falling down again"可知,松貂是察觉到了作者他们的存在,才做出了反应。故选 B。

27. A. nod　　B. drop
C. lift　　D. hide
C　根据下文的"before falling down again"可知,松貂先是抬起头,之后又垂了下去。故选 C。

28. A. sadness　　B. loneliness
C. pain　　D. anger
C　根据上文的"its right front foot stuck tightly in a __24__ tied to a tree by a chain"可知,松貂的爪子被紧紧卡住,承受着巨大的痛苦。故选 C。

29. A. covered　　B. touched
C. threw　　D. examined
A　根据后文的"in his coat"可知,Dave 是用外套把松貂包裹起来。故选 A。

30. A. quickly　　B. gently
C. easily　　D. accidentally
B　根据下文的“the injured foot of the poor pine marten”可知，面对受伤的动物，作者他们的动作必须轻柔，以免造成二次伤害。故选B。

31. A. water　　B. sweat
C. blood　　D. tears
D　根据后文的“ran down our cheeks out of pity”可知，出于对松貂的同情，作者他们流下了眼泪。故选D。

32. A. fell down　　B. walked back
C. ran away　　D. stood still
C　根据后文的“it reached safety 30 metres away”可知，松貂站起来后跑向了安全的地方。故选C。

33. A. looked　　B. laughed
C. shouted　　D. pointed
A　根据后文的“straight at us”及“At that touching moment”可知，松貂停下后，回头直视着作者他们，这一时刻让人动容。故选A。

34. A. competition　　B. connection
C. argument　　D. agreement
B　根据上文的“Dave 29 the shaking marten in his coat to calm it”“turned around and 33 straight at us”及下文的“caring can cure even the deepest wounds between humans and wildlife”可知，这次经历让作者他们感受到了人与动物之间的联结。故选B。

35. A. brave　　B. polite
C. funny　　D. kind
D　根据上文的“tried hard to break the chain nailed to the tree trunk”及“caring can cure even the deepest wounds”可知，救助松貂的行为是一种善良的举动。故选D。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

China recently shared exciting news about its space exploration efforts, and revealed the names of its manned lunar lander and a new crew spaceship. This development marks **36.** an important step in the nation's efforts **37.** to explore (explore) outer space. The lunar lander is named Lanyue, **38.** which means “embracing (拥抱) the moon”. This choice reflects the dream and confidence of the Chinese people in their space exploration efforts.

The crew spaceship has been named Mengzhou, or Dream Vessel, **39.** indicating (indicate) its role in realising the dream of landing on the moon and exploring new frontiers in space. Mengzhou will have two versions: one for exploring the moon and the other for trips between Earth **40.** and the Tiangong space station, and the latter takes over the duties from the current Shenzhou spaceship.

These names, Lanyue and Mengzhou, were selected **41.** carefully (careful) from nearly 2,000 suggestions by the public to show the wide **42.** participation (participate) and interest of the Chinese people **43.** in their country's space missions. China plans to send its first manned mission to the moon around 2030. The Lanyue lander is designed with a landing and propulsion (推进) section to carry two astronauts to the moon. The Mengzhou spacecraft, designed for space travel, **44.** includes (include) a reentry module for the astronauts and a service module **45.** equipped (equip) with power and propulsion systems.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假定你是李华，正在伦敦学习英语，你希望加入当地的“野生动物保护”志愿者协会。请你用英语写一封80词左右的电子邮件申请加入，内容包括：

1. 加入的原因；
2. 你的优势；
3. 表达期望。

【参考范文】

Dear Sir or Madam,

I'm Li Hua, a student from China learning English in London. Now, I'm writing to be one of you to protect wild animals.

As we know, the number of wild animals is decreasing owing to losing their habitats or being hunted and killed. And I really want to do something for them.

Having been a member of the local wildlife protection association for years, I'm familiar with what wild animal protection is about. So I think I can become a good volunteer.

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once upon a time, two brothers who lived on neighbouring farms fell into conflict. It was the first serious disagreement in forty years of farming side by side, sharing machinery, and trading labour and goods as needed without a hitch.

Then the long cooperation fell apart. It began with a small misunderstanding and then grew into a major difference, and finally it exploded into an exchange of bitter words followed by weeks of silence.

One morning, there was a knock on John's door. He opened it to find a man with a carpenter's toolbox. "I'm looking for a few days' work," he said. "Perhaps you have a few jobs here and there. Could I help you?"

"Yes," said John. "I do have a job for you. Look across the small stream at that farm. That's my neighbour's. In fact, it's my younger brother's. Last week there was a meadow (草地) between us and he took his bulldozer (推土机) there and now there is a stream between us. Well, he may have done this to annoy me but I'll do better. See that pile of wood by the barn (谷仓)? I want you to build a fence—an 8-foot-high fence—so I won't need to see his place anymore."

The carpenter said, "I think I understand the situation. Show me the nails and hole-digger and I'll be able to do a job that pleases you."

The older brother had to go to the town for supplies, so he helped the carpenter get everything ready and then he left. The carpenter worked hard all that day measuring, sawing and nailing. At sunset when John returned, the carpenter had just finished his job. John's eyes opened wide and his jaw dropped.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

There was no fence at all. It was a bridge! ____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

They turned to see the carpenter lift the toolbox onto his shoulder. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

There was no fence at all. It was a bridge! A bridge stretched from one side of the creek to the other! John was about to complain about it when he found his younger brother was coming across the bridge with hands outstretched. "You are quite a fellow to build this bridge after all I have said and done," said John's brother. The two brothers met in the middle, taking each other's hand and hugging each other.

They turned to see the carpenter lift the toolbox onto his shoulder. "No, wait! Stay a few more days. We have more jobs for you," said the older brother. "I'd love to stay on," the carpenter said. "But I have many more bridges to build." Observing the carpenter leaving in the sunset, the two brothers waved grateful goodbye to him. What a thought-provoking story! Every day we have the choice of building a fence or a bridge. One leads to separation and anger while the other leads to openness and friendship, the latter of which makes the situation quite pleasant.

Unit 6 At one with nature

单元概览

学习导航

The thematic context of this unit is "Humans and Nature", and the topic is the harmony between nature and humans. In this unit, you will read "Longji Rice Terraces" to understand how they work and why they were built. You also have the chance to read texts about natural dyes, the Inuit life, the British love of gardening and the culture of herbal and fruit teas. Through this unit, you are expected to think deeply about the relationship between human beings and nature, and finally form a correct attitude towards respecting nature, using nature wisely and living in harmony with nature.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确理解和使用与"人与环境"主题相关的单词和词组表达人与自然和谐相处的事例。
		语法	能理解定语从句的功能及意义，了解"介词＋关系代词"的用法。
		语篇	1. 能厘清文章结构，了解说明文的文体特征，并迅速找出关键细节在文中的位置； 2. 了解概要写作的文体特点和内容要素，能运用所学内容进行概要写作，总结文章大意。
		语用	能理解段落主题句的功能，即陈述或暗示段落的主要内容或话题。
	语言技能	听	能听懂一位因纽特人的独白，辩证地思考人与环境的关系，了解不同地区人们的生活、传统与文化。
		说	能进行关于在热带地区和北极地区生活的优点和不便的讨论，且能根据语境的需要正确使用词汇，使口头表达更加准确、自然。
		读	1. 阅读说明文，了解龙脊梯田在不同季节的美景及当地少数民族建造梯田的原因； 2. 阅读说明文，了解英国人对园艺的热爱。
		写	1. 能正确运用定语从句介绍自然景观； 2. 能写一篇关于水果茶和花草茶的概要。
学习能力	1. 能了解人类如何与自然和谐相处，激发英语学习的兴趣； 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源，巩固本单元所学语言知识，丰富自己的相关知识，开阔眼界，提高英语运用能力； 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法，监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。		
文化意识	1. 能了解人与自然和谐相处的情况，正确认识人类生活与自然环境的关系； 2. 增强尊重自然、合理利用和开发自然资源、与自然和谐相处的意识，能了解不同民族的文化习俗，树立文化自信。		
思维品质	1. 能正确判断文章中作者的观点和态度，辩证地理解人类生活与自然环境的关系，科学分析和评价不同地域人类生活的差异及原因，学习与自然和谐相处； 2. 能在深入理解文本的同时联系自身实际，实现知识与思维能力的迁移。		

必备知识

必背单词	wrap，sheet，dynasty，region，therefore，shallow，prevent，harmony，design，harm，agriculture，replace，material，priority，beauty，barrier，living，narrow，platform，desert，climate，inside，publish，expert，branch，rent，limited，benefit，pleasant，energy，system
重点词块	turn... into，plenty of，be home to，be covered in，in harmony with，from the bottom to the very top，be in doubt，reflect on，wash away，pass down，lead to，go to the trouble to do sth.
重点句型	1. make＋it＋*adj.*＋for sb. to do sth. 2.“否定词＋比较级”表示最高级含义
单元语法	“介词＋关系代词”引导的定语从句
单元写作	概要写作

★★★

探·究·构·建

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Get the main idea of the text and the author's writing purpose.
2. List the reasons and working principles of building Longji Rice Terraces.
3. Understand local people's concepts of environmental protection.
4. Talk about how to live in harmony with nature.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. completion *n*. 完成，结束
2. dynasty *n*. 朝代
3. region *n*. 地区，区域
4. therefore *adv*. 因此，由此
5. soil *n*. 土壤
6. shallow *adj*. 浅的
7. prevent *v*. 阻挡，防止
8. harmony *n*. 融洽相处，和谐
9. design *v*. 设计
10. harm *v*. 伤害，损害
11. crop *n*. 庄稼，作物
12. agriculture *n*. 农业
13. provide... for... 为……提供……
14. be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地
15. be covered in 被覆盖在……下面
16. go to the trouble to do 费心做……
17. from the bottom to the very top 从底部一直延伸到顶部
18. pass down 传下来；传递

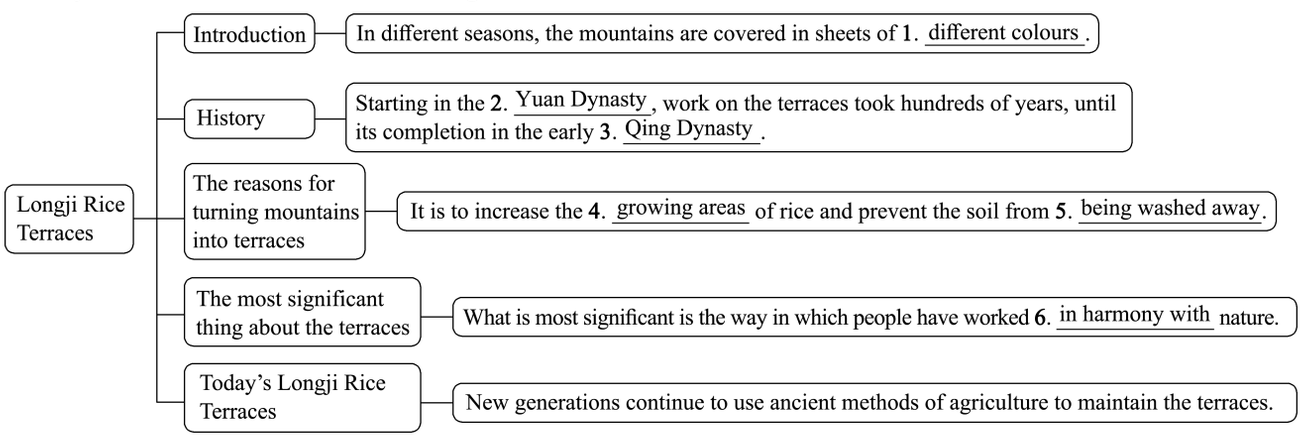
(二)阅读词汇

1. sheet *n*. (冰或水等的)一大片
2. frost *n*. 霜
3. terrace *n*. 梯田
4. wrap *v*. 包，裹
5. steep *adj*. 陡的，陡峭的
6. vapour *n*. 蒸气
7. plenty of 充足的，相当多的
8. prevent... from 阻挡，防止；使……免于……
9. turn... into... 把……变成……
10. wash away 冲走
11. in harmony with 与……和谐相处

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the main idea of the text?
   A. The Longji Rice Terraces will have a bright future.
   B. How people worked in harmony with nature to create the Longji Rice Terraces.
   C. The Longji Rice Terraces are fascinating all around the year.
   D. The reason why Longji Rice Terraces were built.
2. What dynasty can the terraces date back to?
   A. The Yuan Dynasty.
   B. The Ming Dynasty.
   C. The Qing Dynasty.
   D. The Tang Dynasty.
3. How many reasons are there for locals to build terraces?
   A. One. B. Two. C. Three. D. Four.
4. How do the local people get along with nature?
   A. Badly. B. Harmoniously.
   C. Worse. D. Not mentioned.

答案：1～4 BABB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But perhaps what is most significant is the way in which people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。what is most significant 是 what 引导的主语从句，what 在从句中作主语；is 是系动词；the way 作表语，后面是 in which 引导的定语从句，in which 在此相当于 that，还可以省略。
   [尝试翻译]但也许最重要的还是人们与自然和谐相处，建造梯田并种植水稻的方式。
2. Although modern technology could help produce more crops, these terraces still mean a lot to the local people for whom traditions hold much value.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。although 引导让步状语从句，相当于 though/while；主句中 for whom traditions hold much value 是“介词＋关系代词”引导的定语从句。
   [尝试翻译]尽管现代技术可以帮助提高农作物产量，但这些梯田对珍视传统的当地人来说仍然意义重大。
3. Today, the Longji Rice Terraces attract thousands of visitors who come to admire this great wonder created by people and nature working together.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。who 引导定语从句，修饰前面的名词 visitors；created by people and nature working together 是过去分词短语作后置定语，修饰前面的名词 wonder。
   [尝试翻译]今天，龙脊梯田吸引了成千上万的游客慕名前来欣赏这由人与自然共同创造的壮丽奇观。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Why do the new generations continue to use ancient methods of agriculture?
   Because the local people value traditions and the knowledge is passed down through families.
2. In what other ways do people live in harmony with nature? Give an example.
   Protect wetlands. In our hometown, in order to protect the arrival of wild geese every spring, the local government has protected the wetland, so that wild geese can have a place to live and rest. When wild geese fly around us in spring, it makes us feel at ease.

Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十一）

Section Ⅰ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Wuyi Mountains are located in the northwest of Fujian Province. The mountains rise over 9,000 feet above sea level and are known as the “Roof of Fujian”. Nine streams flow through the region, creating a wonderful view.

Wuyi Mountains are not only known for their natural beauty but also for the tea they produce.

Before the Song Dynasty, the most famous tea came from Beiyuan in Jianzhou. Later, Wuyi Rock Tea won recognition from officials in the capital. As a result, Wuyi Rock Tea replaced Beiyuan tea in popularity.

Wuyi Rock Tea grows in the unpolluted mountains. Its nature is gentle and not overly cold, and it can be stored for a long time. The longer it is stored, the clearer its flavour becomes and the better its taste. In terms of medicinal benefits, it refreshes the mind, reduces worries, cleanses the body, and so on. Regular consumption（饮用）is considered a health choice.

The production of rock tea was firstly started by residents in the mountains. Later, local residents took up the practice, but it was the tea businessmen from Zhangzhou and Quanzhou who truly developed and enlarged the industry. Every spring, these businessmen would bring money and travel north along the river to manage the picking and processing（加工）of tea. By early autumn, they would pack their goods and return downstream.

Regarding the harvesting and processing techniques, tea leaves are only picked at the right time of year, no more than once. The harvested leaves are sorted using a screening method to separate them by size before processing. Furthermore, the processing is all done by hand. Only leaves that have the desired red edges（边缘）and green centres are considered top-quality.

Since tea plants are long-lived crops, with proper care and suitable environmental conditions, they can survive for centuries. There are countless good varieties（品种）in the Mountains, which could provide valuable resources for breeding（育种）research. If these varieties were studied and selectively bred, it could make a great contribution to the tea industry.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了福建武夷山的自然概况，讲述了武夷岩茶的发展历程、自身优势、产业发展推动者及制作工艺，还说明了其茶树种质资源对茶业的价值。

1. What increased popularity of Wuyi Rock Tea?

A. Great growing environment.

B. High production and sales.

C. Increased taste and quality.

D. Praises from capital officials.

D　细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Later, Wuyi Rock Tea won recognition from officials in the capital. As a result, Wuyi Rock Tea replaced Beiyuan tea in popularity.”可知，京城官员的赞誉让武夷岩茶的受欢迎程度得以上升。故选D。

2. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?

A. The growth of Wuyi Rock Tea plants.

B. The advantages of Wuyi Rock Tea.

C. The storage of Wuyi Rock Tea.

D. The effects of tea consumption.

B　段落大意题。根据第三段中的“Wuyi Rock Tea grows in the unpolluted mountains. Its nature is gentle and not overly cold, and it can be stored for a long time. The longer it is stored, the clearer its flavour becomes and the better its taste. In terms of medicinal benefits, it refreshes the mind, reduces worries, cleanses the body, and so on.”可知，第三段主要介绍了武夷岩茶的各项优势。故选B。

3. What drove the industrialisation of Wuyi Rock Tea?

A. The exploration of local people.

B. The money from the government.

C. The efforts of southern traders.

D. The spread of processing techniques.

C　细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Later, local residents took up the practice, but it was the tea businessmen from Zhangzhou and Quanzhou who truly developed and enlarged the industry.”可知，闽南漳州、泉州茶商的努力推动了武夷岩茶的产业化发展。故选C。

4. How do tea plants from Wuyi Mountains benefit the tea industry?

A. By providing better tastes.

B. By producing more leaves.

C. By providing excellent varieties.

D. By attracting valuable resources.

C　细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“There are countless good varieties（品种）in Wuyi Mountains, which could provide valuable resources for breeding（育种）research. If these varieties were studied and selectively bred, it could make a great contribution to the tea industry.”可知，武夷山的茶树能为茶业提供优良

的品种，从而推动茶业发展。故选C。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Worried about the climate? __1__. Here are some examples to get you started.

Count the birds and the bees

Get closer to nature by becoming a citizen scientist. You could be counting birds in your garden, butterflies, insects and flowers, or even reptiles and hedgehogs. __2__. It's a fun group activity, and your data can help scientists better understand the impact of human behaviour on natural habitats.

__3__

Media headlines can be alarming when it comes to the climate and nature crisis or ignoring the issues completely. Hosting a local discussion can allow space for reflection, debate, ideas and collaboration (合作) to take action on global issues at a local level.

Set up a library of things

Internet shopping has made it too easy to buy new stuff at the click of a button. __4__? First, it'll clutter (凌乱地塞满) your house, then it'll clutter the planet. Setting up a library of things can encourage local people to share everything from tools to instruments, cooking gadgets to toys.

Start a climate emergency centre

__5__. That's why more and more climate emergency centres are popping up in derelict (废弃的) shops on high streets and in shopping centres. A climate emergency centre can be a space for events such as an exhibition on plastic waste or a workshop to learn how to make eco-cleaning products. It can also be a way to motivate more people to take action.

A. Cooperate with your locals
B. But where is it all going to end up
C. Host a climate and nature discussion
D. But how have we consumed the things
E. The climate and nature crisis isn't going away
F. There are lots of citizen science projects to take part in
G. Small local actions with neighbours, local businesses and politicians can make a difference

答案：1～5 GFCBE

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas— Key expressions

学习任务目标

1. Master the usage of important words and phrases in context.
2. Learn to use some important sentence structures.
3. Describe the natural environment of your hometown.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I want to **wrap** the presents in red paper. 包，裹
2. The Tang **Dynasty** was the golden age of classical Chinese poetry. 朝代
3. It rained and **therefore** the football match was put off. 因此，由此
4. We can see clearly from the chart that the two **regions** differ greatly in climate. 地区，区域
5. Some parts of the river are very **shallow**, while it is very deep in other places. 浅的
6. Water the plant regularly, never letting the **soil** dry out. 土壤

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
completion *n*. 完成，结束	complete *adj*. 完全的，彻底的 *v*. 完成
	completely *adv*. 彻底地，完全地；完整地
harmony *n*. 融洽相处，和谐	harmonious *adj*. 和谐的，融洽的，协调的；悦耳的
design *v*. 设计	designer *n*. 设计师

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
harm *v*. 伤害，损害	harmful *adj*. 有害的，导致损害的
	harmless *adj*. 无害的；无恶意的
agriculture *n*. 农业	agricultural *adj*. 农业的，耕种的；农艺的，农学的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. from the bottom to the very top 从底部一直延伸到顶部
2. turn... into... 把……变成……
3. plenty of 充足的，相当多的
4. prevent... from... 阻挡，防止；使……免于……
5. wash away 冲走
6. in harmony with... 与……和谐相处
7. provide... for... 为……提供……
8. pass down 传下来；传递
9. be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地
10. go to the trouble to do... 费心做……

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：现在分词短语作状语

Reaching as far as the eye can see, these terraces cover tall mountains, often from the bottom to the very top.

目之所及，这些梯田包裹着巍峨的高山，往往从山脚一直盘绕到山顶。

2. 句型公式：动词-ing形式作主语

Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas in which they could grow rice.

因此，建造梯田意味着他们可以扩大水稻的种植面积。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. prevent *v*. 阻挡，防止

[教材原文]The flat terraces catch the rainwater and **prevent** the soil from being washed away.

水平的梯田能够储存雨水，防止土壤流失。

[归纳拓展]

(1)prevent/stop sb. (from) (doing) sth. 阻止某人(做)某事

keep sb. from (doing) sth. 阻止某人(做)某事

(2)prevention *n*. 预防；防止；防范

(3)preventable *adj*. 可以预防的；可以阻止的

名师点拨

表示“阻止某人(做)某事”时，prevent/stop sb. (from) (doing) sth. 中的介词from可以省略，但keep sb. from (doing) sth. 中的from不能省略。在被动结构中，以上短语中的from均不可省略。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Looking through books on natural disaster prevention (prevent) and preparing sufficient food can be of great help.

②David had a brain disease which prevented him from walking or running like other children, but at school his classmates thought of him as a regular kid.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)打乒乓球对我有很大的益处，它**使我不再懒惰**，并且使我保持身体健康。

Playing table tennis is of great benefit to me, which prevents me from being lazy and keeps me physically healthy.

2. design *v*. 设计

[教材原文]The terraces are cleverly **designed**, with hundreds of waterways that connect with each other.

这些梯田设计巧妙，其间有几百条相互连通的水渠。

[归纳拓展]

(1)be designed for 为……而设计

be designed to do sth. 目的是/计划做某事

be designed by... 由……设计

(2)by design 故意地，蓄意地(=on purpose)

(3)designer *n*. 设计师

名师点拨

design还可用作名词，意为“设计；图案；意图”。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①What annoyed the teacher most was that this student frequently lied to him by design.

②(2024·浙江1月卷) Over the last two years, some supermarkets have started selling chicken or salad in packs designed (design) with two halves containing separate portions (份).

③At last, a special game will be designed by the Students' Union in order to make all of us have a wonderful time together.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)该活动**为高中生设计,旨在提高**他们对中国传统文化的认识。

The activity is designed for senior high school students to improve their awareness of traditional Chinese culture.

3. harm *v*. 伤害,损害

[**教材原文**]These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, some of which feed on insects that can **harm** the rice crops.

这些梯田也为鸟类和鱼类提供了一个完美的环境,其中一些鸟和鱼以危害水稻的昆虫为食。

[**归纳拓展**]

(1)do... harm/do harm to... 对……有害

there is no harm in doing sth. 做某事无害处;不妨做某事

(2)harmful *adj*. 有害的;导致损害的

be harmful to... 对……有害处

(3)harmless *adj*. 无害的;无恶意的

[**即学即练**]

(1)单句语法填空

①The plant, harmed (harm) by too much direct sunlight, has no chance of survival.

②(2025·浙江1月卷) While gendering a product may be good marketing, it may also strengthen outdated or harmful (harm) ideas about power and identity.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之投稿)偶尔休息一下**没什么坏处**;它有助于充电和提神。There is no harm in taking a break from work once in a while; it helps to recharge and refresh your mind.

②(应用文写作之发言稿)盯着屏幕看**对我们的眼睛有害**。更糟糕的是,我们没有太多机会与老师和同学互动。

Staring at the screen is harmful to our eyes. Worse still, we don't have many opportunities to interact with our teachers and classmates. (harmful *adj*.)

→Staring at the screen does harm to our eyes. Worse still, we don't have many opportunities to interact with our teachers and classmates. (harm *n*.)

多义词汇 专练

1. sheet

A. *n*. 一层　　B. *n*. 一张(纸)

C. *n*. 床单

① Each **sheet** was covered with small, neat handwriting. B

②A **sheet** of frost covered the windows of the car. A

③His mother walked into his bedroom and asked whether he changed the **sheet**. C

2. It is only **shallow** people who judge others by appearance. B

A. *adj*. 浅的　　B. *adj*. 肤浅的

C. *adj*. 弱的

3. There are many colours and **designs**, and you can choose your favourite one. B

A. *n*. 设计　　B. *n*. 图案;花纹

C. *n*. 意图,目的

Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十二)

Section Ⅱ Starting out & Understanding ideas—Key expressions

Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

1. The project is taking a long time but is now nearing completion (complete).

2. He argued against smoking, because smoking was harmful (harm) to health.

3. However, this reality also worried my designer(s) (design). As time went by, I was made smaller.

4. We often help the students in trouble, letting them feel the warmth of a harmonious (harmony) campus.

5. Though what you are doing is (be) very difficult, it is of great importance.

6. She wrapped (wrap) the small red flag around her hair and smiled happily at me.

7. As we all know, it is water and sunlight that develop the crops.
8. On a sunny afternoon, my classmates and I walked along the river, going as far as the foot of the mountain.

Ⅱ. 短语填空

in harmony with; be home to; turn... into; prevent... from; wash away; provide... for; pass down

1. Everything that King Midas touched turned into gold.
2. This large woodland（林地）is home to many birds and other wildlife.
3. This custom has been passed down since the Ming Dynasty.
4. These rules could prevent accidents from happening.
5. They worked hard to provide money for their large family.
6. To live a happy life, we should be in harmony with nature.
7. As is known to all, trees can prevent the earth from being washed away.

Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. Standing by the window, you can have a good view.
   站在窗户旁边，你可以看到很好的景色。
2. Three quarters of the land is covered with green grass.
   四分之三的土地被绿草覆盖。
3. He went to a lot of trouble to find the book for me and I felt grateful for him.
   他不辞劳苦为我找到了这本书，我对他心存感激。
4. There are plenty of restaurants to choose from.
   有许多餐馆可供选择。

Ⅳ. 完形填空

I always give the same advice to travel enthusiasts: Wherever home is, that is where you should begin. However, I was __1__ at following my own advice, for I have rarely explored my home town—until now. Having cancelled all my foreign trips, I __2__ to Sweden to travel north from my home town.

Unsurprisingly, my journey went smoothly, the scenery along the way breathtaking and picturesque, but my guide, Johan, opened my __3__ to something else. One day, he asked me what I saw on a snowmobile path __4__ with tall trees on both sides. "Trees? Forests?" I answered. Johan shook his head, explaining, "Not a forest. A plantation. Forests no longer stand. The trees are planted by humans here." He __5__ that maybe soon, this plantation would be all that was left.

Johan was right. For over half a century now, the ancient forest that once seemed so __6__ has continued to be cruelly cut down for biofuels and paper, and, in its place stand plantations of pine trees. Only a small part of the ancient forest __7__, and that part grows smaller every year.

The Sámi, a native people there, are facing an existential（与人类存在有关的）__8__. Their lives and culture are __9__ linked to the ancient forest and the reindeer that populate the region. However, the slow-growing lichen（地衣）and mushrooms, which the reindeer __10__, are not found in any pine plantations. Without them, the reindeer population declines. __11__, the death of one means the death of the other, and an __12__ future for an entire people.

"We're not __13__ of nature, but part of it." Johan's words echoed in my mind as I looked at the __14__ forest of the North in the rear-view mirrors（后视镜）. Too many of us have forgotten this truth—and with that forgetfulness, we may risk the __15__ of not only the wild but also ourselves.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者回到家乡向北探索，发现原始森林已被人造林取代，这威胁到依赖森林生态的萨米原住民文化和驯鹿生存；作者不由得反思人类与自然的关系。

1. A. skillful　　B. effective
   C. terrible　　D. surprised
   C　根据后文的"for I have rarely explored my home town—until now"可知，作者很少探索自己的家乡，说明他不善于遵循自己的建议。短语 be terrible at 意为"在……上很差劲，不擅长……"。故选 C。
2. A. pointed　　B. headed
   C. referred　　D. reacted
   B　根据上文的"for I have rarely explored my

home town—until now”可知，作者直到现在才探索自己的家乡，说明是从家乡启程，一路向北旅行，前往瑞典，短语 head to 意为“前往”。故选 B。

3. A. eyes　　B. ears
C. shoulders　　D. arms
A　根据下文的“Johan was right.”可知，作者意识到向导 Johan 所说的是对的，说明 Johan 让作者了解到别的东西，短语 open one's eyes to 意为“使某人了解/意识到”。故选 A。

4. A. covered　　B. spotted
C. coated　　D. lined
D　根据前文的“a snowmobile path”和后文的“with tall trees on both sides”可知，雪地摩托道两旁会排列着高大的树木。故选 D。

5. A. demanded　　B. shouted
C. insisted　　D. added
D　根据后文的“that maybe soon, this plantation would be all that was left”可知，向导 Johan 在说完前面的话后，又补充了新的内容。故选 D。

6. A. valueless　　B. endless
C. limited　　D. deserted
B　根据后文的“has continued to be cruelly cut down for biofuels and paper”可知，古老的原始森林被持续残酷地砍伐，说明之前看起来是无穷无尽的，从而反衬人类的不断破坏。故选 B。

7. A. remains　　B. decreases
C. matters　　D. evolves
A　根据上文的“the ancient forest that once seemed so 6 has continued to be cruelly cut down for biofuels and paper”可知，古老的原始森林被持续残酷地砍伐，用于生物燃料和造纸，因此只剩下一小部分。故选 A。

8. A. destination　　B. crisis
C. opportunity　　D. celebration
B　根据下文的“the death of one means the death of the other, and an 12 future for an entire people”可知，一方的消亡意味着另一方的终结，该民族会受到影响，说明他们正面临着一场生存危机。故选 B。

9. A. negatively　　B. hardly
C. slightly　　D. closely
D　根据上文的“The Sámi, a native people there”可知，萨米人是那里的土著居民，因此其生活、文化与古老的原始森林和居住在该地区的驯鹿密切相关。故选 D。

10. A. complain of　　B. play with
C. feed on　　D. suffer from
C　根据下文的“Without them, the reindeer population declines.”可知，没有地衣和蘑菇，驯鹿的数量会下降，说明驯鹿以地衣和蘑菇为食，即赖以为生。故选 C。

11. A. Instead　　B. Otherwise
C. Thus　　D. Nevertheless
C　根据前文的“Without them, the reindeer population declines.”可知，没有地衣和蘑菇，驯鹿的数量会下降，“一方的消亡意味着另一方的终结”是基于前一句给出的结论，应用“因此”引出。故选 C。

12. A. unfamiliar　　B. uncertain
C. incredible　　D. unbeatable
B　根据前文的“the death of one means the death of the other”可知，一方的消亡意味着另一方的终结，说明该民族的未来是不确定的。故选 B。

13. A. companions　　B. residents
C. relatives　　D. masters
D　根据后文的“but part of it”可知，向导 Johan 指出人类是自然的一部分，因此他是否定“人类是自然的主人”这一观念的。故选 D。

14. A. emerging　　B. expanding
C. disappearing　　D. growing
C　根据前文的“and that part grows smaller every year”可知，古老的原始森林的那部分每年都在变小，因此是指正在消失的北方森林。故选 C。

15. A. survival　　B. revival
C. declaration　　D. possession
A　根据前文的“the death of one means the death of the other”可知，一方的消亡意味着另一方的终结，说明生态系统内部事物息息相关，我们对自然的不断掠夺很有可能危及野生动物的生存，也危及我们自己的生存。故选 A。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

1. To understand and master attributive clauses with "a preposition+a relative pronoun".
2. To apply attributive clauses with the structure of "a preposition+a relative pronoun" in real-life situations.
3. To develop an interest in learning grammar and raise awareness of living in harmony with nature by applying what you have learned.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. All the furniture is made of natural **materials**. 材料
2. **Minerals** are often found deep in the ground. 矿物，矿产
3. What is the biggest **barrier** to women succeeding at work? 障碍
4. Doctors study the **structure** of the human body. 结构，构造，组织
5. Other **living** beings might exist in outer space. 活的，活着的
6. Very few animals can survive in this terrible **climate**. 气候
7. They lost their way in the **desert** and finally died of thirst. 沙漠

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
replace *v*. 以……替换，更换	replacement *n*. 替换，更换；替代品，替换物
consumer *n*. 消费者	consume *v*. 消耗，耗费（燃料、能量、时间等）
	consumption *n*. 消费；消耗，消耗量
priority *n*. 优先处理的事，当务之急	prior *adj*. 优先的；占先的；较重要的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
beauty *n*. 美，美丽	beautify *v*. 美化；装饰
	beautiful *adj*. 美丽的，漂亮的
thunder *v*. 打雷	thunderous *adj*. 雷鸣般的
sail *v*. （乘船）航行	sailor *n*. 水手，海员；驾船人
	sailing *n*. 帆船运动；（乘帆船的）航行；（轮船的）航班

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. be made from 由……制成（看不出原料）
2. be popular with 受……欢迎
3. separate... from... 使……和……分离，把……和……分开

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式：过去分词短语作定语
   Located off the coast of Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the biggest structure made by living organisms.
   大堡礁位于澳大利亚海岸附近，是世界上由活的生物体构成的最大单一结构。
2. 句型公式：make+it+*adj*.+for sb. to do sth.
   The cold weather makes it difficult for us to grow enough vegetables and fruit.
   寒冷的天气使我们很难种植足够的蔬菜和水果。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

replace *v*. 以……替换，更换

[教材原文] In sentence (a), can we **replace** "in which" with "where" without changing the meaning?

在(a)句中，我们能否在不改变含义的情况下将"in which"替换为"where"？

[归纳拓展]

replace... with/by... 用……代替……

replace sb./sth. = take the place of sb./sth. = take one's place 取代某人/某物

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·新课标Ⅱ卷) After harvest, users simply replace the plants with/by a new pre-seeded pod (容器) to get the next growth cycle started.

②Our car broke down halfway. To make things worse, two of the tyres had to be replaced (replace).

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之拟人)他最终成功地使动物平静下来。**喜悦取代了紧张和恐惧**。

He eventually succeeded in calming the animal down. Joy replaced nervousness and fear.

→He eventually succeeded in calming the animal down. Nervousness and fear were replaced by/with joy.(be replaced by/with)

→He eventually succeeded in calming the animal down. Joy took the place of nervousness and fear. (take the place of)

多义词汇 专练

1. narrow

A. *adj*. 狭窄的　　B. *adj*. 勉强的

C. *v*. (使)变窄

①They planned to **narrow** the gap between the rich and the poor. C

②She was elected by a **narrow** majority. B

③(2023·浙江1月卷改编) Their *siheyuan* was far smaller in scale and simpler in design and decoration, and the *hutongs* were **narrower**. A

2. platform

A. *n*. 站台　B. *n*. 机会　C. *n*. 平台

①(2025·浙江1月卷) For Ribeiro, it has become a perfect **platform** for pursuing her hobby of buying food, trying out new recipes and holding dinner parties. C

② The forum will provide a **platform** for discussion of communication issues. B

③ She stepped down from the train onto the **platform**. A

3. desert

A. *v*. 抛弃;遗弃

B. *v*. 背离;使失望

C. *v*. 逃走;开小差

① Large numbers of soldiers **deserted** as defeat became inevitable. C

②Somehow, her courage seemed to **desert** her for a moment. B

③The price rise caused many readers to **desert** the magazine. A

语法研习课

"介词+关系代词"引导的定语从句

语法感知

①These terraces were built by the local Zhuang and Yao people, **to whom** Guangxi is home.

②Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas **in which** they could grow rice.

③But perhaps what is most significant is the way **in which** people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.

④This forms clouds **from which** rain falls down onto the mountain terraces once again.

⑤These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, **some of which** feed on insects that can harm the rice crops.

⑥Although modern technology could help produce more crops, these terraces still mean a lot to the local people **for whom** traditions hold much value.

1. 以上6个句子都使用了"介词+关系代词"引导的定语从句。若先行词指物,那么介词后的关系代词用 which;若先行词指人,那么介词后的关系代词用 whom。
2. 以上6个句子中,句②、③、④、⑥是限制性定语从句,句①、⑤是非限制性定语从句。

语法精讲

一、基本构成

在"介词+关系代词"结构引导的定语从句中,关

系代词指物用 which，指人用 whom，不可用 that 或 who 代替。

There comes Tom, **for whom** I have been waiting an hour or so.

汤姆来了，我等了他大约一个小时。

He handed me a pen **with which** I wrote down his phone number.

他递给我一支钢笔，我用它记下了他的电话号码。

The university **in which** my brother once studied is very famous.

我哥哥曾经就读的大学很有名。

二、介词不能提前的情况

有些固定动词短语中的介词一般不能提前。常见的这类动词短语有 listen to，look at，depend on，look for，pay attention to，take care of，look after，take part in，call on，catch up with，get along with，hear of，look forward to 等。

This must be the key **that** she is **looking for.**

这一定是她正在寻找的那把钥匙。

This is the baby **whom** you will **look after.**

这就是你将要照看的那个婴儿。

We often talk about the people and the things **that** we **heard of.**

我们经常谈论我们听说的人和事。

三、“介词＋关系代词”的拓展

1. 复合介词＋关系代词

用于该结构的关系代词有 which，whom 和 whose。常用的复合介词有 because of，in front of，as a result of，at the back of 等。

He was badly hurt in the accident, **because of which** he didn't go to work.

他在事故中严重受伤，因此他没去上班。

They arrived at a farmhouse, **in front of which** sat a boy.

他们来到一座农舍，农舍前面坐着一个男孩。

2. 表示部分或整体概念的“代词＋of＋关系代词”

表示部分与整体概念的代词有 both，all，neither，none，either，some，any，most，few，one，half 等。

He has lots of hobbies, **one of which** is swimming.

他有很多爱好，其中之一是游泳。

The old man has three sons, **all of whom** care about him.

那位老人有 3 个儿子，他们都很关心他。

3. the＋名词＋of＋关系代词

此结构用来代替“whose＋名词”，也可用“of which/whom the＋名词”。

They do experiments in a lab, **the windows of which/of which the windows/whose windows** face south.

他们在一个窗户朝南的实验室里做实验。

I will talk to those students **the homework of whom/whose homework/of whom the homework** hasn't been done.

我要和没完成作业的那些学生谈话。

4. 关系副词 when，where，why 可用“介词＋which”来代替

I often think of the moment **when**（＝**at which**）I saw the sea.

我常常想起我看见大海的那一刻。

The police searched the house **where**（＝ **in which**）the thief had stayed.

警察搜查了那个小偷曾经待过的房子。

I don't know the reason **why**（＝**for which**）he performed so badly.

我不知道他为什么表现得如此差。

四、the way 后的定语从句的关系词

way 表示“方法，方式”时，其后的定语从句有两种情况：

1. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语时，用 that 和 which 均可，作宾语时可省略。

The way（**that/which**）he thought of to prevent the air pollution was very good.

他想出的防止空气污染的方法非常好。（关系词代替 the way，在定语从句中作 thought of 的宾语）

2. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作方式状语时，用 that 或 in which 均可，也可省略关系词。

I don't like the way（**that/in which**）you speak to your mother.

我不喜欢你同你母亲说话的方式。

语法冲关

Ⅰ. 用“介词＋关系代词”填空

1. English is a language shared by several diverse cultures, each <u>of which</u> uses it differently.

2. Wind power is an ancient source of energy <u>to which</u> we may return in the near future.

3. This is the man <u>from whom</u> I learned a lot in my life.

4. The woman with whom you shook hands just now is head of our company.
5. Can you tell me the reason for which you were late again?
6. He built a telescope through which he could study the stars.

Ⅱ. 用含有“介词＋关系代词”的定语从句合并下列句子

1. This is a field. I used to grow vegetables in that field.
→ This is a field in which I used to grow vegetables.
2. This is my English teacher. I've learned a lot from her.
→ This is my English teacher from whom I've learned a lot.
3. The day will come. Ordinary people can travel by spaceship on the day.
→ The day on which ordinary people can travel by spaceship will come.
4. The newly-built café is really a peaceful place for us. The walls of it are painted light green.
The newly-built café of which the walls are painted light green is really a peaceful place for us.

Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十三）

Section Ⅲ Using language

Ⅰ. 选词填空

basin; desert; barrier; material; mineral; climate; (be) famous for; inside; be located in; priority

1. This area of France has a pleasing climate in August so it's the best time to visit it.
2. It's raining. We'll have to go inside.
3. According to the report, two thirds of the country is desert.
4. Our first stop was Kunming, a city famous for its beautiful scenery and mild (温和的) temperature.
5. When this museum opened, it was located in the centre of town.
6. His novels are a rich source of materials for the movie industry.
7. Parents are more likely to give priority to child care and education.
8. When I told them I was thirsty, they went and got me a bottle of mineral water.
9. That basin is the world's lowest-lying one, the lowest point being 154 metres below sea level.
10. His rich experience in other parts of Asia helped him to overcome cultural barriers.

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. More consumers (consume) are waiting for the further drop of the prices.
2. The flowers smelling sweet in the botanic garden attract the visitors to the beauty (beautiful) of nature.
3. Using (use) it increases the user's heart rate and blood pressure.
4. The Internet makes it easier for people to keep (keep) in touch with others.
5. It is still under discussion whether the old bus station should be replaced with/by a modern hotel or not.

Ⅲ. 用“介词＋关系代词”填空

1. It is an unpleasant subject about which we have argued for a long time.
2. The policeman with/to/about whom Mr Henry is talking is a friend of mine.
3. My father is the first person to whom I will turn for help when I meet difficulties.
4. Is she the girl from whom you borrowed the dress yesterday evening?
5. I will never forget the day on which I was admitted to a famous university.
6. Would you be kind enough to help the boy for whom Chinese is really hard to learn?
7. He asked a few more questions, to which he received unsatisfactory answers.
8. The newly-built library, the walls of which are painted light green, is really a peaceful place for us.

Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Have you ever observed how a family runs smoothly? It's the balance that plays a role in a family. But a family where there is too much chaos (混乱), argument, and one-sided communication has no balance.

In the same way, nature needs balance, harmony and protection. You are already aware of the phrase—too much of everything is bad. That's why the sensibility to bring balance in nature is every human's responsibility.

The community of living species interacts with the environment's non-living components in a healthy ecosystem. Rainfall, temperature, sunlight, soil, and water chemistry are the main examples of abiotic (无生命的) aspects of ecosystems that need to be in a stable manner.

To survive, plants need a certain combination of temperature, moisture, and soil chemistry. Protecting plants is also important because it provides food for the animals.

What you see above are the natural phenomena that have been happening since the beginning of the universe. That's how nature has been functioning. But indulgent human activities in using natural resources have created poor habitation in the natural environment. In fact, here are the human actions that have broken the balance in nature for so many years now.

People cut down trees to make space for new companies owing to an increase in population, which has decreased the amount of oxygen in the air. Global warming has resulted in the melting of the ice caps, leading to rising sea levels and other natural disasters like cyclones and tsunamis. As a result of habitat loss, it is getting harder for species to survive.

There is always potential for bringing awareness. Hence, if the above human activities are lessened or changed with recycling activities, the next generation can still live a healthy life.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了自然界像和睦的家庭一样需要平衡、和谐和保护。

1. Why is a chaotic family mentioned in Paragraph 1?

A. To bring up a new topic.

B. To come to a conclusion.

C. To complain about family chaos.

D. To admire the balance of a family.

A　推理判断题。根据第一段以及第二段中的"In the same way, nature needs balance, harmony and protection."可知，自然和家庭一样，需要平衡、和谐和保护，而本文主要介绍了自然界需要平衡、和谐，人类活动破坏了这一平衡，导致环境问题频发。由此推知，第一段提到一个混乱的家庭是为了引出本篇文章的主题。故选A。

2. How do we keep the balance of nature?

A. Limit human activities to the fullest.

B. Control a certain amount of everything.

C. Don't cut down trees for new companies.

D. Don't use energy for economic development.

B　推理判断题。根据第六段和最后一段的内容可知，自然界的平衡需要控制和维持，要减少人类过度开发和利用自然资源的活动。由此推知，想要保持自然平衡，需要合理控制各种资源的使用量。故选B。

3. What does the underlined word "indulgent" in Paragraph 5 probably mean?

A. Responsible.　　B. Controlled.

C. Romantic.　　D. Unlimited.

D　词义猜测题。根据画线单词的上文"What you see above are the natural phenomena that have been happening since the beginning of the universe."以及下文"In fact, here are the human actions that have broken the balance in nature for so many years now."可知，大自然在平衡、和谐中运行，但是无限制的人类活动破坏了自然界的平衡。由此可知，画线单词的意思为"无限制的，放纵的"。故选D。

4. What's the author's attitude towards the future of the Earth?

A. Worried.　　B. Doubtful.

C. Confident.　　D. Uncertain.

C　观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知，作者对于通过增强意识和改变行为保障下一代健康生活的可能性持积极态度，因此是有信心的。故选C。

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Be able to skim and find the topic sentence of each paragraph.
2. Find some detailed information by scanning the text.
3. Learn to appreciate gardens and understand the meaning of being at one with nature.

○ 自主式预习 ○

Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They cut away all the dead **branches** from the tree. 树枝
2. If you don't have enough money to buy a car, you can **rent** one instead. 租用,租借
3. The **system** has been in operation for six months. 系统
4. When the house is burning, it is not safe to stay on the **rooftop**. 屋顶
5. The tomatoes added to the soup give extra **flavour** to it. 味,味道

Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
publish *v*. 出版	publisher *n*. 出版人(或机构);发行人(或机构)
limited *adj*. 有限的	limit *v*. 限制;限定 *n*. 界限;限度
	limitless *adj*. 无限制的,无界限的
benefit *n*. 好处,益处	beneficial *adj*. 有利的,有用的
energy *n*. 力量,活力	energetic *adj*. 精力充沛的,充满活力的
pleasant *adj*. 令人愉快的	please *v*. 使高兴;使欢喜;使满意;想,选择;喜欢
	pleased *adj*. 快乐的,高兴的,愉快的,满意的

Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. lead to 导致,引起
2. enter into competitions 参加比赛
3. be at one with 与……融为一体
4. be in doubt 怀疑,有疑问
5. reflect on 考虑,反思

Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:过去分词短语作定语

   These words come from the author of the book *The Secret Garden*, first published in 1911.

   这些话出自1911年首次出版的《秘密花园》一书的作者。

2. 句型公式:with复合结构

   Today, millions of Brits like to say that they have "green fingers", with around half the population spending their free time gardening.

   如今,数以百万计的英国人喜欢说他们有"绿手指",约有一半的英国人把空闲时间用在打理花园上。

3. 句型公式:"否定词+比较级"表示最高级含义

   And while many Brits like nothing better than spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.

   虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪,但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

4. 句型公式:现在分词短语作定语

   Today, there are over 4,000 people in London waiting for such pieces of land.

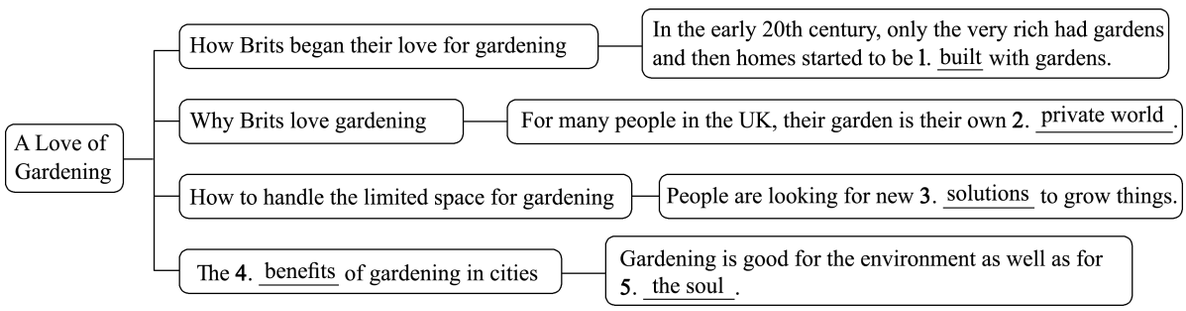
   现如今,伦敦有四千多人在等待租用这样的土地。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1：Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2：Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does the author use the words of *The Secret Garden*?
   A. The author loves the sentences.
   B. The author wants to introduce the topic.
   C. The author is mentioning facts that are obvious to the readers.
   D. The author is not certain about the words.
2. What does the phrase "green fingers" mean according to the text?
   A. Real fingers.
   B. The ability to make plants grow.
   C. Green homes.
   D. Grass.
3. What are the advantages of gardens?
   A. They make cities greener.
   B. They improve air quality.
   C. They are good for the soul.
   D. All the above.

答案：1～3 BBD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3：Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Today, millions of Brits like to say that they have "green fingers", with around half the population spending their free time gardening.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。that 引导宾语从句；with 复合结构的宾语是 around half the population，宾语补足语是 spending their free time gardening。
   [尝试翻译]如今，数以百万计的英国人喜欢说他们有"绿手指"，约有一半的英国人把空闲时间用在打理花园上。
2. And while many Brits like nothing better than spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.
   [句子分析]本句是主从复合句。while 引导让步状语从句；nothing better than...为"否定词＋比较级"表示最高级含义。
   [尝试翻译]虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪，但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。
3. And if you're in any doubt about this, take a moment to reflect on this line from *The Secret Garden*: "Where you tend a rose... A thistle cannot grow."
   [句子分析]本句为主从复合句。if 引导条件状语从句；主句是 take 开头的祈使句；引用的句子中 where 引导地点状语从句。
   [尝试翻译]如果你对这一点有任何疑问，请停下片刻，回味一下《秘密花园》中的这句话："种下玫瑰的地方……蓟草不会生长。"

○思维品质培养

Activity 4：Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does gardening do good to cities?
   Because it can help make cities greener and improve air quality.
2. What is the similarity between gardening and body building exercise?
   They are both good for physical and psychological health.
3. Do you like gardening? Why or why not?
   Yes, I do. Because when I spend my free time gardening, my heart is calm and I am relaxed.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. limited *adj*. 有限的

[教材原文]But in cities, **limited** space has led to people looking for new solutions.

但在城市里,有限的空间促使人们寻找新的解决方案。

[归纳拓展]

(1)be limited to 受限于,局限到……

(2)limit *v*. 限制;限定 *n*. 限制;(常作复数)范围;界限

limit... to... 把……限定在……范围内

set a limit to... 对……限定范围

within the limits of 在……范围内

(3)limitless *adj*. 无限制的,无界限的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①(2024·北京卷) Language capacity is limited (limit) by self-control.

②(2025·全国一卷) They had a very limited (limit) vocabulary.

③Parents should set a limit to the amount of screen time their children have each day to promote healthy habits.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之求助信)如果你能就如何**用有限的语言技能**在陌生环境中生活给我们一些建议,我将不胜感激。

I'd appreciate it if you could give us some advice on how to live in an unfamiliar environment with limited language skills.

②(应用文写作之投稿)我们不应该**把英语学习局限在课堂上**,课堂之外还有各种各样的英语学习方式,比如听英语歌曲和阅读英语书籍。

We shouldn't limit English learning to the classroom and there are a variety of English learning approaches beyond the classroom, such as listening to English songs and reading English books.

2. benefit *n*. 好处,益处

[教材原文]What are the **benefits** of gardening?

园艺有什么好处?

[归纳拓展]

(1)benefit sb./sth. 使某人或某物受益

benefit from... 从……中受益/获益

(2)for the benefit of 为了……的利益

be of benefit to(=be beneficial to) 有益于;对……有好处

(3)beneficial *adj*. 有利的;有益的;受益的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The new theatre is designed for the benefit of the disabled.

②We will benefit a lot from reading English classics, so let's begin right now.

③(2024·浙江1月卷) However, if you're shopping for one, buying extra to benefit (benefit) from price reductions doesn't make sense.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之投稿)长跑是一种**对我们很有益的**运动,值得推荐。

Long-distance running is a kind of exercise which is of great benefit to us, which deserves to be recommended. (benefit)

→Long-distance running is a kind of exercise which is very beneficial to us, which deserves to be recommended. (beneficial)

3. "否定词+比较级"表示最高级含义

[教材原文]And while many Brits like **nothing better than** spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.

虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪,但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

[句式分析]本句中 nothing better than 为"否定词+比较级"结构,表示最高级的意思,意为"再没有比……更……的了"。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等。

[归纳拓展]

表示最高级含义的常用比较级结构还有:

(1)否定词+a+比较级+单数名词

(2)比较级+than+any other+可数名词单数/all other+可数名词复数/anyone else

(3)否定词+so/as+原级+as...

(4)否定词+such+原级+名词

［即学即练］

(1)单句语法填空

①It was not until then that I suddenly realised nobody was happier (happy) than I was.

②Nothing is more beneficial (beneficial) than taking part in the five-kilometre cross-country running race.

③For example, it can be proved that India has more people than any other country in the world.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之主旨升华)没有**比时间更宝贵**的东西,但也没有比时间更容易被忽视的东西。

Nothing is more valuable than time, but nothing is less valued.

②(读后续写之心理描写)马克**从未见过**比这只狼**更可怕的动物**,因此他屏住呼吸,不敢挪动一步。

Mac had never seen a more frightening animal than this wolf, so he held his breath, not daring to make a movement.

多义词汇 专练

1. His father's help enables him to found a new **branch** of the company. A

A. *n*. 分部　　B. *n*. 树枝

C. *n*. 支流

2. (2025·全国二卷) The pronunciation **system** of the Chinese language is quite different from that of English. B

A. *n*. 制度　　B. *n*. 系统

C. *n*. 集团

Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十四）

Section Ⅳ Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

Ⅰ. 单词拼写

1. A system (系统) is a way of working, organising, or doing something which follows a fixed plan or set of rules.
2. Rice cake can be made into various other flavours (味道).
3. The young men are expert (内行的) at driving racing cars.
4. Whenever he took a walk outside, he felt bright and cheerful and full of energy (活力).
5. I bought a pleasant (令人愉快的) little apartment when I arrived in England.
6. I couldn't see the benefit (好处) of arguing with him any longer.
7. Cars are allowed, but parking is limited (有限的).
8. We rented (租下) a car to get around the island and had a good time there.
9. I don't think that branch (树枝) will hold your weight.
10. They managed to have a book and an article published (出版).

Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

1. He doubted whether/if she would be equal to the task, which made her upset.
2. Tom as well as his parents is (be) going to Beijing next week.
3. The disease, connected with smoking, is not easy to cure.
4. In my class, some students like literature while others are fond of sports.
5. Spending much time sitting (sit) at a desk, office workers are generally troubled by health problems.
6. Last night, there were millions of people watching (watch) the opening ceremony live on TV.

Ⅲ. 短语填空

reflect on; lead to; at one with; be in doubt; keep an eye out for

1. There were only five minutes left in the game, but the ending was still in doubt.
2. The strike had already led to cuts in electricity and water supplies (供应) in many areas.
3. The scientist kept/keeps an eye out for some unknown plants in this village.
4. The start of a new year is a good time to reflect on the many achievements of the past.
5. Here in the mountains I feel totally at one with nature.

Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. London is a huge financial marketplace as well as

an important political centre.
伦敦是一个巨大的金融市场，也是一个重要的政治中心。

2. I'd like nothing better than to go to the barbecue with you.
没有比和你一起去烧烤更好的了。

3. The Palace Museum also called the Forbidden City took nearly 14 years to build and was completed in 1420.
故宫，也被称为紫禁城，花了近 14 年的时间建造，并在 1420 年完成。

4. These measures have helped make oceans cleaner and cleaner.
这些措施使海洋变得越来越干净。

5. It sounds as if/though you are joking.
听起来你好像在开玩笑。

Ⅴ. 语法填空

Over 1,300 metres high, Kanas is known as a National Natural Reserve. It **1.** shows (show) people a wonderful mix of clean lakes, green forests, and grand mountains. This special area is **2.** a safe place for many kinds of animals and plants.

Kanas gets its name from the Tuwa word for "lake in the valley". It looks like a beautiful painting with its clear lakes, wide grasslands, and lovely woods. The area is home **3.** to the hard-to-find lynx (猞猁), the pretty red deer, and many other animals that live **4.** safely (safe) in this untouched place.

The beauty of Kanas comes from its different views. These include the famous Kanas Lake, Moon Bay (月亮湾) and Baihaba Village. Each one gives a special view of nature's greatness. Kanas Lake **5.** is surrounded (surround) by snowy mountain tops and has deep blue water. This creates an astonishing mirror image that amazes people **6.** who/that see it. Moon Bay is a peaceful, moon-shaped bay. It attracts **7.** visitors (visitor) with its calm feeling and wide views of the nearby mountains.

Kanas National Natural Reserve shows how beautiful nature can be, with pure lakes and **8.** amazing (amaze) views. Hemu Village, **9.** which is on the Hemu Grassland, adds a traditional travelling feeling to the area. Among the mountains, forests, and grasslands, Kanas is a place full of natural wonders. It invites travellers **10.** to enjoy (enjoy) the peace and beauty of this pretty, untouched wonderland.

Ⅵ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假如你是李华，学校最近要组织一次英语演讲比赛，主题为"垃圾分类益处多"。请你根据此话题用英语写一篇演讲稿。要点如下：

1. 你的观点；
2. 你的建议。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；
2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；
3. 开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

参考词汇：垃圾分类 garbage classification

Hello, everyone! _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Thank you!

【参考范文】

Hello, everyone! I'm glad that I have this chance to share some ideas about garbage classification with you.

In my opinion, the earth is home to every individual, and it's our duty to protect the environment voluntarily. By sorting waste, we can not only reduce pollution but also conserve energy, paving the way for the recycling of valuable resources. For the sake of our environment and life, we expect that we can learn to sort rubbish and

make it a habit. Every individual can make a difference and let's bring a brighter future for the planet!

Thank you!

第二节　概要写作

阅读下面短文，根据其内容写一篇60词左右的内容概要。

Elephants Can Tell

It is easy for us to tell our friends from our enemies. But can other animals do the same? Elephants can! They can use their sense of vision and smell to tell the difference between people who pose a threat and those who do not.

In Kenya, researchers found that elephants react differently to clothing worn by men of the Maasai and Kamba ethnic groups. Young Maasai men kill animals and thus pose a threat to elephants. Kamba men are mainly farmers and are not a danger to elephants.

In an experiment conducted by animal scientists, elephants were first presented with clean clothing or clothing that had been worn for five days by either a Maasai or a Kamba man. When the elephants recognised the smell of clothing worn by a Maasai man, they moved away from the smell faster and took longer to relax than when they recognised the smells of either clothing worn by a Kamba man or clothing that had not been worn at all.

Clothing colour also plays a role, though in a different way. In the same study, when the elephants saw red clothing not worn before, they reacted angrily, as red is typically worn by Maasai men. Rather than running away as they did with the smell, the elephants acted aggressively（攻击性地）towards the red clothing.

The researchers believe that the elephants' emotional reactions are because of their different understanding of the smells and the sights. Smelling a potential danger means that a threat is nearby and the best thing to do is run away and hide. Seeing a potential threat without its smell means that risk is low. Therefore, instead of showing fear and running away, the elephants express their anger and become aggressive.

【参考范文】

Studies have shown that elephants can use their sight and smell to distinguish between those who pose a threat and those who do not. In Kenya, researchers have found that elephants respond differently to clothing worn by Maasai and Kamba people. The colour of clothes also plays a role, though in a different way. The researchers believe that elephants' emotional response is due to their different interpretations of smells and sights.

★★★

迁·移·应·用

Part 1 概要写作

○写作指导

本单元的写作任务为概要写作。概要写作的原文以说明文或者议论文为主。具体写作要求：在正确理解文章的基础上，不改变原文中心思想，用简明、精炼的语句高度浓缩文章的主要内容和观点。

1. 找关键词和主题句，准确理解、分析原文要点，归纳段落大意。
2. 各个要点的表达要相对独立。
3. 各要点之间要有适当的衔接。
4. 尽量使用短句，慎用长难句。例如，尽量少用关系代词 which，who 等引导的定语从句，而采用现在分词和过去分词作定语。

○典题示例

阅读下面短文，根据内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

It's a really good idea to visit colleges before you apply because their websites can all start to look and sound the same. Nothing will give you the sense of what it will actually be like to live on a college campus like visiting and seeing for yourself the dorms, classrooms and athletic equipment and, of course, the students. It seems a little crazy once senior year hits to find the time to visit college campus, and it can also be pricey if the schools you are applying to happen to be more than a car ride away. But keep in mind that you are making a decision about the next four years of your life, and do all the research you can to make sure you are making the right one.

There's no excuse not to visit the schools in your local area. In fact, a lot of college applications even ask if you have visited campus, and obviously, if you live across the country that won't be as much of a possibility, but if you live nearby, go check it out!

If campus visits aren't going to happen before you apply, at the very least you should find some time between applying and getting your acceptance letters to visit the schools you'd like to attend. It can save you a lot of heartache if you rule out now the things that you don't like about certain campuses, things that you wouldn't know unless you actually visit.

Now, if time and money are making it impossible, then check out the online college fairs on the websites. It's a chance to chat online with admissions officers, students, and college counsellors (顾问), and it won't cost you a penny! While visiting an online college fair can't take the place of an actual campus visit, it can be a very useful tool that along with all your other research will help you make an informed decision about which colleges or universities you'd like to attend.

Step 1：审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第二人称为主
要点	1. 在你申请之前参观一下大学是个好主意 2. 没有理由不去参观你所在地区的学校 3. 你至少应该在申请和得到录取通知书的间隙找到一些时间来参观学校 4. 如果无法亲自参观的话，可以登录网站了解相关的信息

Step 2：要点补全

①It is a wise choice（一个明智的选择）for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person（亲自），especially the ones that are close to you（离你近的）.

②You should at least visit the colleges（至少参观下这些大学）before getting your acceptance letters so that you can avoid being regretful（避免后悔）.

③If time and money are your problems, it will be of

great benefit（有很大益处的）to go to the online college fairs on the websites.

④You can get necessary information（得到必要的信息）there.

Step 3：句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句②升级为 in order to 作目的状语的句子

In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters.

②将 Step 2 中句③和④合并为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子

If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs on the websites where you can get necessary information.

Step 4：连句成篇

It is a wise choice for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person, especially the ones that are close to you. In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters. If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs on the websites where you can get necessary information.

○学以致用

阅读下面短文，根据内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

In our modern world, when something wears out, we throw it away and buy a new one. The problem is that countries around the world have growing mountains of rubbish because people are throwing out more rubbish than ever before.

How did we become a throwaway society? First of all, it is now easier to replace an object than to spend time and money to repair it. Thanks to modern manufacturing（制造业）and technology, companies are able to produce products quickly and inexpensively. Products are plentiful and cheap.

Another cause is our love of disposable（一次性的）products. As busy people, we are always looking for ways to save time and make our lives easier. Companies produce thousands of different kinds of disposable products: paper plates, plastic cups, and cameras, to name a few.

Our appetite for new products also contributes to the problem. We are addicted to buying new things. Advertisements persuade us that the newer is better and that we will be happier with the latest products. The result is that we throw away useful possessions to make room for new ones.

All around the world, we can see the consequences of this throwaway lifestyle. Mountains of rubbish just keep getting bigger. To decrease the amount of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials. However, this is not enough to solve our problem.

Maybe there is another way out. We need to repair our possessions instead of throwing them away. We also need to rethink our attitudes about repairing. Repairing our possessions and changing our spending habits may be the best way to reduce the amount of rubbish and take care of our environment.

【参考范文】

With more things thrown away, there is an increasing amount of rubbish worldwide. Some factors may account for this phenomenon. Firstly, compared to repairing, substituting an item is easier due to abundant and cheap goods available. Secondly, our performance for disposable and new products also worsens the problem. The solution lies in recycling materials, and fixing broken objects. But more importantly, we should change our consuming habits.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章，完成任务。

Though travelling is not a big deal for me today, before my trip to the mountains, I used to be a homebody. I had friends to hang out with, several hobbies, and I felt completely comfortable spending weeks or even months in my hometown—or sometimes even on my block—without going anywhere. All my

demands of novelty were satisfied by TV channels, and I seriously thought there was no difference between seeing something on TV and with one's own eyes.

The situation changed when one day David, my best friend who always had a couple of colourful bugs in his head (or, in other words, was always carrying out several crazy plans at once), walked into my room. I will not describe how he managed to persuade me to join him on his journey to the Rocky Mountains; all I will say is that we departed in five days. This was my first time in the mountains, so I was turning my head in all directions. Unfortunately, the weather was foggy most of the time, and the higher we got into the mountains, the worse the visibility was.

Despite this fact, I still enjoyed the hike—I felt like I was Bear Grylls, whose show I used to watch with excitement: in the wild, with food and water in my backpack, carrying a flashlight and a knife. On the first day, we were making our way along the foothills; but the next day, we started to climb on one of the peaks. Though it was not that steep and high, I was still excited. I regularly hastened (加速), and because of that, I ran out of energy long before we got to the top; David, on the other hand, was more well-paced.

When we finally got to the top, nothing had changed. The same fog was covering the surroundings, and even though I was filled with positive emotions, I felt disappointed, because I counted on seeing the view from above and perhaps being able to take some photos.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

We spent a couple of hours on the top, and decided to turn back. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Seeing all this scenery with my own eyes was truly an eye-opening experience for me. _____

_____

_____

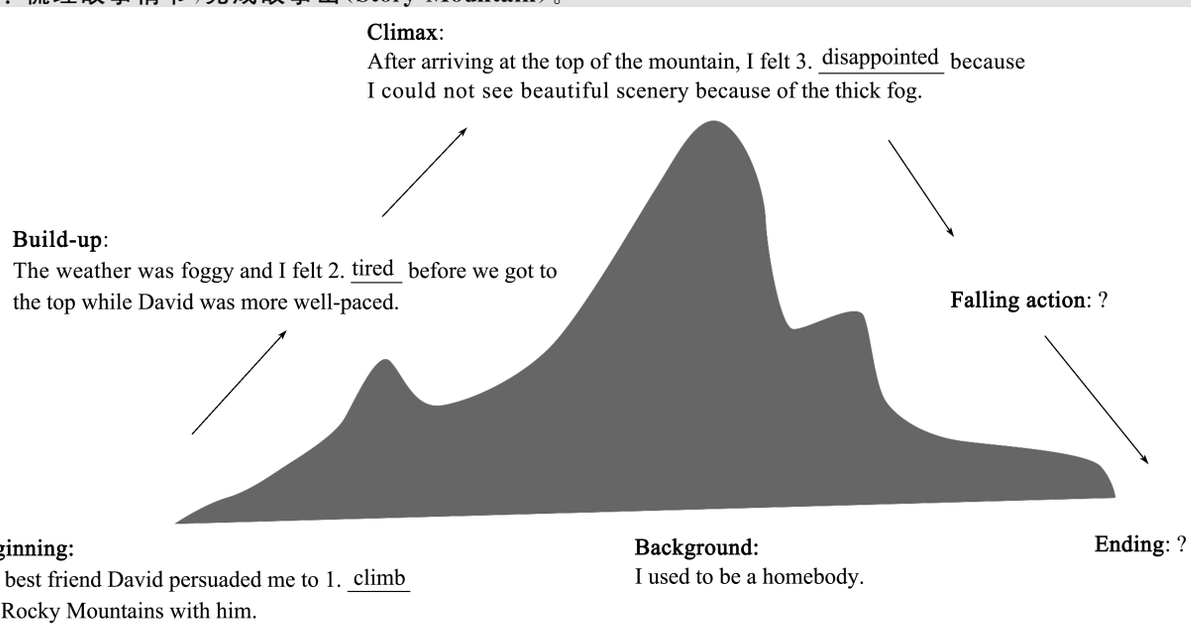
_____

_____

_____

_____

任务一:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务二：根据段落开头提示语，构思故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1： We spent a couple of hours on the top, and decided to turn back. _____	**1.** Why did they decide to turn back? Because they could not see any scenery because of the bad weather. **2.** What were their feelings without seeing the scenery? A wave of bitter disappointment swept over them.
Paragraph 2： Seeing all this scenery with my own eyes was truly an eye-opening experience for me. _____	**1.** What was the author's feeling? The author was touched by the process of climbing the mountain deeply. **2.** What was the author's attitude to travelling? Travelling firsthand is undoubtedly more enriching and impressive than watching travel television programmes.

任务三：细化情节，遣词造句。

1. The dense fog had not lifted, and the realisation that we would not be rewarded with（被奖励）the scenic view we had envisioned was disheartening.

2. What were our feelings without seeing the scenery（没看到风景）? A mix of（一种……的混合）disappointment and the lingering excitement of our adventure.

3. We knew that the journey was just as important as the destination（和终点一样重要）.

4. Despite the lack of a breathtaking view（缺少令人惊叹的景色）from the summit, I felt a profound sense of（一种深刻的……感）awe and respect for nature's raw beauty.

5. What was my feeling（我的感受是什么）?

6. A deep appreciation for（对……深深的欣赏）the journey and the lessons it imparted.

7. It taught me that the simple act of being present in nature could be more fulfilling than any televised experience（比任何电视上的体验都更令人感到充实满足）.

8. This trip marked a significant shift（一个重要的转变）in my perspective, and I returned home with a newfound love for exploration（一种对探索的全新热爱）and an eagerness to venture beyond my comfort zone.

任务四：连句成篇，完整呈现。

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

We spent a couple of hours on the top, and decided to turn back. The dense fog had not lifted, and the realisation that we would not be rewarded with the scenic view we had envisioned was disheartening. What were our feelings without seeing the scenery? A mix of disappointment and the lingering excitement of our adventure. We knew that the journey was just as important as the destination.

Seeing all this scenery with my own eyes was truly an eye-opening experience for me. Despite the lack of a breathtaking view from the summit, I felt a profound sense of awe and respect for nature's raw beauty. What was my feeling? A deep appreciation for the journey and the lessons it imparted. It taught me that the simple act of being present in nature could be more fulfilling than any televised experience. This trip marked a significant shift in my perspective, and I returned home with a newfound love for exploration and an eagerness to venture beyond my comfort zone.

单元质量评估(六)

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

Four Environmentalists You Should Know

Throughout history, environmentalists have had a great influence not only on natural spaces, but also on our individual lives. Here are four influential ones.

John Muir

His lifelong love for hiking began when he hiked to the Gulf of Mexico in 1867. Muir spent much of his adult life wandering in—and fighting to preserve—the wilderness of the West, especially California. His tireless efforts led to the creation of Yosemite National Park, Sequoia National Park, and millions of other conservation areas.

Rachel Carson

Born in rural Pennsylvania, Rachel Carson went on to study biology at Johns Hopkins University. After working for the US Fish and Wildlife Service, Carson published *The Sea Around Us* and other books. Her most famous work, however, was 1962's *Silent Spring*, in which she described the harmful environmental effects of pesticides (杀虫剂). After Carson's observations were proven correct, pesticides like DDT were banned.

Wangari Maathai

Wangari Maathai was from Kenya. After studying biology in the US, she returned to her home country to begin a career in environmental activism. Maathai founded the Green Belt Movement, which, by the early 21st century, had already planted more than 30 million trees, provided jobs, and secured firewood for rural communities. In 2004, she was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize while continuing to fight for the planet.

David Brower

David Brower was associated with wilderness preservation. He became the Sierra Club's first executive director in 1952, and then, over the next 17 years, the club membership grew from 2,000 to 77,000. It won many environmental victories under his leadership. After leaving the club, he went on to found other environmental groups like Friends of the Earth, and the Earth Island Institute.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了人们应该知道的四位为人类环境改善做出贡献的环保人士。

1. Which environmentalist is a writer?

A. John Muir.

B. Rachel Carson.

C. Wangari Maathai.

D. David Brower.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Rachel Carson** 部分中的"After working for the US Fish and Wildlife Service, Carson published *The Sea Around Us* and other books."可知,Rachel Carson 不仅是环境学家,还是一位作家。故选 B。

2. What did Wangari Maathai do as an environmentalist?

A. She encouraged green farming.

B. She funded rural communities.

C. She advocated growing trees.

D. She attempted to protect wild animals.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Wangari Maathai** 部分中的"Maathai founded the Green Belt Movement, which, by the early 21st century, had already planted more than 30 million trees, provided jobs, and secured firewood for rural communities."可知,Wangari Maathai 作为环境学家,她倡导种树。故选 C。

3. Which title is the most suitable one for David Brower?

A. An environmental activist.

B. A great social event planner.

C. A city preservationist.

D. An environmental scientist.

A 推理判断题。根据 **David Brower** 部分中的"It won many environmental victories under his leadership. After leaving the club, he went on to found other environmental groups like Friends of the Earth, and the Earth Island Institute."可知,David Brower 为了环境保护而不懈努力。因此,

最适合 David Brower 的称号是环保活动家。故选 A。

B

In 2018, Pollyanna, a former reporter, was sad by the death of her mother. "My mother's loss was terrible to me and she had always been my spiritual anchor." Her mother focused on helping poor children and held a firm belief that education had the changing power of a person's life. Influenced by her mother, Pollyanna was eager to do her best to help others.

Three years later after her mother's passing away, Pollyanna decided to return from the big city to start a free boarding school in her hometown, a poor mountain village, to help kids who couldn't afford to go to school. As a local, she realised that a boarding school was the most logical and efficient way to provide access to education for children from across the region, bridging the gap in educational opportunities. "Starting a boarding school was a decision born out of necessity and a desire to make a meaningful influence on the region's education."

According to her, a boarding school could not only address the transport difficulties but also ensure a safe learning environment for children there. Pollyanna has been mainly using her savings to support the no-charging school. Additionally, she has received support from many people who have helped to cover the cost of some students and the monthly expenses.

However, there are still some problems listed by Pollyanna. Limited teachers, difficulties in construction and transportation, and bad weather conditions are the major difficulties that come in the way of her mission. "Knowledge sharing and finding similar role models in this remote region is also a challenging task. In addition, the natural conditions here are tough, making every breath an effort," she explains.

Despite the many difficulties in Pollyanna's journey, she remains determined not to give up. "Working here makes me feel closer to my mother. I am eager to apply myself to this career." The former reporter is now playing the role of a teacher, a caretaker and in many ways a motherly figure to these children.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了Pollyanna在母亲去世后，受到母亲帮助贫困儿童和教育改变人生信念的影响，决定回到家乡的贫困山区，创办免费寄宿学校，帮助无法上学的孩子的故事。

4. Why did Pollyanna set up a free boarding school?

A. She was a nature-lover.

B. She wanted to be a teacher.

C. Her former job influenced her.

D. Her mother set an example for her.

D　细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Her mother focused on helping poor children and held a firm belief that education had the changing power of a person's life. Influenced by her mother, Pollyanna was eager to do her best to help others."和第二段中的"Three years later after her mother's passing away, Pollyanna decided to return from the big city to start a free boarding school in her hometown, a poor mountain village, to help kids who couldn't afford to go to school."可知，Pollyanna创办免费的寄宿学校是受母亲的影响，她母亲给她树立了榜样。故选D。

5. What does the underlined word "address" in Paragraph 3 mean?

A. Solve.　　B. Deliver.

C. Change.　　D. Claim.

A　词义猜测题。结合常识和画线词所在的句子"According to her, a boarding school could not only address the transport difficulties but also ensure a safe learning environment for children there."中"the transport difficulties"可推知，读寄宿学校的学生不需要每天在学校和家之间往返，也就解决了交通难题，因此address与solve同义，意为"解决"。故选A。

6. What will Pollyanna do in the future?

A. Take a trip to other cities.

B. Improve the natural conditions.

C. Continue to stay here to teach.

D. Attract more people to work here.

C　细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"Despite the many difficulties in Pollyanna's journey, she remains determined not to give up."可知，Pollyanna不会放弃，会继续留在这里教书。故选C。

7. What is the main idea of this text?

A. A reporter will make a big difference.

B. The construction of a school was difficult.

C. A girl and her mother started a school together.

D. A former reporter contributed to education in the mountains.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文，结合第一段的内容和第二段中的“Three years later after her mother's passing away, Pollyanna decided to return from the big city to start a free boarding school in her hometown, a poor mountain village, to help kids who couldn't afford to go to school.”以及最后一段中的“Despite the many difficulties in Pollyanna's journey, she remains determined not to give up.”可知，这篇文章主要讲述了前记者Pollyanna回到家乡创办免费寄宿学校，帮助那些上不起学的孩子，为山区的教育做贡献的故事。因此，“一位前记者为山区教育做出了贡献”是本文主要内容。故选D。

C

Global light pollution has increased by at least 49% over 25 years, new research shows. This data only includes light which can be seen through satellites, and scientists think the true increase may be significantly higher—up to 270% globally, and 400% in some areas.

This study shows not only how bad light pollution has become as a problem of the whole world, but also that it is continuing to get worse, probably at a faster and faster rate.

The study highlights the “hidden impact” of the LED technology. LEDs send out more blue light than previous lamp technology, but satellite sensors can't discover this blue light and so underestimate (低估) the level of emissions (排放). The authors say the actual increase in the power sent out by outdoor lighting, and thus of light pollution, may be as high as 270%. “To take the UK as an example, if you pay no attention to the effect of the change to LEDs, you get the false impression that light pollution has recently weakened,” said researcher Dr Sanchez de Miguel. “However, it has really increased, very remarkably.”

Contrary to popular belief, the LED streetlights, while potentially providing some energy savings, have increased light pollution and also the impacts on flying insects (昆虫).

Ruskin Hartley, Executive Director of the International Dark-Sky Association, said, “Over the past 25 years, the use of LED lighting has been accompanied by rapid increases in light pollution all over the world.”

If no action is taken to change this trend, the impact on the natural environment will speed up, further worsening the biodiversity (生物多样性) crisis and wasting energy. Many studies have now shown that light pollution, from streetlights and other sources, can have major impacts on the natural environment. Such pollution is likely to have played a role in the huge decrease in insect populations.

【语篇解读】文章主要讲的是一项新研究表明光污染已经成为一个全球性的问题，而且还在继续恶化。此外，该研究还强调了LED技术的“隐性影响”。

8. How does the author illustrate that light pollution becomes worse?

A. By referring to certain theories.

B. By providing comparative data.

C. By listing a lot of opinions.

D. By giving some examples.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可推知，作者通过提供比较数据说明光污染越来越严重。故选B。

9. Why was light pollution in the UK underestimated?

A. Emission levels of LEDs are low.

B. Satellite sensors are blind to LEDs.

C. Outdoor lighting is limited in the UK.

D. LEDs are less and less used in the UK.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“LEDs send out more blue light than previous lamp technology, but satellite sensors can't discover this blue light and so underestimate (低估) the level of emissions (排放).”可知，英国的光污染被低估了是因为卫星传感器检测不到LED发出的蓝光。故选B。

10. What's the general belief of LED streetlights?

A. They are good for insects.

B. They save lots of energy.

C. They cause light pollution.

D. They are environment-friendly.

B 推理判断题。根据倒数第三段的内容可推知，大家对LED路灯的普遍看法是它们节省了大量的能源。故选B。

11. What does the last paragraph focus on?

A. The harm of light pollution.

B. The causes of biological crises.

C. The trend of insect populations.

D. The importance of the natural environment.

A 段落大意题。通读最后一段可知，本段着重论述了光污染的危害。故选A。

D

It was dinner time for the Rangers, a group of mostly Indigenous（本地的）Australians who had spent a long day cleaning up the polluted beaches of the continent's northern coast. Soon they would be eating freshly caught fish and seafood cooked under the stars on an open fire, as their ancestors did.

The Rangers are of more than 100 Indigenous groups spread across Australia who have taken on the job of protecting the land of their forefathers. In Arnhem Land, they are the protectors of 3,300 square miles of land and sea. They comb the beaches by hand, picking up as much rubbish as possible. The task is very difficult as each day it delivers waves of new rubbish.

For the Rangers, cleaning the beaches is more than a vacation. For a people whose culture is strongly tied to the land, protecting the environment is equal to preserving their history.

However, colonisation forcefully broke their connection to the land generations ago. Indigenous people were displaced and their cultural practices outlawed. Tens of thousands of years of traditional land management ended, and as a result many parts of the country now face serious disasters from invasive plant and animal species, bush fires and land mismanagement.

In recent years, the government has restored more than 20 percent of Australia's land to indigenous owners. Since 2007, the Indigenous Rangers Organisations have been at work protecting this land.

Luck, one of the few non-Indigenous employees working with the Rangers, said the combination of old and new techniques and an appreciation for the culture of indigenous workers has been critical to the programme's success.

"You are working with staff who see the world different to you, so there is a much higher focus on the cultural aspects of work and life," he said.

"Being a ranger is a source of confidence. You feel strong," said Terence, a senior ranger. "Here we still live on the land. The culture is still alive."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇新闻报道。文章报道了澳大利亚土著人——Rangers，他们保护环境，捡拾垃圾，承担着保护祖先土地的任务。对他们来说，保护环境就等于保护他们的历史和文化。少数非土著人也与Rangers工作，一起来保护他们的文化。

12. What did Indigenous Australians live on in the past?

A. Rubbish picked up by hand.

B. Protecting the land.

C. Catching the fish and seafood.

D. Invasive plants and animals.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Soon they would be eating freshly caught fish and seafood cooked under the stars on an open fire, as their ancestors did."可知，澳大利亚土著居民过去过着以捕鱼和打捞海鲜为生的生活。故选C。

13. What do the Rangers think of cleaning the beaches?

A. It's a job of their ancestors'.

B. It's just a vacation.

C. It's a difficult task.

D. It's their culture.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知，Rangers认为清理海滩就是保护他们的文化。故选D。

14. Why has the government restored the land to Indigenous owners?

A. The polluted land needs better management.

B. Their cultural practices were outlawed.

C. The people were too strong.

D. The land belongs to them.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"Tens of thousands of years of traditional land management ended, and as a result many parts of the country now face serious disasters from invasive plant and animal species, bush fires and land mismanagement."可知，政府要将土地归还

给土著居民是因为被污染的土地需要他们更好的管理。故选A。

15. What can we learn from the last three paragraphs?

A. Not many employees are the Indigenous Australians.

B. Culture is important to the Indigenous Australians.

C. Their new techniques are successful.

D. Both Luck and Terence are rangers.

B　推理判断题。根据倒数后三段中出现的关键词“culture”可知，文化对澳大利亚土著居民很重要。故选B。

Ⅱ. 七选五

Many of the vegetables we grow in our gardens produce seeds（种子），which can grow into plants if collected and stored correctly. Late summer is the perfect time to start collecting them.

Make sure the seeds are from plants that you have planted well for many years. These are plants in their normal forms. **16**

Hybridised（杂交）plants usually produce the vegetables sold in big food stores. They are created from two or more different kinds of plants to get the best qualities of each. Trying to grow seeds from these plants will not lead to happy results. This kind of plants will not have the expected results but instead carry the genes（基因）of just one of its parents. **17** For this reason, it is best not to grow seeds from store-bought food.

Many plants become cross-pollinated（异花授粉）in the garden. Bees, flies, animals and wind spread pollen（花粉）from one plant to another. To ensure the seeds will grow into plants, give them space. **18**

To avoid cross-pollination surprises, plant only one kind of each vegetable from which you can harvest seeds. **19** Grow only one kind of tomato in your garden. If that feels too limiting, go ahead and experiment. Choose plants that grow well every year so there are smaller risks from cross-pollination. The plants will be fine even if they are not what you expected.

20 Add something to the container to prevent any remaining wetness. But take it out after a few days to avoid overdrying the seeds.

A. When will the seeds come off the flower?

B. It is impossible to tell which parent that will be.

C. What should you do if you want to save tomato seeds?

D. Their seeds will produce plants as good as their parents.

E. Put seeds in a cool, dry place in a covered glass container.

F. Place different kinds of the same crop as far apart as possible.

G. In areas with cold winters, simply leave plants in the ground over winter.

答案：16～20　DBFCE

Ⅲ. 完形填空

That old pickle jar（咸菜坛），as far back as I can remember, sat on the floor beside the dresser in my parents' bedroom. When he got ready for bed, Dad would 21 his pockets and put his coins into the 22. It was a nightly 23 for many years in our home.

When the jar was 24, we would take the coins to the bank. Each time, as he slid the box of coins across the counter towards the cashier, he would say 25, “These are for my son's college fund. He'll 26 work in the factory all his life like me.”

The years passed. I 27 college and took a job in another town. Once, while 28 my parents, I noticed that the pickle jar in my parents' bedroom was 29. A lump rose in my throat as I 30 where the jar had always stood. My dad was a man of few 31, and never lectured me on the 32 of determination and faith, but the pickle jar had taught me all these 33. In my mind, it defined, more than anything else, how much my dad had 34 me. No matter how 35 things got at home, Dad continued to drop his coins into the jar.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。父母的爱总是那么无私和伟大，无论生活多么艰难，他们都会尽全力为孩子创造一个美好的未来。

21. A. pick　　B. tear
C. empty　　D. clean
C　每当爸爸准备睡觉的时候，他总是把衣兜里面的硬币都拿出来扔到坛子里面。empty“掏空”，符合语境。

22. A. bag　　B. jar
C. drawer　　D. dresser
B　根据上文的“That old pickle jar（咸菜坛）...”及语境可知，此处指扔到坛子里。故选B。

23. A. routine　　B. attitude
C. gathering　　D. performance
A　这是“我们”家多年来每天晚上的惯例。routine“常规；例行公事”。

24. A. broken　　B. moved
C. filled　　D. prepared
C　根据下文的“... we would take the coins to the bank.”可知，当坛子装满的时候，“我们”就会把硬币存到银行去。fill“装满”，符合语境。

25. A. nervously　　B. calmly
C. secretly　　D. proudly
D　根据句意“每次当爸爸把装满硬币的盒子顺着柜台递给银行职员的时候，他总是骄傲地说……”可知，父亲因儿子而骄傲和自豪，故D项符合语境。

26. A. never　　B. also
C. soon　　D. always
A　父亲的愿望是“他永远都不用像我这样在工厂里工作”。故选A。

27. A. entered　　B. started
C. finished　　D. dropped
C　根据逻辑关系可知，许多年之后，作者大学毕业了并在另一座城市找了一份工作。故C项符合语境。

28. A. asking　　B. visiting
C. showing　　D. ringing
B　根据语境可知，此处指作者回家看望父母。故B项符合语境。

29. A. gone　　B. empty
C. dirty　　D. lost
A　根据下文的“... I 30 where the jar had always stood.”可知，此处指坛子不见了。

30. A. checked　　B. searched
C. stared　　D. found
C　根据句意“我盯着梳妆台旁曾经放坛子的地方，喉咙一阵哽咽”可知，stare“凝视；盯着看”，符合语境。

31. A. words　　B. smiles
C. ideas　　D. stories
A　根据下文提到的“爸爸从来不会给我讲决心和信仰的重要性”可知，爸爸不善言辞。a man of few words“沉默寡言的人”。

32. A. similarities　　B. differences
C. standards　　D. values
D　根据语境可知，value为正确答案。

33. A. beliefs　　B. virtues
C. thoughts　　D. experiences
B　根据前后句的逻辑关系可知，此处表示“咸菜坛子教会了我所有的美德”。virtue“美德；优点”。

34. A. loved　　B. required
C. pushed　　D. understood
A　根据句意“在我心里，它比任何东西都更能表达父亲对我的爱”可知，此处指父亲对“我”的爱。

35. A. dull　　B. easy
C. tough　　D. wrong
C　根据句意“无论家里过得多么艰难，爸爸始终坚持把他的硬币投进坛子里”可知，tough“艰苦的；艰难的”，符合语境。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Ecotourism is commonly regarded as low-impact travel to undisturbed places. It is different from traditional tourism because it allows the traveler to become **36.** educated (educate) about the areas—both in terms of geographical conditions and cultural characteristics, and often provides money for conservation and benefits the **37.** development (develop) of the local areas.

Ecotourism has **38.** its (it) origin with the environmental movement of the 1970s. It was not widely accepted as a travel concept **39.** until the late 1980s. During that time, increasing environmental awareness made it desirable.

Due to **40.** the growing popularity of

environment-related and adventure travel, various types of trips are now being classified as ecotourism. Actually, a true eco-friendly trip must meet the following principles:

Minimise the impact of **41.** visiting (visit) the place.

Build respect for and awareness of the environment and cultural practices.

Provide financial aid and other benefits for local people.

Make sure **42.** that the tourism provides positive experiences for both the visitors and the hosts.

Komodo National Park, **43.** officially (official) recognised in 1980, is popular for ecotourism because of its unique biodiversity. **44.** Activities (activity) there range from whale watching to hiking and accommodations aim **45.** to have (have) a low influence on the natural environment.

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假设你是李华,你的英语老师李老师(Ms Li)下个月就要退休了,你得知她喜欢园艺,想送给她一些植物种子。请你用英语给她写一张明信片,表示感谢和祝愿。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear Ms Li,

I've heard that you are going to retire soon. ___

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Wish you a happy retirement life and we'll miss you.

Love,

Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Ms Li,

I've heard that you are going to retire soon. And I'd like to express my gratitude. Thank you so much for being such a wonderful teacher to me in the last three years.

I know that you like gardening, so you will be able to spend more time on your favourite hobby after you retire. As we have many unusual plants in my hometown, I'd like to send you some seeds which you can grow in your garden. I believe you'll have a surprise when you find out what they are.

Wish you a happy retirement life and we'll miss you.

Love,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

16-year-old Leo had a deep passion for visiting the wetland near his home town every weekend. It was his secret escape, a place overgrown with weeds, with fresh water nearby, where the air smelled sweet and the sound of birdsong enveloped him like a warm blanket. He always carried a small bag of grain in his pocket, not just to feed the swans (天鹅), but to watch the way their graceful necks curved as they ate. Last Sunday, however, a sense of unease swept over him—something felt out of the ordinary.

As Leo walked along the wetland path, he called softly for his favourite swan family: a mother swan and her three babies. Normally, the mother would lift her head at the sound of his voice and walk quickly towards him, her lovely babies following closely behind. But that day, only two babies appeared. His heart dropped instantly when he spotted a white shape lying beside the weeds, without a move.

Not wanting to waste a single second, Leo rushed over. There, half-hidden by the grass, he found the missing baby swan: it let out faint, weak calls and its left wing was broken. Carefully cupping the tiny bird in his hands, he gently wrapped it in

his jacket to protect it from the cold. "Don't worry, little one," he whispered, his voice soft with care. "I won't let anything happen to you."

Leo didn't hesitate—he held the baby swan close to his chest and hurried towards home to seek help from his vet（兽医）mother. His legs ached as he ran, but he didn't slow down; his mind raced with plans. The quiet wetland, once a place of calm where he'd sat for hours watching the swans, now felt cold and lifeless, the air thick with the pressure of a race against time. But as he felt the baby swan's heartbeat close to him, stable yet weak, he was determined to give it a fighting chance, no matter what.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

Upon arrival, he told his mother what was happening. _____

_____

_____

_____

But Leo knew this was not enough and that he needed to do more with others. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

Upon arrival, he told his mother what was happening. They cleaned the baby swan's wound, applied a bandage, and made a cozy bed with old towels. The next week, Leo took on the task of feeding it fish and changing its bandage. Slowly but surely, the little one grew strong enough to flap its wings. One afternoon, Leo carried the baby swan back to the wetland. The moment he set it down, the mother swan glided over, brushing the baby swan tenderly with her beak. To his delight, the other baby swans joined in the greeting, forming a small circle around their sibling as if welcoming it home.

But Leo knew this was not enough and that he needed to do more with others. He shared the swan's story with his classmates, and together, they decided to set up a "Wetland Guardians" group. They put up posters to remind visitors not to litter and partnered with local environmental experts to build special feeding stations for the wetland birds. Now, every weekend, Leo and his friends visit the wetland to check on the birds. The once-injured swan has grown into a graceful, beautiful one, and it still swims over to greet Leo whenever he arrives—a gentle reminder that even the smallest act of kindness can help nature thrive.

模块质量评估

Ⅰ. 阅读理解

A

How to Connect Exercise with Studying

Studies show adding physical activity to your study routine can boost focus and help you memorise information better. Here are ways to include exercise in your study process.

· Exercise just before you study.

Jog before a test or reviewing notes. Hit the gym on the way home to swim for a while to get ready for evening study. Doing aerobic (有氧) activity gets blood, oxygen, and nutrients to your brain, which helps your brain function better.

· Try light exercise while you study.

Performing light exercise while studying can help remember some information.

Intense exercise while studying may harm memory because your brain is focused on the workout instead of the information. To try this, take your textbook or notes to the gym. Use a stationary bike (静态单车) while you study for at least half an hour, making sure to keep the speed not too fast.

· Go to the gym right after studying.

Working out after studying can also enhance mental function and improve learning. Go for a walk or even lift weights after you study to help your brain stay active so your studying can pay off.

· Exercise at your desk.

Perform chair squats (蹲) at your desk: rise, lower without sitting, hold for 10 seconds, and repeat 20 times. Try wall sits: lower into a squat with wall support, hold it for 10 seconds, and repeat 20 times; or repeat 20 times, and even lift one leg for added challenge.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了运动与学习结合的好处——能提升专注力与记忆力,并给出四种方法:学习前、学习中(轻度)、学习后运动,以及在桌前做简易运动。

1. Why does intense exercise during studying reduce effectiveness?

A. Because it lowers brain oxygen levels.

B. Because it takes attention away.

C. Because it increases muscle injury risks.

D. Because it lacks aerobic training.

B 细节理解题。根据第六段中的"Intense exercise while studying may harm memory because your brain is focused on the workout instead of the information."可知,在学习时进行剧烈运动会降低学习效果,因为这会分散注意力。故选B。

2. Which exercise is recommended after studying?

A. Stationary biking.

B. Chair squats.

C. Weight training.

D. A quick swim.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第三段中的"Go for a walk or even lift weights after you study to help your brain stay active so your studying can pay off."可知,学习之后应该做举重训练。故选C。

3. What is the main purpose of the text?

A. To introduce steps for physical health.

B. To propose strategies for effective studying.

C. To explain the safety measures for exercise.

D. To offer exercise-study connection methods.

D 写作意图题。根据第一段中的"Here are ways to include exercise in your study process."再结合本文介绍运动与学习结合的好处——能提升专注力与记忆力,并给出四种方法:学习前、学习中(轻度)、学习后运动,以及在桌前做简易运动可知,这篇文章的主要目的是提供锻炼与学习相结合的方法。故选D。

B

Judith Allen was one historian whose sudden and untimely death in London has shocked and saddened many historians.

I first met Judith in 2006 when I was working at the Menzies Centre at King's College London. Thrilled to have struck up a friendship with a scholar whose work had been extremely important to my History PhD, I was invited to her London flat for brunch. I was a little surprised to discover on

arrival that this would not be an intimate occasion, but the crowd made sense when our hosts announced that this was not an ordinary brunch gathering but their wedding. It was a warm and happy celebration and there was a lot of laughter.

Some months later Judith was invited as a speaker at a conference on feminism（女权主义）. Her lecture turned out to be a great success, showing people's interest in her topic and her fame in Britain. Ours was a short and quick friendship in Judith's richly connected and intellectually active life, but her generosity and insights have stuck with me.

When I returned to Australia, her ongoing companionship took the form of books, chapters and articles that have always been close to hand. When I had started my PhD in 1999, Allen's writings were models of feminist history that made it seem possible to write my own history of the pregnant body. Her thoughts in feminist and belief in poststructuralist approaches（后结构主义方式）to historical research offered a path in charting the changing nature of the pregnant body in Australian medicine, law and feminism. As I later restarted my research after receiving my PhD, her historical interventions continued to inform and guide me.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者追忆与历史学家 Judith Allen 的相识、交往经历，以及其学术成就对自身研究的深远启发，以此缅怀这位挚友。

4. What does the underlined part "an intimate occasion" in Paragraph 2 refer to?

A. A large public celebration.

B. A small private gathering.

C. A formal academic exploration.

D. A serious business meeting.

B　词义猜测题。根据第二段中的"I was a little surprised to discover on arrival that this would not be an intimate occasion, but the crowd made sense when our hosts announced that this was not an ordinary brunch gathering but their wedding."可知，"an intimate occasion"与后文出现的"the crowd"形成鲜明对比，指小型的私人聚会。故选 B。

5. How did Judith's work influence the author's PhD research?

A. It presented large numbers of medical cases.

B. It served to guide her choices of careers.

C. It provided ideas for her own writing.

D. It criticised her research methods.

C　细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"Allen's writings were models of feminist history that made it seem possible to write my own history of the pregnant body. Her thoughts in feminist and belief in poststructuralist approaches（后结构主义方式）to historical research offered a path in charting the changing nature of the pregnant body in Australian medicine, law and feminism"可知，Judith 的研究成果为作者的博士论文写作提供了思路和方向。故选 C。

6. Which of the following can best describe Judith?

A. Strict and serious.

B. Friendly and mysterious.

C. Insightful and inspiring.

D. Outgoing and distant.

C　推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Ours was a short and quick friendship in Judith's richly connected and intellectually active life, but her generosity and insights have stuck with me."以及最后一段中的"As I later restarted my research after receiving my PhD, her historical interventions continued to inform and guide me."可知，Judith 是一位有真知灼见且能给他人学术研究带来启发的人。故选 C。

7. Why does the author write the passage?

A. To announce the death of a famous historian.

B. To review a pioneering academic theory.

C. To respond to a widespread doubt.

D. To remember an important friend.

D　写作意图题。根据第一段的内容并结合全文可知，文章叙述了作者与 Judith 相识、交往的点滴回忆，以及她的学术成就对其自身研究产生的深远影响。因此，作者写这篇文章的目的是缅怀这位对自己而言十分重要的朋友。故选 D。

C

There was a large fish market in northwest of Mumbai. Shark fins were sent onto tables. Tens of millions of sharks are killed for the fin trade every year, and a quarter of the world's sharks, rays, and

ghost sharks are in danger. The international trade in many species is not allowed, but it can be nearly impossible for wildlife officials to tell whether the fins here are from protected species.

The samples could be sent to a lab for DNA testing, but the test would take a full day. But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample. The gene sequencing (基因序列测定) done by the MinION device, which she was testing out at the fish market, is a promising new tool to help fight the illegal shark fin trade.

Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks. The smartphone-sized device is made by UK-based Oxford Nanopore Technologies. It has been used for the recognition of Ebola virus among others. It is also likely to help prevent wildlife crime.

It requires a small tissue sample and a laptop. It can tell a species in three or four hours. But it has one downside: the tool costs 1,000 dollars, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra 500 dollars. That's roughly 42 dollars per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as 5 dollars a sample.

Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren't just limited to sharks. These tools could be used to recognise elephant ivory, pangolin scales, and various other wildlife.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了基因测序仪可以用于基因测序,打击非法鱼翅交易,还可以用来保护其他野生动物。

8. What did Johri use the MinION for at the fish market?

A. Collecting tissue from endangered fish.

B. Discovering sharks' gene sequences.

C. Recognising the species of a shark.

D. Saving sharks from losing their fins.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample."可知,Johri 在鱼市上使用 MinION 辨别鲨鱼的种类。故选 C。

9. What does the new study mainly tell us about the MinION?

A. How it can help reduce wildlife crime.

B. Its use for wildlife protection purposes.

C. How it was developed by a UK company.

D. Its influence on different scientific fields.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks."可知,这项新的研究主要介绍了使用 MinION 这种新装置的目的是保护野生动物。故选 B。

10. What is a disadvantage of the MinION?

A. It makes mistakes at times.

B. It requires more time.

C. It is hard to use.

D. It is expensive.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"But it has one downside: the tool costs 1,000 dollars, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra 500 dollars. That's roughly 42 dollars per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as 5 dollars a sample."可知,MinION 的缺点是价格高。故选 D。

11. What does Booth probably think of the MinION?

A. It will save many kinds of animals.

B. It should be used after further research.

C. It must make technological improvements.

D. It needs more support from wildlife officials.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren't just limited to

sharks."可知，Booth 认为 MinION 能够拯救许多种类的动物。故选 A。

D

Many think that language is what sets humans apart from other animals, and that for us to think, language is a decisive factor. British philosopher Bertrand Russell even claimed in 1948 that no intelligent thinking can take place without language. However, a recent study in *Nature* suggests otherwise. It found that language and thought are two distinct entities, working in separate parts of the brain. They are, in short, "far more independent than we imagined", wrote ZME Science.

The study, conducted by scientists from the US, explored the language-thought relationship through two research approaches. First, they studied patients suffering from global aphasia, who had lost much of their ability to understand or speak due to damage to the left hemisphere of their brain. However, they could still complete complex tasks.

"You can ask people with global aphasia to solve maths problems or perform social reasoning tests, and as long as the instructions are non-verbal, they can succeed," Evelina Fedorenko, one of the study's authors from the US Massachusetts Institute of Technology, told ZME Science.

The researchers also used brain-imaging tools to study the brains of healthy volunteers as they performed non-verbal tasks, like solving puzzles and planning. It was found that the brain's language regions were mostly inactive during such activities. In other words, we generally need language to express our thoughts but we can still think without words.

So, if language isn't necessary for thinking, then why did humans develop it? Fedorenko said language serves mainly as a tool for communication. "Most of the things that you probably learned about the world, you learned through language and not through direct experience with the world," she said. By being able to share complex information through language, humans gained an evolutionary advantage.

Although language does not give rise to thoughts, past research shows that how we speak can heavily influence how we think. For example, the English sentence "he fired the gun" is usually phrased as "the gun went off" in Japanese. As a result, English speakers are more likely to focus on the person responsible for an accident than Japanese speakers, according to *Psychology Today*.

【语篇解读】一项研究表明语言与思维相互独立，同时还阐述了语言的作用及对思维的影响。

12. What is the main purpose of the study mentioned in the passage?

A. To prove that language is essential for intelligent thinking.

B. To develop new treatments for patients with global aphasia.

C. To identify the brain regions responsible for non-verbal reasoning.

D. To examine the relationship between language and thought.

D　细节理解题。根据第二段中的"The study, conducted by scientists from the US, explored the language-thought relationship through two research approaches."可知，该研究的主要目的是探究语言和思维之间的关系。故选 D。

13. What did brain-imaging tools reveal about healthy volunteers performing non-verbal tasks?

A. They struggled with problem-solving.

B. Their language regions showed little activity.

C. Their language centres became overactive.

D. They would unknowingly use verbal strategies.

B　细节理解题。根据第四段中的"The researchers also used brain-imaging tools to study the brains of healthy volunteers as they performed non-verbal tasks, like solving puzzles and planning. It was found that the brain's language regions were mostly inactive during such activities."可知，健康的志愿者在执行非语言任务时，其语言区域几乎没有活动。故选 B。

14. How can language serve humans, according to Fedorenko?

A. It helps humans generate thoughts.

B. It decides humans' evolutionary direction.

C. It promotes the exchange of complicated ideas.

D. It replaces direct experience with the world.

C　推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“Fedorenko said language serves mainly as a tool for communication. ‘Most of the things that you probably learned about the world, you learned through language and not through direct experience with the world,’ she said. By being able to share complex information through language, humans gained an evolutionary advantage.”可知，Fedorenko认为语言能促进复杂思想的交流。故选C。

15. What is the main idea of the text?

A. Language plays a decisive role in shaping human thought.

B. Language and thought are deeply interdependent in the brain.

C. The absence of language makes complex thought impossible.

D. Thought can operate independently from language.

D　主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“However, a recent study in *Nature* suggests otherwise. It found that language and thought are two distinct entities, working in separate parts of the brain. They are, in short, ‘far more independent than we imagined’”及全文内容可知，文章核心围绕“思维可以独立于语言运作”展开，并介绍了相关研究依据、语言的作用及对思维的影响。故选D。

Ⅱ. 七选五

How can teenagers keep themselves from suffering from loneliness? Here are some suggestions for speeding a recovery from loneliness.

16 A smile and a friendly greeting for the student behind you in line at the cafeteria（自助餐厅）won't make you best friends. But it will make you both feel good. It can also make it easier to interact the next time, and the time after that.

Find a safe place to make connections. If going to the dancing party makes you feel like you just don't belong, try joining a special-interest group. **17** Just because you feel left out in one group doesn't mean you'll feel like an outsider in every other one. Look for a group that allows you to feel comfortable gradually.

Find other ways of making connections. Lonely people hunger for friendship. Sometimes feeling accepted and liked comes more easily when you do something for others rather than wait for them to make you feel better. **18** Teach a child in reading. Take notes for a disabled classmate. You might be surprised at the connections you make.

19 Loneliness is an absence of quality friendship, not of a particular quantity of friends. That's why it's important to know how to select a friend. The best friendships are those based on similar values and attitudes.

You get what you expect, so expect the best. If you expect others to be friendly, you will behave in proper ways that encourage people to be friendlier to you. Loneliness won't last long. **20**

A. Choose the right people.

B. So consider becoming a volunteer.

C. Reach out to others but start small.

D. It can be hard work to be positive towards others.

E. Maybe it's the drama club or the marching band.

F. This harmful attitude can continue into adulthood.

G. But starting the first step of positive expectations can make all the difference.

答案：16～20　CEBAG

Ⅲ. 完形填空

After two years of online learning, I started middle school in person a few weeks ago. Since there was a big gap of online school, the middle school decided to give ＿21＿ lunches to all students.

Of course, you could ＿22＿ whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal. I took something from ＿23＿, while some of my friends had ＿24＿ from school. No matter if you had lunch from home or school, everyone knew that the school's juices that came with the lunch were ＿25＿.

Almost half the ＿26＿ school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me. Today, like every day at lunch, my friends and I were ＿27＿ in line to get our juices. When we got to the front of the line and ＿28＿ the juices, the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents.

We were ＿29＿ because we had gotten juices many times before this. ＿30＿ this I ran to my backpack to get some ＿31＿. I thought my friends would do the same, but they were just ＿32＿ there

looking disappointed. I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money.

As I looked at their faces, something in me ___33___. I felt like it was my ___34___ to get them the juices.

I immediately ran back to the lunch line and ___35___ the juices. When I returned to them with the juices, they were so happy. The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juices.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者为朋友们掏钱买果汁的暖心故事。

21. A. big　　B. free
C. small　　D. fresh
B　根据下文的"... the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents."以及"I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money."可推知，此处指学校的餐食原来是免费的，所以学生们跟往常一样前去打饭时才没有带钱。故选B。

22. A. refuse　　B. doubt
C. realise　　D. choose
D　根据下文的"... whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal."可推知，此处指学生可以在从家里带饭和吃学校的饭之间做选择。故选D。

23. A. home　　B. tables
C. stores　　D. restaurants
A　根据上文的"... you could ___22___ whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal."以及下文的"... while some of my friends had ___24___ from school."可推知，此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃饭，而作者从家里带饭。故选A。

24. A. breakfast　　B. tea
C. lunch　　D. supper
C　根据下文的"No matter if you had lunch from home or school..."可推知，此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃午餐。故选C。

25. A. terrible　　B. salty
C. hot　　D. amazing
D　根据下文的"Almost half the ___26___ school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me."可推知，此处指学校的果汁味道不错，很多学生都喜欢。故选D。

26. A. quiet　　B. entire
C. active　　D. crowded
B　根据上文的"... everyone knew that the school's juices that came with the lunch were ___25___."以及"Almost half the..."和下文的"... school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me."可推知，此处指果汁的味道很棒，几乎全校一半的人喝学校的果汁。故选B。

27. A. waiting　　B. walking
C. talking　　D. leaving
A　根据下文的"... in line to get our juices."可推知，此处指作者和朋友们排队等待着领取果汁。故选A。

28. A. accepted　　B. bought
C. asked for　　D. handed in
C　根据上文的"... my friends and I were ___27___ in line to get our juices."以及"we got to the front of the line"可推知，此处指作者与朋友们排队到柜台前面是为了要领取果汁。故选C。

29. A. worried　　B. surprised
C. excited　　D. concerned
B　根据上文的"... the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents."可推知，果汁原来是免费的，现在变成了收费的，所以作者和朋友们应该很惊讶。故选B。

30. A. Forgetting　　B. Ignoring
C. Abandoning　　D. Hearing
D　根据上文收银员的话以及下文的"I ran to my backpack"可推知，此处指作者听到果汁收费后的动作。故选D。

31. A. money　　B. paper
C. food　　D. medicine
A　根据上文的"... each juice is seventy-five cents.""___30___ this I ran to my backpack..."以及下文的"... they said none of them had any money."可推知，此处指作者听到果汁要收费的消息后立马跑回去拿钱。故选A。

32. A. moving　　B. standing
C. reading　　D. reflecting
B　根据下文的"... looking disappointed. I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money."可推知，此处指作者的朋友们因为没钱，所以很失望地站在原地，没有其他动作。故选B。

33. A. ran off　　B. started out
C. moved away　　D. kicked in
D　根据下文的“I felt like it was my __34__ to get them the juices.”可推知，此处指作者看到朋友们的表现后，头脑中产生了某种想法。故选D。

34. A. duty　　B. plan
C. wish　　D. decision
A　根据上文的“... something in me __33__.”以及下文的“... to get them the juices.”“The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juices.”可推知，此处指作者认为为朋友们买果汁是自己的使命。故选A。

35. A. got　　B. missed
C. paid for　　D. looked for
C　根据下文的“When I returned to them with the juices...”可推知，此处指作者支付了果汁的钱，为朋友们买了果汁。故选C。

Ⅳ. 语法填空

Chess is a game of make-believe kings and queens, pawns (卒) and rooks (车). For 12-year-old Andre, chess is more **36.** than just a game.

He uses what he learned on the chessboard in real life, like, think before you move. He's just one of the students from some of Los Angeles's toughest neighbourhoods **37.** learning (learn) to play.

Damen Fletcher, **38.** who learned how to play chess at age 13, grew up in Compton. After leaving the city **39.** to attend (attend) college, he came home to find his **40.** childhood (child) friends struggling.

"Some of **41.** them (they) had even fallen into prison (牢狱). I just wondered, 'Why did I have such a different result?' And it was chess," he said.

He started Train of Thought to help kids of all **42.** ages (age) find their inner king or queen.

"Every game of chess is 75 to 100 moves, and every single move that your opponent (对手) makes presents **43.** a new problem for you to solve," he said.

So, how does Fletcher teach a 5-year-old how to play chess?

"We have a really **44.** interesting (interest) story that we use to help kids that age set up a chessboard for the first time," Fletcher said. "It goes: the king and the queen got married. They **45.** rode (ride) on horses to their castle (城堡) and had eight children."

Ⅴ. 写作

第一节　应用文写作

假设你是李华，最近你在学习英语诗歌时遇到一些困难。请给你校的外教琼斯(Mr Jones)写一封求助信。内容包括：

1. 发出求助；
2. 陈述你的问题；
3. 希望他提供帮助。

注意：1. 词数80左右；
2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

Dear Mr Jones,

_____

_____

_____

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Mr Jones,

I'm Li Hua, a student in English and American Literature Class. I'm writing to ask you for some help.

Actually I am a fan of English and American literature, so I like your class very much. Unfortunately, I have met some difficulty in learning English poetry recently. For example, there are so many new words in the poems that it is difficult for me to understand them. What's more, I cannot find exact Chinese for some poems. Would you be so kind as to offer some advice on how to learn English poetry?

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节　读后续写

阅读下面材料，根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Waking up, I looked at the overcast sky, thought a bit and then decided to go to work after all. This was two years ago, when I worked at a bank. As I travelled from my house, it kept raining.

I reached the office quite smoothly, but a few hours later, our phones started buzzing with news of flooding in various parts of the city.

Looking out of the window, my colleagues and I found that the steady drizzle had grown into a downpour. We got a bit nervous, since none of us in the city had forgotten the city's worst floods a decade ago.

At about 12:30 pm, after an alert from the city government, the bank let the staff leave early. Some colleagues, who had already left, called to say that they were stranded (滞留). The train services had been blocked and there were no other means of transportation available either. A senior colleague, who happened to live in the same district, offered me a lift in his car. I agreed happily, and so did other colleagues, since it would have been crazy to walk into the driving rain.

The rain poured down continuously, with waist-high flood soon on the road. In the midway, the rainwater reached our car's engine. We had no option but to park nearby. The only dry place we found was under a giant tree. We also spotted a tea stall nearby and got ourselves some much-needed tea and refreshments.

All along, I got anxious phone calls from my wife and parents, who were tracking the flood situation on TV. We looked up weather updates on our mobile phones and got more and more tense—home seemed far away. If it had not been for my portable (便携的) power bank, all our phones would have been dead.

Our train of thoughts was suddenly interrupted by a raised voice. We looked up and found a lady calling out from the balcony of a building behind us. "Please come in and make yourselves comfortable. How long will you stand out there?" she shouted out. We thanked her, but continued to wait.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

After half an hour or so, I felt a touch on my shoulder. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

We didn't want further favours, but the family seemed to sense our must to spend the night. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【参考范文】

After half an hour or so, I felt a touch on my shoulder. A lady living nearby came with her brother. They persuaded us to follow them. Grateful for everything, we assured them that we would leave as soon as the waters receded. However, the family insisted that we have dinner that was being cooked for us. Much to our surprise, we met around 12 other people, who had been accommodated just like we were.

We didn't want further favours, but the family seemed to sense our must to spend the night. Despite our hesitation, they brought in carpets and mats, spread them out and asked us to make ourselves comfortable. We were simply touched by their kindness. At about 4 am, the flood waters finally started to recede. Extremely relieved at this, we started heading out. Not wanting to disturb our sleeping hosts, we quietly slipped a thank-you note under their door and left.